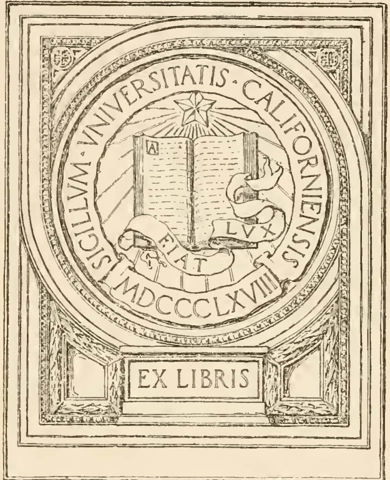
GIFT OF
Michael Reese



Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

p. 468

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized for Microsoft Corporation
by the Internet Archive in 2008.
From University of California Libraries.
May be used for non-commercial, personal, research,
or educational purposes, or any fair use.
May not be indexed in a commercial service.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

A Literary History of the Arabs

By

Reynold A. Nicholson, M.A.

Lecturer in Persian in the University of Cambridge, and sometime Fellow of Trinity College

London

T. Fisher Unwin

Adelphi Terrace

1907

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

REESE

(*All rights reserved.*)

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

PJ7510
N5

Preface

The term 'Literary History' may be interpreted in such different ways that an author who uses it is bound to explain at the outset what particular sense he has attached to it. When Mr. Fisher Unwin asked me to contribute a volume on the Arabs to this Series, I accepted his proposal with alacrity, not only because I welcomed the opportunity of making myself better acquainted with Arabic history and literature, but also and more especially in the hope that I might be able to compile a work which should serve as a general introduction to the subject, and which should neither be too popular for students nor too scientific for ordinary readers. Its precise character was determined partly by my own predilections and partly by the conditions of time and space under which it had to be produced. To write a critical account of Arabic literature was out of the question. Brockelmann's invaluable work, which contains over a thousand closely-printed pages, is confined to biography and bibliography, and does not deal with the historical development of ideas. This, however, seems to me the really vital aspect of literary history. It has been my chief aim to sketch in broad outlines what the Arabs thought, and to indicate as far as possible the influences which moulded their thought. I am well aware that the picture is sadly incomplete, that it is full of gaps and blanks admitting of no disguise or apology; but I hope that, taken as a whole, it is not unlike. Experience has convinced me that young students of

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®
181380

Arabic, to whom this volume is principally addressed, often find great difficulty in understanding what they read, since they are not in touch with the political, intellectual, and religious notions which are presented to them. The pages of almost every Arabic book abound in familiar allusions to names, events, movements, and ideas, of which Moslems require no explanation, but which puzzle the Western reader unless he have some general knowledge of Arabian history in the widest meaning of the word. Such a survey is not to be found, I believe, in any single European book ; and if mine supply the want, however partially and inadequately, I shall feel that my labour has been amply rewarded. Professor E. G. Browne's *Literary History of Persia* covers to a certain extent the same ground, and discusses many important matters belonging to the common stock of Muḥammadan history with a store of learning and wealth of detail which it would be impossible for me to emulate. The present volume, written from a different standpoint and on a far smaller scale, does not in any way clash with that admirable work ; on the contrary, numerous instances occur to me in which my omissions are justified by the fact that Professor Browne has already said all that is necessary. If I have sometimes insufficiently emphasised the distinction between history and legend on the one hand, and between popular legend and antiquarian fiction on the other, and if statements are made positively which ought to have been surrounded with a ring-fence of qualifications, the reader will perceive that a purely critical and exact method cannot reasonably be expected in a compilation of this scope.

As regards the choice of topics, I agree with the author of a famous Arabic anthology who declares that it is harder to select than compose (*ikhtiyáru 'l-kalám aṣ'abu min ta'līfihi*). Perhaps an epitomist may be excused for not doing equal justice all round. To me the literary side of the subject appeals more than the historical, and I have followed my bent without hesitation ; for in order to interest others a writer must

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

first be interested himself. In the verse-translations I have tried to represent the spirit and feeling of the original poems. This aim precludes verbal fidelity, which can only be attained through the disenchanting medium of prose, but scholars, I think, will recognise that my renderings are usually as faithful as such things can or should be. To reproduce a typical Arabic ode, *e.g.*, one of the *Mu'allaqát* ('Suspended Poems'), in a shape at once intelligible and attractive to English readers is probably beyond the powers of any translator. Even in those passages which seem best suited for the purpose we are baffled again and again by the intensely national stamp of the ideas, the strange local colour of the imagery, and the obstinately idiomatic style. Modern culture can appreciate Firdawsí, 'Umar Khayyám, Sa'dí, and Ḥáfiẓ: their large humanity touches us at many points; but the old Arabian poetry moves in a world apart, and therefore, notwithstanding all its splendid qualities, will never become popular in ours. Of the later poets who lived under the 'Abbásid Caliphate one or two might, with good fortune, extend their reputation to the West: notably the wise sceptic and pessimist, Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí. The following versions have at least the merit of being made directly from the original language and with a uniform motive. Considering the importance of Arabic poetry as (in the main) a true mirror of Arabian life, I do not think the space devoted to it is at all extravagant. Other branches of literature could not receive the same attention. Many an eminent writer has been dismissed in a few lines, many well-known names have been passed over. But, as before said, this work is a sketch of ideas in their historical environment rather than a record of authors, books, and dates.

The transliteration of Arabic words, though superfluous for scholars and for persons entirely ignorant of the language, is an almost indispensable aid to the class of readers whom I have especially in view. My system is that recommended by the

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Royal Asiatic Society and adopted by Professor Browne in his *Literary History of Persia;* but I use ẓ for the letter which he denotes by dh. The definite article *al*, which I have frequently omitted at the beginning of proper names, has been restored in the Index. It may save trouble if I mention here the abbreviations 'b.' for 'ibn' (son of); *J.R.A.S.* for *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society;* *Z.D.M.G.* for *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft;* and *S.B.W.A.* for *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener Akademie.*

Finally, it behoves me to make a full acknowledgment of my debt to the learned Orientalists whose works I have studied and freely 'conveyed' into these pages. References could not be given in every case, but the reader will see for himself how much is derived from Von Kremer, Goldziher, Nöldeke, and Wellhausen, to recall only a few of the leading authorities. At the same time I have constantly gone back to the native sources of information, and a great portion of the book is based on my own reading and judgment. Although both the plan and the execution are doubtless open to censure, I trust that serious mistakes have been avoided. The warmest thanks are due to my friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, who read the proofs throughout and made a number of valuable remarks which will be found in the footnotes. Mr. A. G. Ellis kindly gave me the benefit of his advice in selecting the frontispiece as well as other help. I have also to thank the Editor of the *Athenæum* for permission to reprint my version of the Song of Vengeance by Ta'abbaṭa Sharr^{an}, which was originally published in that journal.

REYNOLD A. NICHOLSON.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Contents

		PAGE
PREFACE		ix
INTRODUCTION		xv
CHAPTER		
I.	SABA AND ḤIMYAR	1
II.	THE HISTORY AND LEGENDS OF THE PAGAN ARABS	30
III.	PRE-ISLAMIC POETRY, MANNERS, AND RELIGION	71
IV.	THE PROPHET AND THE KORAN	141
V.	THE ORTHODOX CALIPHATE AND THE UMAYYAD DYNASTY	181
VI.	THE CALIPHS OF BAGHDÁD	254
VII.	POETRY, LITERATURE, AND SCIENCE IN THE 'ABBÁSID PERIOD	285
VIII.	ORTHODOXY, FREE-THOUGHT, AND MYSTICISM	365
IX.	THE ARABS IN EUROPE	405
X.	FROM THE MONGOL INVASION TO THE PRESENT DAY	442
BIBLIOGRAPHY		471
INDEX		481

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Introduction

The Arabs belong to the great family of nations which on account of their supposed descent from Shem, the son of Noah, are commonly known as the 'Semites.'

The Semites.

This term includes the Babylonians and Assyrians, the Hebrews, the Phœnicians, the Aramæans, the Abyssinians, the Sabæans, and the Arabs, and although based on a classification that is not ethnologically precise—the Phœnicians and Sabæans, for example, being reckoned in Genesis, chap. x, among the descendants of Ham—it was well chosen by Eichhorn († 1827) to comprehend the closely allied peoples which have been named. Whether the original home of the undivided Semitic race was some part of Asia (Arabia, Armenia, or the district of the Lower Euphrates), or whether, according to a view which has lately found favour, the Semites crossed into Asia from Africa,[1] is still uncertain. Long before the epoch when they first appear in history they had branched off from the parent stock and formed separate nationalities. The relation of the Semitic languages to each other cannot be discussed here, but we may arrange them in the chronological order of the extant literature as follows:—[2]

[1] H. Grimme, *Weltgeschichte in Karakterbildern: Mohammed* (Munich, 1904), p. 6 sqq.

[2] *Cf.* Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen* (Leipzig, 1887), or the same scholar's article, 'Semitic Languages,' in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, 9th edition. Renan's *Histoire générale des langues sémitiques* (1855) is now

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

1. Babylonian or Assyrian (3000–500 B.C.).
2. Hebrew (from 1500 B.C.).
3. South Arabic, otherwise called Sabæan or Ḥimyarite (inscriptions from 800 B.C.).
4. Aramaic (inscriptions from 800 B.C.).
5. Phœnician (inscriptions from 700 B.C.).
6. Æthiopic (inscriptions from 350 A.D.).
7. Arabic (from 500 A.D.).

Notwithstanding that Arabic is thus, in a sense, the youngest of the Semitic languages, it is generally allowed to be nearer akin than any of them to the original archetype, the 'Ursemitisch,' from which they all are derived, just as the Arabs, by reason of their geographical situation and the monotonous uniformity of desert life, have in some respects preserved the Semitic character more purely and exhibited it more distinctly than any people of the same family. From the period of the great Moslem conquests (700 A.D.) to the present day they have extended their language, religion, and culture over an enormous expanse of territory, far surpassing that of all the ancient Semitic empires added together. It is true that the Arabs are no longer what they were in the Middle Ages, the ruling nation of the world, but loss of temporal power has only strengthened their spiritual dominion. Islam still reigns supreme in Western Asia; in Africa it has steadily advanced; even on European soil it has found in Turkey compensation for its banishment from Spain and Sicily. While most of the Semitic peoples have vanished, leaving but a meagre and ambiguous record, so that we cannot hope to become intimately acquainted with them, we possess in the

The Arabs as representatives of the Semitic race.

antiquated. An interesting essay on the importance of the Semites in the history of civilisation was published by F. Hommel as an introduction to his *Semitischen Völker und Sprachen*, vol. i (Leipzig, 1883). The dates in this table are of course only approximate.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

case of the Arabs ample materials for studying almost every phase of their development since the sixth century of the Christian era, and for writing the whole history of their national life and thought. This book, I need hardly say, makes no such pretensions. Even were the space at my disposal unlimited, a long time must elapse before the vast and various field of Arabic literature can be thoroughly explored and the results rendered accessible to the historian.

Arabs of the North and South.

From time immemorial Arabia was divided into North and South, not only by the trackless desert (*al-Rub' al-Khálí*, the 'Solitary Quarter') which stretches across the peninsula and forms a natural barrier to intercourse, but also by the opposition of two kindred races widely differing in their character and way of life. Whilst the inhabitants of the northern province (the Ḥijáz and the great central highland of Najd) were rude nomads sheltering in 'houses of hair,' and ever shifting to and fro in search of pasture for their camels, the people of Yemen or Arabia Felix are first mentioned in history as the inheritors of an ancient civilisation and as the owners of fabulous wealth —spices, gold and precious stones—which ministered to the luxury of King Solomon. The Bedouins of the North spoke Arabic—that is to say, the language of the Pre-islamic poems and of the Koran—whereas the southerners used a dialect called by Muḥammadans 'Ḥimyarite' and a peculiar script of which the examples known to us have been discovered and deciphered in comparatively recent times. Of these Sabæans —to adopt the designation given to them by Greek and Roman geographers—more will be said presently. The period of their bloom was drawing to a close in the early centuries of our era, and they have faded out of history before 600 A.D., when their northern neighbours first rise into prominence.

It was, no doubt, the consciousness of this racial distinction

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

that caused the view to prevail among Moslem genealogists that the Arabs followed two separate lines of descent from their common ancestor, Sám b. Núḥ (Shem, the son of Noah). As regards those of the North, their derivation from 'Adnán, a descendant of Ismá'íl (Ishmael) was universally recognised ; those of the South were traced back to Qaḥṭán, whom most genealogists identified with Yoqṭán (Joktan), the son of 'Ábir (Eber). Under the Yoqṭánids, who are the elder line, we find, together with the Sabæans and Ḥimyarites, several large and powerful tribes—*e.g.*, Ṭayyi', Kinda, and Tanúkh—which had settled in North and Central Arabia long before Islam, and were in no respect distinguishable from the Bedouins of Ishmaelite origin. As to 'Adnán, his exact genealogy is disputed, but all agree that he was of the posterity of Ismá'íl (Ishmael), the son of Ibráhím (Abraham) by Hájar (Hagar). The story runs that on the birth of Ismá'íl God commanded Abraham to journey to Mecca with Hagar and her son and to leave them there. They were seen by some Jurhumites, descendants of Yoqṭán, who took pity on them and resolved to settle beside them. Ismá'íl grew up with the sons of the strangers, learned to shoot the bow, and spoke their tongue. Then he asked of them in marriage, and they married him to one of their women.[1] The tables on the opposite page show the principal branches of the younger but by far the more important family of the Arabs which traced its pedigree through 'Adnán to Ismá'íl. A dotted line indicates the omission of one or more links in the genealogical chain.[2]

Ishmaelites and Yoqṭánids.

[1] Ibn Qutayba, *Kitábu 'l-Ma'árif*, ed. by Wüstenfeld, p. 18.

[2] Full information concerning the genealogy of the Arabs will be found in Wüstenfeld's *Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien* with its excellent *Register* (Göttingen, 1852–1853).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

I.

The Descendants of Rabí'a.

'Adnán.
|
Ma'add.
|
Nizár.
|
Rabí'a.

- 'Anaza.
- Wá'il.
  - Bakr.
  - Taghlib.
- Namir.

II.

The Descendants of Mudar.

'Adnán.
|
Ma'add.
|
Nizár.
|
Mudar.

- Qays 'Aylán.
  - Ghatafán.
    - 'Abs.
    - Dhubyán.
  - Sulaym.
  - Hawázin.
- Dabba.
- Tamím.
- Khuzayma.
  - Asad.
  - Kinána.
    - Fihr (Quraysh).[1]
- Hudhayl.

[1] The tribes Dabba, Tamím, Khuzayma, Hudhayl, Asad, Kinána, and Quraysh together formed a group which is known as Khindif, and is often distinguished from Qays 'Aylán.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

It is undeniable that these lineages are to some extent fictitious. There was no Pre-islamic science of genealogy, so that the first Muḥammadan investigators had only confused and scanty traditions to work on. They were biassed, moreover, by political, religious, and other considerations.[1] Thus their study of the Koran and of Biblical history led to the introduction of the patriarchs who stand at the head of their lists. Nor can we accept the national genealogy beginning with 'Adnán as entirely historical, though a great deal of it was actually stored in the memories of the Arabs at the time when Islam arose, and is corroborated by the testimony of the Pre-islamic poets.[2] On the other hand, the alleged descent of every tribe from an eponymous ancestor is inconsistent with facts established by modern research.[3] It is probable that many names represent merely a local or accidental union; and many more, *e.g.*, Ma'add, seem originally to have denoted large groups or confederations of tribes. The theory of a radical difference between the Northern Arabs and those of the South, corresponding to the fierce hostility which has always divided them since the earliest days of Islam,[4] may hold good if we restrict the term 'Yemenite' (Southern) to the civilised Sabæans, Ḥimyarites, &c., who dwelt in Yemen and spoke their own dialect, but can hardly apply to the Arabic-speaking 'Yemenite' Bedouins scattered all over the peninsula. Such criticism, however, does not affect the value of the genealogical documents regarded as an index of the popular mind. From this point of view legend is often superior to fact, and it must be our aim in the following chapters to set forth what

Character of Muḥammadan genealogy.

[1] Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 133 sqq., 177 sqq.

[2] Nöldeke in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 40, p. 177.

[3] See Margoliouth, *Mohammed and the Rise of Islam*, p. 4.

[4] Concerning the nature and causes of this antagonism see Goldziher, *op. cit.*, Part I, p. 78 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the Arabs believed rather than to examine whether or no they were justified in believing it.

'Arabic,' in its widest signification, has two principal dialects:—

1. South Arabic, spoken in Yemen and including Sabæan, Ḥimyarite, Minæan, with the kindred dialects of Mahra and Shiḥr.

2. Arabic proper, spoken in Arabia generally, exclusive of Yemen.

South Arabic.

Of the former language we possess nothing beyond the numerous inscriptions which have been collected by European travellers and which it will be convenient to discuss in the next chapter, where I shall give a brief sketch of the legendary history of the Sabæans and Ḥimyarites. South Arabic resembles Arabic in its grammatical forms, *e.g.*, the broken plural, the sign of the dual, and the manner of denoting indefiniteness by an affixed *m* (for which Arabic substitutes *n*) as well as in its vocabulary; its alphabet, which consists of twenty-nine letters, *Sin* and *Samech* being distinguished as in Hebrew, is more nearly akin to the Æthiopic. The Ḥimyarite Empire was overthrown by the Abyssinians in the sixth century after Christ, and by 600 A.D. South Arabic had become a dead language. From this time forward the dialect of the North established an almost universal supremacy and won for itself the title of 'Arabic' *par excellence.*[1]

The oldest specimens of Arabic writing.

The oldest monuments of written Arabic are modern in date compared with the Sabæan inscriptions, some of which take us back 2,500 years or thereabout. Apart from the inscriptions of Ḥijr in the northern Ḥijáz, and those of Ṣafá in the neighbourhood of Damascus (which, although written by northern Arabs before the Christian era, exhibit a peculiar character not unlike the

[1] The word 'Arabic' is always to be understood in this sense wherever it occurs in the following pages.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Sabæan and cannot be called Arabic in the usual acceptation of the term), the most ancient examples of Arabic writing which have hitherto been discovered appear in the trilingual (Syriac, Greek, and Arabic) inscription of Zabad,[1] south-east of Aleppo, dated 512 or 513 A.D., and the bilingual (Greek and Arabic) of Ḥarrán,[2] dated 568 A.D. With these documents we need not concern ourselves further, especially as their interpretation presents great difficulties. Very few among the Pre-islamic Arabs were able to read or write.[3] Those who could generally owed their skill to Jewish and Christian teachers, or to the influence of foreign culture radiating from Ḥíra and Ghassán. But although the Koran, which was first collected soon after the battle of Yamáma (633 A.D.), is the oldest Arabic book, the beginnings of literary composition in the Arabic language can be traced back to an earlier period. Probably all the Pre-islamic poems which have come down to us belong to the century preceding Islam (500–622 A.D.), but their elaborate form and technical perfection forbid the hypothesis that in them we have "the first sprightly runnings" of Arabian song. It may be said of these magnificent odes, as of the Iliad and Odyssey, that "they are works of highly finished art, which could not possibly have been produced until the poetical art had been practised for a long time." They were preserved during hundreds of years by oral tradition, as we shall explain elsewhere, and were committed to writing, for the most part, by the Moslem scholars of the early 'Abbásid age, *i.e.*, between 750 and 900 A.D. It is a noteworthy fact that the language of these poems, the authors of which represent many different tribes and districts of the

The Pre-islamic poems.

[1] First published by Sachau in *Monatsberichte der Kön. Preuss. Akad. der Wissenschaften zu Berlin* (February, 1881), p. 169 sqq.

[2] See De Vogüé, *Syrie Centrale, Inscriptions Sémitiques*, p. 117. Other references are given in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 35, p. 749.

[3] On this subject the reader may consult Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 110 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

peninsula, is one and the same. The dialectical variations are too trivial to be taken into account. We might conclude that the poets used an artificial dialect, not such as was commonly spoken but resembling the epic dialect of Ionia which was borrowed by Dorian and Æolian bards. When we find, however, that the language in question is employed not only by the wandering troubadours, who were often men of some culture, and the Christian Arabs of Ḥíra on the Euphrates, but also by goat-herds, brigands, and illiterate Bedouins of every description, there can be no room for doubt that in the poetry of the sixth century we hear the Arabic language as it was then spoken throughout the length and breadth of Arabia. The success of Muḥammad and the conquests made by Islam under the Orthodox Caliphs gave an entirely new importance to this classical idiom. Arabic became the sacred language of the whole Moslem world.

The Koran.

This was certainly due to the Koran; but, on the other hand, to regard the dialect of Mecca, in which the Koran is written, as the source and prototype of the Arabic language, and to call Arabic 'the dialect of Quraysh,' is utterly to reverse the true facts of the case. Muḥammad, as Nöldeke has observed, took the ancient poetry for a model; and in the early age of Islam it was the authority of the heathen poets (of whom Quraysh had singularly few) that determined the classical usage and set the standard of correct speech. Moslems, who held the Koran to be the Word of God and inimitable in point of style, naturally exalted the dialect of the Prophet's tribe above all others, even laying down the rule that every tribe spoke less purely in proportion to its distance from Mecca, but this view will not commend itself to the unprejudiced student. The Koran, however, exercised a unique influence on the history of the Arabic language and literature. We shall see in a subsequent chapter that the necessity of preserving the text of the Holy Book uncorrupted, and of elucidating its obscurities, caused

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the Moslems to invent a science of grammar and lexicography, and to collect the old Pre-Muḥammadan poetry and traditions which must otherwise have perished. When the Arabs settled as conquerors in Syria and Persia and mixed with foreign peoples, the purity of the classical language could no longer be maintained. While in Arabia itself, especially among the nomads of the desert, little difference was felt, in the provincial garrison towns and great centres of industry like Baṣra and Kúfa, where the population largely consisted of aliens who had embraced Islam and were rapidly being Arabicised, the door stood open for all sorts of depravation to creep in. Against this vulgar Arabic the philologists waged unrelenting war, and it was mainly through their exertions that the classical idiom triumphed over the dangers to which it was exposed.

Arabic in the Muḥammadan Empire.

Although the language of the pagan Bedouins did not survive intact—or survived, at any rate, only in the mouths of pedants and poets—it became, in a modified form, the universal medium of expression among the upper classes of Muḥammadan society. During the early Middle Ages it was spoken and written by all cultivated Moslems, of whatever nationality they might be, from the Indus to the Atlantic ; it was the language of the Court and the Church, of Law and Commerce, of Diplomacy and Literature and Science. When the Mongol invasion in the thirteenth century swept away the 'Abbásid Caliphate, and therewith the last vestige of political unity in Islam, classical Arabic ceased to be the κοινή or 'common dialect' of the Moslem world, and was supplanted in Arabia, Syria, Egypt, and other Arabic-speaking countries by a vulgar colloquial idiom. In these countries, however, it is still the language of business, literature, and education, and we are told on high authority that even now it "is undergoing a renaissance, and there is every likelihood of its again becoming a great literary vehicle."[1] And if, for those

[1] Professor Margoliouth in *J.R.A.S.* for 1905, p. 418

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Moslems who are not Arabs, it occupies relatively much the same position as Latin and Greek in modern European culture, we must not forget that the Koran, its most renowned masterpiece, is learned by every Moslem when he first goes to school, is repeated in his daily prayers, and influences the whole course of his life to an extent which the ordinary Christian can hardly realise.

I hope that I may be excused for ignoring in a work such as this the scanty details regarding Ancient Arabian history which it is possible to glean from the Babylonian and Assyrian monuments, especially when the very uncertain nature of the evidence is taken into consideration. Any sketch that might be drawn of the Arabs, say from 2500 B.C. to the beginning of our era, would resemble a map of Cathay delineated by Sir John Mandeville. But amongst the shadowy peoples of the peninsula one, besides Saba and Ḥimyar, makes something more than a transient impression. The Nabaṭæans (*Nabaṭ*, pl. *Anbáṭ*) dwelt in towns, drove a flourishing trade long before the birth of Christ, and founded the kingdom of Petra, which attained a high degree of prosperity and culture until it was annexed by Trajan in 105 A.D. These Nabaṭæans were Arabs and spoke Arabic, although in default of a script of their own they used Aramaic for writing.[1] Muḥammadan authors identify them with the Aramæans, but careful study of their inscriptions has shown that this view, which was accepted by Quatremère,[2] is erroneous. 'The Book of Nabaṭaean Agriculture' (*Kitábu 'l-Faláḥat al-Nabaṭiyya*), composed in 904 A.D. by the Moslem Ibnu 'l-Waḥshiyya, who professed to have translated it from the Chaldæan, is now known to be a forgery. I only mention it here as an instance of the way in which Moslems apply the term 'Nabaṭæan'; for the title in question does not, of course, refer to Petra but to Babylon.

The Nabaṭæans.

[1] Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen*, p. 30 sqq. and p. 43.

[2] *Journal Asiatique* (March, 1835), p. 209 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

From what has been said the reader will perceive that the history of the Arabs, so far as our knowledge of it is derived from Arabic sources, may be divided into the following periods:—

Three periods of Arabian history.

I. The Sabæan and Ḥimyarite period, from 800 B.C., the date of the oldest South Arabic inscriptions, to 500 A.D.

II. The Pre-islamic period (500–622 A.D.).

III. The Muḥammadan period, beginning with the Flight (Hijra, or Hegira, as the word is generally written) of the Prophet from Mecca to Medína in 622 A.D. and extending to the present day.

For the first period, which is confined to the history of Yemen or South Arabia, we have no contemporary Arabic sources except the inscriptions. The vague and scanty information which these supply is appreciably increased by the traditions preserved in the Pre-islamic poems, in the Koran, and particularly in the later Muḥammadan literature. It is true that most of this material is legendary and would justly be ignored by any one engaged in historical research, but I shall nevertheless devote a good deal of space to it, since my principal object is to make known the beliefs and opinions of the Arabs themselves.

The Sabæans and Ḥimyarites.

The second period is called by Muḥammadan writers the *Jáhiliyya*, *i.e.*, the Age of Ignorance or Barbarism.[1] Its characteristics are faithfully and vividly reflected in the songs and odes of the heathen poets which have come down to us. There was no prose literature at that time: it was the poet's privilege to sing the history of his own people, to record their genealogies, to celebrate their feats of arms, and to extol their virtues. Although an immense quantity of Pre-islamic verse has been lost for ever,

The pagan Arabs.

[1] Strictly speaking, the *Jáhiliyya* includes the whole time between Adam and Muḥammad, but in a narrower sense it may be used, as here to denote the Pre-islamic period of Arabic Literature.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

we still possess a considerable remnant, which, together with the prose narratives compiled by Moslem philologists and antiquaries, enables us to picture the life of those wild days, in its larger aspects, accurately enough.

The last and by far the most important of the three periods comprises the history of the Arabs under Islam. It falls naturally into the following sections, which are enumerated in this place in order that the reader may see at a glance the broad political outlines of the complex and difficult epoch which lies before him.

The Moslem Arabs.

A. The Life of Muḥammad.

About the beginning of the seventh century of the Christian era a man named Muḥammad, son of 'Abdulláh, of the tribe Quraysh, appeared in Mecca with a Divine revelation (Koran). He called on his fellow-townsmen to renounce idolatry and worship the One God. In spite of ridicule and persecution he continued for several years to preach the religion of Islam in Mecca, but, making little progress there, he fled in 622 A.D. to the neighbouring city of Medína. From this date his cause prospered exceedingly. During the next decade the whole of Arabia submitted to his rule and did lip-service at least to the new Faith.

Life of Muḥammad.

B. The Orthodox Caliphate (632–661 A.D.).

On the death of the Prophet the Moslems were governed in turn by four of the most eminent among his Companions—Abú Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmán, and 'Alí—who bore the title of *Khalífa* (Caliph), *i.e.*, Vicegerent, and are commonly described as the Orthodox Caliphs (*al-Khulafá al-Ráshidún*). Under their guidance Islam was firmly established in the peninsula and was spread far beyond its borders. Hosts of Bedouins settled as military colonists in the fertile plains of Syria and Persia. Soon, however, the

The Orthodox Caliphs.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

recently founded empire was plunged into civil war. The murder of 'Uthmán gave the signal for a bloody strife between rival claimants of the Caliphate. 'Alí, the son-in-law of the Prophet, assumed the title, but his election was contested by the powerful governor of Syria, Mu'áwiya b. Abí Sufyán.

C. The Umayyad Dynasty (661–750 A.D.).

'Alí fell by an assassin's dagger, and Mu'áwiya succeeded to the Caliphate, which remained in his family for ninety years.

The Umayyad dynasty.

The Umayyads, with a single exception, were Arabs first and Moslems afterwards. Religion sat very lightly on them, but they produced some able and energetic princes, worthy leaders of an imperial race. By 732 A.D. the Moslem conquests had reached the utmost limit which they ever attained. The Caliph in Damascus had his lieutenants beyond the Oxus and the Pyrenees, on the shores of the Caspian and in the valley of the Nile. Meantime the strength of the dynasty was being sapped by political and religious dissensions nearer home. The Shí'ites, who held that the Caliphate belonged by Divine right to 'Alí and his descendants, rose in revolt again and again. They were joined by the Persian Moslems, who loathed the Arabs and the oppressive Umayyad government. The 'Abbásids, a family closely related to the Prophet, put themselves at the head of the agitation. It ended in the complete overthrow of the reigning house, which was almost exterminated.

D. The 'Abbásid Dynasty (750–1258 A.D.).

The 'Abbásid dynasty.

Hitherto the Arabs had played a dominant rôle in the Moslem community, and had treated the non-Arab Moslems with exasperating contempt. Now the tables were turned. We pass from the period of Arabian nationalism to one of Persian ascendancy and cosmopolitan culture. The flower of the 'Abbásid troops were Persians from Khurásán; Baghdád, the wonderful

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

'Abbásid capital, was built on Persian soil; and Persian nobles filled the highest offices of state at the 'Abbásid court. The new dynasty, if not religious, was at least favourable to religion, and took care to live in the odour of sanctity. For a time Arabs and Persians forgot their differences and worked together as good Moslems ought. Piety was no longer its own reward. Learning enjoyed munificent patronage. This was the Golden Age of Islam, which culminated in the glorious reign of Hárún al-Rashíd (786–809 A.D.). On his death peace was broken once more, and the mighty empire began slowly to collapse. As province after province cut itself loose from the Caliphate, numerous independent dynasties sprang up, while the Caliphs became helpless puppets in the hands of Turkish mercenaries. Their authority was still formally recognised in most Muḥammadan countries, but since the middle of the ninth century they had little or no real power.

E. From the Mongol invasion to the present day (1258 A.D. —).

The Post-Mongolian period.

The Mongol hordes under Húlágú captured Baghdád in 1258 A.D. and made an end of the Caliphate. Sweeping onward, they were checked by the Egyptian Mamelukes and retired into Persia, where, some fifty years afterwards, they embraced Islam. The successors of Húlágú, the Íl-kháns, reigned in Persia until a second wave of barbarians under Tímúr spread devastation and anarchy through Western Asia (1380–1405 A.D.). The unity of Islam, in a political sense, was now destroyed. Out of the chaos three Muḥammadan empires gradually took shape. In 1358 the Ottoman Turks crossed the Hellespont, in 1453 they entered Constantinople, and in 1517 Syria, Egypt, and Arabia were added to their dominions. Persia became an independent kingdom under the Ṣafawids (1502–1736); while in India the empire of the Great Moguls was founded by Bábar,

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

a descendant of Tímúr, and gloriously maintained by his successors, Akbar and Awrangzíb (1525–1707).

Some of the political events which have been summarised above will be treated more fully in the body of this work; others will receive no more than a passing notice.

Arabian literary history.

The ideas which reveal themselves in Arabic literature are so intimately connected with the history of the people, and so incomprehensible apart from the external circumstances in which they arose, that I have found myself obliged to dwell at considerable length on various matters of historical interest, in order to bring out what is really characteristic and important from our special point of view. The space devoted to the early periods (500–750 A.D.) will not appear excessive if they are seen in their true light as the centre and heart of Arabian history. During the next hundred years Moslem civilisation reaches its zenith, but the Arabs recede more and more into the background. The Mongol invasion virtually obliterated their national life, though in Syria and Egypt they formed an intellectual aristocracy under Turkish rule, and in Spain we meet them struggling desperately against Christendom. Many centuries earlier, in the palmy days of the 'Abbásid Empire, the Arabs *pur sang* contributed only a comparatively small share to the literature which bears their name. I have not, however, enforced the test of nationality so strictly as to exclude all foreigners or men of mixed origin who wrote in Arabic. It may be said that the work of Persians (who even nowadays are accustomed to use Arabic when writing on theological and philosophical subjects) cannot illustrate the history of Arabian thought, but only the influence exerted upon Arabian thought by Persian ideas, and that consequently it must stand aside unless admitted for this definite purpose. But what shall we do in the case of those numerous and celebrated authors who are neither wholly

Writers who are wholly or partly of foreign extraction.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Arab nor wholly Persian, but unite the blood of both races? Must we scrutinise their genealogies and try to discover which strain preponderates? That would be a tedious and unprofitable task. The truth is that after the Umayyad period no hard-and-fast line can be drawn between the native and foreign elements in Arabic literature. Each reacted on the other, and often both are combined indissolubly. Although they must be distinguished as far as possible, we should be taking a narrow and pedantic view of literary history if we insisted on regarding them as mutually exclusive.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER I

SABA AND ḤIMYAR

WITH the Sabæans Arabian history in the proper sense may be said to begin, but as a preliminary step we must take account of certain races which figure more or less prominently in legend, and are considered by Moslem chroniclers to have been the original inhabitants of the country. Among these are the peoples of 'Ád and Thamúd, which are constantly held up in the Koran as terrible examples of the pride that goeth before destruction. The home of the 'Ádites was in Ḥaḍramawt, the province adjoining Yemen, on the borders of the desert named *Aḥqáfu 'l-Raml.* It is doubtful whether they were Semites, possibly of Aramaic descent, who were subdued and exterminated by invaders from the north, or, as Hommel maintains,[1] the representatives of an imposing non-Semitic culture which survives in the tradition of 'Many-columned Iram,'[2] the Earthly Paradise built by Shaddád, one of their kings. The story of their destruction is related as follows:[3] They were a people of gigantic strength and stature, worshipping idols and committing all

Primitive races.

Legend of 'Ad.

[1] *Die Namen der Säugethiere bei den Südsemitischen Völkern*, p. 343 seq.

[2] *Iramu Dhátu 'l-'Imád* (Koran, lxxxix, 6). The sense of these words is much disputed. See especially Ṭabarí's explanation in his great commentary on the Koran (O. Loth in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 35, p. 626 sqq.).

[3] I have abridged Ṭabarí, *Annals*, i, 231 sqq. *Cf.* also chapters vii, xi, xxvi, and xlvi of the Koran.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

manner of wrong; and when God sent to them a prophet, Húd by name, who should warn them to repent, they answered: "O Húd, thou hast brought us no evidence, and we will not abandon our gods for thy saying, nor will we believe in thee. We say one of our gods hath afflicted thee with madness."[1] Then a fearful drought fell upon the land of 'Ád, so that they sent a number of their chief men to Mecca to pray for rain. On arriving at Mecca the envoys were hospitably received by the Amalekite prince, Mu'áwiya b. Bakr, who entertained them with wine and music—for he had two famous singing-girls known as *al-Jarádatán*; which induced them to neglect their mission for the space of a whole month. At last, however, they got to business, and their spokesman had scarce finished his prayer when three clouds appeared, of different colours—white, red, and black—and a voice cried from heaven, "Choose for thyself and for thy people!" He chose the black cloud, deeming that it had the greatest store of rain, whereupon the voice chanted—

> "Thou hast chosen embers dun | that will spare of 'Ád not one | that will leave nor father nor son | ere him to death they shall have done."

Then God drove the cloud until it stood over the land of 'Ád, and there issued from it a roaring wind that consumed the whole people except a few who had taken the prophet's warning to heart and had renounced idolatry.

From these, in course of time, a new people arose, who are called 'the second 'Ád.' They had their settlements in Yemen, in the region of Saba. The building of the great Dyke of Ma'rib is commonly attributed to their king, Luqmán b. 'Ád, about whom many fables are told. He was surnamed 'The Man of the Vultures' (*Dhu 'l-Nusúr*), because it had been granted to him that he should live as long as seven vultures, one after the other.

[1] Koran, xi, 56–57.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

In North Arabia, between the Ḥijáz and Syria, dwelt the kindred race of Thamúd, described in the Koran (vii, 72) as inhabiting houses which they cut for themselves in the rocks. Evidently Muḥammad did not know the true nature of the hewn chambers which are still to be seen at Ḥijr (Madá'in Ṣáliḥ), a week's journey northward from Medína, and which are proved by the Nabaṭæan inscriptions engraved on them to have been sepulchral monuments.[1] Thamúd sinned in the same way as 'Ád, and suffered a like fate. They scouted the prophet Ṣáliḥ, refusing to believe in him unless he should work a miracle. Ṣáliḥ then caused a she-camel big with young to come forth from a rock, and bade them do her no hurt, but one of the miscreants, Qudár the Red (al-Aḥmar), hamstrung and killed her. "Whereupon a great earthquake overtook them with a noise of thunder, and in the morning they lay dead in their houses, flat upon their breasts." [2] The author of this catastrophe became a byword: Arabs say, "More unlucky than the hamstringer of the she-camel," or "than Aḥmar of Thamúd." It should be pointed out that, unlike the 'Ádites, of whom we find no trace in historical times, the Thamúdites are mentioned as still existing by Diodorus Siculus and Ptolemy; and they survived down to the fifth century A.D. in the corps of *equites Thamudeni* attached to the army of the Byzantine emperors.

Legend of Thamúd.

Besides 'Ád and Thamúd, the list of primitive races includes the 'Amálíq (Amalekites)—a purely fictitious term under which the Moslem antiquaries lumped together several peoples of an age long past, *e.g.*, the Canaanites and the Philistines. We hear of Amalekite settlements in the Tiháma (Netherland) of Mecca and in other parts of the peninsula. Finally, mention should

'Amálíq.

[1] See Doughty's *Documents Epigraphiques recueillis dans le nord de l'Arabie*, p. 12 sqq.

[2] Koran, vii, 76.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

be made of Ṭasm and Jadís, sister tribes of which nothing is recorded except the fact of their destruction and the events that brought it about. The legendary narrative in which these are embodied has some archæological interest as showing the existence in early Arabian society of a barbarous feudal custom, 'le droit du seigneur,' but it is time to pass on to the main subject of this chapter.

Ṭasm and Jadís.

The Pre-islamic history of the Yoqṭánids, or Southern Arabs, on which we now enter, is virtually the history of two peoples, the Sabæans and the Ḥimyarites, who formed the successive heads of a South Arabian empire extending from the Red Sea to the Persian Gulf.

History of the Yoqṭánids.

Saba[1] (Sheba of the Old Testament) is often incorrectly used to denote the whole of Arabia Felix, whereas it was only one, though doubtless the first in power and importance, of several kingdoms, the names and capitals of which are set down in the works of Greek and Roman geographers. However exaggerated may be the glowing accounts that we find there of Sabæan wealth and magnificence, it is certain that Saba was a flourishing commercial state many centuries before the birth of Christ.[2] "Sea-traffic between the ports of East Arabia and India was very early established, and Indian products, especially spices and rare animals (apes and peacocks) were conveyed to the coast of 'Umán. Thence, apparently even in the tenth century B.C., they went overland to the Arabian Gulf, where they

The Sabæans.

[1] Properly Saba' with *hamza*, both syllables being short.

[2] The oldest record of Saba to which a date can be assigned is found in the Assyrian cuneiform inscriptions. We read in the Annals of King Sargon (715 B.C.), "I received the tribute of Pharaoh, the King of Egypt, of Shamsiyya, the Queen of Arabia, of Ithamara the Sabæan—gold, spices, slaves, horses, and camels." Ithamara is identical with Yatha'amar, a name borne by several kings of Saba.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

were shipped to Egypt for the use of the Pharaohs and grandees. . . . The difficulty of navigating the Red Sea caused the land route to be preferred for the traffic between Yemen and Syria. From Shabwat (Sabota) in Ḥaḍramawt the caravan road went to Ma'rib (Mariaba), the Sabæan capital, then northward to Macoraba (the later Mecca), and by way of Petra to Gaza on the Mediterranean." [1] The prosperity of the Sabæans lasted until the Indian trade, instead of going overland, began to go by sea along the coast of Ḥaḍramawt and through the straits of Báb al-Mandab. In consequence of this change, which seems to have taken place in the first century A.D., their power gradually declined, a great part of the population was forced to seek new homes in the north, their cities became desolate, and their massive aqueducts crumbled to pieces. We shall see presently that Arabian legend has crystallised the results of a long period of decay into a single fact—the bursting of the Dyke of Ma'rib.

The Ḥimyarites.

The disappearance of the Sabæans left the way open for a younger branch of the same stock, namely, the Ḥimyarites, or, as they are called by classical authors, Homeritæ, whose country lay between Saba and the sea. Under their kings, known as Tubba's, they soon became the dominant power in South Arabia and exercised sway, at least ostensibly, over the northern tribes down to the end of the fifth century A.D., when the latter revolted and, led by Kulayb b. Rabí'a, shook off the suzerainty of Yemen in a great battle at Khazází.[2] The Ḥimyarites never flourished like the Sabæans. Their maritime situation exposed them more to attack, while the depopulation of the country had seriously weakened their military strength. The Abyssinians—originally colonists from Yemen—made repeated attempts to gain a

[1] A. Müller, *Der Islam im Morgen und Abendland*, vol. i, p. 24 seq.

[2] Nöldeke, however, declares the traditions which represent Kulayb as leading the Rabí'a clans to battle against the combined strength of Yemen to be entirely unhistorical (*Fünf Mo'allaqát*, i, 44).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

foothold, and frequently managed to instal governors who were in turn expelled by native princes. Of these Abyssinian viceroys the most famous is Abraha, whose unfortunate expedition against Mecca will be related in due course. Ultimately the Ḥimyarite Empire was reduced to a Persian dependency. It had ceased to exist as a political power about a hundred years before the rise of Islam.

Sources of information.

The chief Arabian sources of information concerning Saba and Ḥimyar are (1) the so-called 'Ḥimyarite' inscriptions, and (2) the traditions, almost entirely of a legendary kind, which are preserved in Muḥammadan literature.

The South Arabic or Sabæan inscriptions.

Although the South Arabic language may have maintained itself sporadically in certain remote districts down to the Prophet's time or even later, it had long ago been superseded as a medium of daily intercourse by the language of the North, the Arabic *par excellence*, which henceforth reigns without a rival throughout the peninsula. The dead language, however, did not wholly perish. Already in the sixth century A.D. the Bedouin rider made his camel kneel down while he stopped to gaze wonderingly at inscriptions in a strange character engraved on walls of rock or fragments of hewn stone, and compared the mysterious, half-obliterated markings to the almost unrecognisable traces of the camping-ground which for him was fraught with tender memories. These inscriptions are often mentioned by Muḥammadan authors, who included them in the term *Musnad*. That some Moslems—probably very few—could not only read the South Arabic alphabet, but were also acquainted with the elementary rules of orthography, appears from a passage in the eighth book of Hamdání's *Iklíl;* but though they might decipher proper names and make out the sense of words here and there, they had no real knowledge of the language. How the inscriptions were discovered anew by the enterprise of European travellers,

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

gradually deciphered and interpreted until they became capable of serving as a basis for historical research, and what results the study of them has produced, this I shall now set forth as briefly as possible. Before doing so it is necessary to explain why instead of 'Ḥimyarite inscriptions' and 'Ḥimyarite language' I have adopted the less familiar designations 'South Arabic' or 'Sabæan.' 'Ḥimyarite' is equally misleading, whether applied to the language of the inscriptions or to the inscriptions themselves. As regards the language, it was spoken in one form or another not by the Ḥimyarites alone, but also by the Sabæans, the Minæans, and all the different peoples of Yemen.

Objections to the term 'Ḥimyarite.'

Muḥammadans gave the name of 'Ḥimyarite' to the ancient language of Yemen for the simple reason that the Ḥimyarites were the most powerful race in that country during the last centuries preceding Islam. Had all the inscriptions belonged to the period of Ḥimyarite supremacy, they might with some justice have been named after the ruling people; but the fact is that many date from a far earlier age, some going back to the eighth century B.C., perhaps nearly a thousand years before the Ḥimyarite Empire was established. The term 'Sabæan' is less open to objection, for it may fairly be regarded as a national rather than a political denomination. On the whole, however, I prefer 'South Arabic' to either.

Among the pioneers of exploration in Yemen the first to interest himself in the discovery of inscriptions was Carsten Niebuhr, whose *Beschreibung von Arabien*, published in 1772, conveyed to Europe the report that inscriptions which, though he had not seen them, he conjectured to be 'Ḥimyarite,' existed in the ruins of the once famous city of Ẓafár. On one occasion a Dutchman who had turned Muḥammadan showed him the copy of an inscription in a completely unknown alphabet, but "at that time (he says) being very ill with a violent fever, I had more reason to prepare myself for death

Discovery and decipherment of the South Arabic inscriptions.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft

than to collect old inscriptions." [1] Thus the opportunity was lost, but curiosity had been awakened, and in 1810 Ulrich Jasper Seetzen discovered and copied several inscriptions in the neighbourhood of Ẓafár. Unfortunately these copies, which had to be made hastily, were very inexact. He also purchased an inscription, which he took away with him and copied at leisure, but his ignorance of the character led him to mistake the depressions in the stone for letters, so that the conclusions he came to were naturally of no value.[2] The first serviceable copies of South Arabic inscriptions were brought to Europe by English officers employed on the survey of the southern and western coasts of Arabia. Lieutenant J. R. Wellsted published the inscriptions of Ḥiṣn Ghuráb and Naqb al-Ḥajar in his *Travels in Arabia* (1838).

Meanwhile Emil Rödiger, Professor of Oriental Languages at Halle, with the help of two manuscripts of the Berlin Royal Library containing 'Ḥimyarite' alphabets, took the first step towards a correct decipherment by refuting the idea, for which De Sacy's authority had gained general acceptance, that the South Arabic script ran from left to right[3]; he showed, moreover, that the end of every word was marked by a straight perpendicular line.[4] Wellsted's inscriptions, together with those which Hulton and Cruttenden brought to light at Ṣan'á, were deciphered by Gesenius and Rödiger working independently (1841). Hitherto England and Germany had shared the

[1] *Op. cit.*, p. 94 seq. An excellent account of the progress made in discovering and deciphering the South Arabic inscriptions down to the year 1841 is given by Rödiger, *Excurs ueber himjaritische Inschriften*, in his German translation of Wellsted's *Travels in Arabia*, vol. ii, p. 368 sqq.

[2] Seetzen's inscriptions were published in *Fundgruben des Orients*, vol. ii (Vienna, 1811), p. 282 sqq. The one mentioned above was afterwards deciphered and explained by Mordtmann in the *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 89 seq.

[3] The oldest inscriptions, however, run from left to right and from right to left alternately (*βουστροφηδόν*).

[4] *Notiz ueber die himjaritische Schrift nebst doppeltem Alphabet derselben* in *Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, vol. i (Göttingen, 1837), p. 332 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

credit of discovery, but a few years later France joined hands with them and was soon leading the way with characteristic brilliance. In 1843 Th. Arnaud, starting from Ṣan'á, succeeded in discovering the ruins of Ma'rib, the ancient Sabæan metropolis, and in copying at the risk of his life between fifty and sixty inscriptions, which were afterwards published in the *Journal Asiatique* and found an able interpreter in Osiander.[1] Still more important were the results of the expedition undertaken in 1870 by Joseph Halévy, who, disguised as a Jew, penetrated into the Jawf, or country lying east of Ṣan'á, which no European had traversed before him since 24 B.C., when Ælius Gallus led a Roman army by the same route. After enduring great fatigues and meeting with many perilous adventures, Halévy brought back copies of nearly seven hundred inscriptions.[2] During the last twenty-five years much fresh material has been collected by E. Glaser and Julius Euting, while study of that already existing by Prætorius, Halévy, D. H. Müller, Mordtmann, and other scholars has substantially enlarged our knowledge of the language, history, and religion of South Arabia in the Pre-islamic age.

Neither the names of the Ḥimyarite monarchs, as they appear in the lists drawn up by Muḥammadan historians, nor the order in which these names are arranged can pretend to accuracy. If they are historical persons at all they must have reigned in fairly recent times, perhaps a short while before the rise of Islam, and probably they were unimportant princes whom the legend has thrown back into the ancient epoch, and has invested with heroic attributes. Any one who doubts this has only to compare the modern lists with those which have been made from the material in the inscriptions.[3] D. H.

[1] See Arnaud's *Relation d'un voyage à Mareb (Saba) dans l'Arabie méridionale* in the *Journal Asiatique*, 4th series, vol. v (1845), p. 211 sqq. and p. 309 sqq.

[2] See *Rapport sur une mission archéologique dans le Yémen* in the *Journal Asiatique*, 6th series, vol. xix (1872), pp. 5–98, 129–266, 489–547.

[3] See D. H. Müller, *Die Burgen und Schlösser Südarabiens* in *S.B.W.A.*, vol. 97, p. 981 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Müller has collected the names of thirty-three Sabæan kings. Certain names are often repeated—a proof of the existence of ruling dynasties—and ornamental epithets are usually attached to them. Thus we find Dhamar-ʿalí Dhirríḥ (Glorious), Yathaʿamar Bayyin (Distinguished), Kariba'íl Watár Yuhanʿim (Great, Beneficent), Samahʿalí Yanúf (Exalted). Moreover, the kings bear different titles corresponding to three distinct periods of Sabæan history, viz., 'Prince of Saba' (*Mukarrib Saba*),[1] 'King of Saba' (*Malk Saba*), and 'King of Saba and Raydán.' In this way it is possible to determine approximately the age of the various buildings and inscriptions, and to show that they do not belong, as had hitherto been generally supposed, to the time of Christ, but that in some cases they are at least eight hundred years older.

The historical value of the inscriptions.

How widely the peaceful, commerce-loving people of Saba and Ḥimyar differed in character from the wild Arabs to whom Muḥammad was sent appears most strikingly in their submissive attitude towards their gods, which forms, as Goldziher has remarked, the key-note of the South Arabian monuments.[2] The prince erects a thank-offering to the gods who gave him victory over his enemies; the priest dedicates his children and all his possessions; the warrior who has been blessed with "due man-slayings," or booty, or escape from death records his gratitude, and piously hopes for a continuance of favour. The dead are conceived as living happily under divine protection; they are venerated and sometimes deified.[3] The following inscription,

Votive inscriptions.

[1] The name *Mukarrib* apparently combines the significations of prince and priest.

[2] Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 3.

[3] See F. Prætorius, *Unsterblichkeitsglaube und Heiligenverehrung bei den Himyaren* in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 27, p. 645. Hubert Grimme has given an interesting sketch of the religious ideas and customs of the Southern Arabs in *Weltgeschichte in Karakterbildern : Mohammed* (Munich, 1904), p. 29 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

translated by Lieut.-Col. W. F. Prideaux, is a typical example of its class :—

"Sa'd-iláh and his sons, Benú Marthad[im], have endowed Il-Maḳah of Hirrán with this tablet, because Il-Maḳah, lord of Awwám Dhú-'Irán Alú, has favourably heard the prayer addressed to him, and has consequently heard the Benú Marthad[im] when they offered the first-fruits of their fertile lands of Arhaḳim in the presence of Il-Maḳah of Hirrán, and Il-Maḳah of Hirrán has favourably heard the prayer addressed to him that he would protect the plains and meadows and this tribe in their habitations, in consideration of the frequent gifts throughout the year ; and truly his (Sa'd-iláh's) sons will descend to Arhaḳim, and they will indeed sacrifice in the two shrines of 'Athtor and Shams[im], and there shall be a sacrifice in Hirrán—both in order that Il-Maḳah may afford protection to those fields of Bin Marthad[im] as well as that he may favourably listen—and in the sanctuary of Il-Maḳah of Ḥarwat, and therefore may he keep them in safety according to the sign in which Sa'd-iláh was instructed, the sign which he saw in the sanctuary of Il-Maḳah of Na'mán ; and as for Il-Maḳah of Hirrán, he has protected those fertile lands of Arhaḳim from hail and from all misfortune (*or*, from cold and from all extreme heat).[1]

In concluding this very inadequate account of the South Arabic inscriptions I must claim the indulgence of my readers, who are aware how difficult it is to write clearly and accurately upon any subject without first-hand knowledge, in particular when the results of previous research are continually being transformed by new workers in the same field.

Literary sources.

Fortunately we possess a considerable literary supplement to these somewhat austere and meagre remains. Our knowledge of South Arabian geography, antiquities, and legendary history is largely derived from the works of two natives of Yemen, who were filled with enthusiasm for its ancient glories, and whose writings, though different as fact and fable, are from the present point of view equally instructive—Ḥasan b. Aḥmad al-Hamdání and

[1] *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archæology*, vol. 5, p. 409.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Nashwán b. Sa'íd al-Ḥimyarí. Besides an excellent geography of Arabia (*Ṣifatu Jazírat al-'Arab*), which has been edited by D. H. Müller, Hamdání left a great work on the history and antiquities of Yemen, entitled *al-Iklíl* ('The Crown'), and divided into ten books under the following heads:—[1]

Hamdání († 945 A.D.).

Book I. *Compendium of the beginning and origins of genealogy.*
Book II. *Genealogy of the descendants of al-Hamaysa' b. Ḥimyar.*
Book III. *Concerning the pre-eminent qualities of Qaḥṭán.*
Book IV. *Concerning the first period of history down to the reign of Tubba' Abú Karib.*
Book V. *Concerning the middle period from the accession of As'ad Tubba' to the reign of Dhú Nuwás.*
Book VI. *Concerning the last period down to the rise of Islam.*
Book VII. *Criticism of false traditions and absurd legends.*
Book VIII. *Concerning the castles, cities, and tombs of the Ḥimyarites; the extant poetry of 'Alqama,[2] the elegies, the inscriptions, and other matters.*
Book IX. *Concerning the proverbs and wisdom of the Ḥimyarites in the Ḥimyarite language, and concerning the alphabet of the inscriptions.*
Book X. *Concerning the genealogy of Ḥáshid and Bakíl* (the two principal tribes of Hamdán).

The same intense patriotism which caused Hamdání to devote himself to scientific research inspired Nashwán b. Sa'íd, who descended on the father's side from one of the ancient princely families of Yemen, to recall the legendary past and become the laureate of a long vanished and well-nigh forgotten empire. In 'The Ḥimyarite Ode' (*al-Qaṣídatu 'l-Ḥimyariyya*) he sings the might and grandeur of the monarchs who ruled over his people, and moralises in true Muḥammadan spirit upon the

Nashwán b. Sa'íd al-Ḥimyarí († 1177 A.D.).

[1] This table of contents is quoted by D. H. Müller (*Südarabische Studien*, p. 108, n. 2) from the title-page of the British Museum MS. of the eighth book of the *Iklíl*. No complete copy of the work is known to exist, but considerable portions of it are preserved in the British Museum and in the Berlin Royal Library.

[2] The poet 'Alqama b. Dhí Jadan, whose verses are often cited in the commentary on the 'Ḥimyarite Ode.'

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

fleetingness of life and the futility of human ambition.[1] Accompanying the Ode, which has little value except as a comparatively unfalsified record of royal names,[2] is a copious historical commentary either by Nashwán himself, as Von Kremer thinks highly probable, or by some one who lived about the same time. Those for whom history represents an aggregate of naked facts would find nothing to the purpose in this commentary, where threads of truth are almost inextricably interwoven with fantastic and fabulous embroideries. A literary form was first given to such legends by the professional story-tellers of early Islam. One of these, the South Arabian 'Abíd b. Sharya, visited Damascus by command of the Caliph Mu'áwiya I, who questioned him "concerning the ancient traditions, the kings of the Arabs and other races, the cause of the confusion of tongues, and the history of the dispersion of mankind in the various countries of the world,"[3] and gave orders that his answers should be put together in writing and published under his name. This work, of which unfortunately no copy has come down to us, was entitled 'The Book of the Kings and the History of the Ancients' (*Kitábu 'l-Mulúk wa-akhbáru 'l-Máḍín*). Mas'údí (†956 A.D.) speaks of it as a well-known book, enjoying a wide circulation.[4] It was used by the commentator of the Ḥimyarite Ode, either at first hand or through the medium of Hamdání's *Iklíl*. We may regard it, like the commentary itself, as a historical romance in which most of the characters and some of the events are real, adorned with fairy-tales, fictitious verses,

'Abíd b. Sharya.

[1] *Die Himjarische Kasideh* herausgegeben und übersetzt von Alfred von Kremer (Leipzig, 1865). *The Lay of the Himyarites*, by W. F. Prideaux (Sehore, 1879).

[2] Nashwán was a philologist of some repute. His great dictionary, the *Shamsu 'l-'Ulúm*, is a valuable aid to those engaged in the study of South Arabian antiquities. It has been used by D. H. Müller to fix the correct spelling of proper names which occur in the Ḥimyarite Ode (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 29, p. 620 sqq.; *Südarabische Studien*, p. 143 sqq.).

[3] *Fihrist*, p. 89, l. 26.

[4] *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, p. 89.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and such entertaining matter as a man of learning and story-teller by trade might naturally be expected to introduce. Among the few remaining Muḥammadan authors who bestowed special attention on the Pre-islamic period of South Arabian history, I shall mention here only Ḥamza of Iṣfahán, the eighth book of whose Annals (finished in 961 A.D.) provides a useful sketch, with brief chronological details, of the Tubba'ṡ or Ḥimyarite kings of Yemen.

Ḥamza of Iṣfahán.

Qaḥṭán, the ancestor of the Southern Arabs, was succeeded by his son Ya'rub, who is said to have been the first to use the Arabic language, and the first to receive the salutations with which the Arabs were accustomed to address their kings, viz., "*In'im ṣabáḥan*" ("Good morning!") and "*Abayta 'l-la'na*" ("Mayst thou avoid malediction!"). His grandson, 'Abd Shams Saba, is named as the founder of Ma'rib and the builder of the famous Dyke, which, according to others, was constructed by Luqmán b. 'Ád. Saba had two sons, Ḥimyar and Kahlán. Before his death he deputed the sovereign authority to Ḥimyar, and the task of protecting the frontiers and making war upon the enemy to Kahlán. Thus Ḥimyar obtained the lordship, assumed the title Abú Ayman, and abode in the capital city of the realm, while Kahlán took over the defence of the borders and the conduct of war.[1] Omitting the long series of mythical Sabæan kings, of whom the legend has little or nothing to relate, we now come to an event which fixed itself ineffaceably in the memory of the Arabs, and which is known in their traditions as *Saylu 'l-'Arim*, or the Flood of the Dyke.

Ya'rub.

Ḥimyar and Kahlán.

[1] Von Kremer, *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. 56. Possibly, as he suggests (p. 115), the story may be a symbolical expression of the fact that the Sabæans were divided into two great tribes, Ḥimyar and Kahlán, the former of which held the chief power.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Some few miles south-west of Ma'rib the mountains draw together leaving a gap, through which flows the River Adana. During the summer its bed is often dry, but in the rainy season the water rushes down with such violence that it becomes impassable. In order to protect the city from floods, and partly also for purposes of irrigation, the inhabitants built a dam of solid masonry, which, long after it had fallen into ruin, struck the imagination of Muḥammad, and was reckoned by Moslems among the wonders of the world.[1] That their historians have clothed the bare fact of its destruction in ample robes of legendary circumstance is not surprising, but renders abridgment necessary.[2]

The Dam of Ma'rib.

Towards the end of the third century of our era, or possibly at an earlier epoch,[3] the throne of Ma'rib was temporarily occupied by 'Amr b. 'Ámir Má' al-Samá, surnamed Muzayqiyá.[4] His wife, Ẓarífa, was skilled in the art of divination. She dreamed dreams and saw visions which announced the impending calamity. "Go to the Dyke," she said to her husband, who doubted her clairvoyance, "and if thou see a rat digging holes in the Dyke with its paws and moving huge boulders with its hind-legs, be assured that the woe hath come upon us." So 'Amr went to

Its destruction announced by portents.

[1] *Cf.* Koran xxxiv, 14 sqq. The existing ruins have been described by Arnaud in the *Journal Asiatique*, 7th series, vol. 3 (1874), p. 3 sqq.

[2] I follow Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. iii, p. 378 sqq., and Nuwayrí in Reiske's *Primæ lineæ Historiæ Rerum Arabicarum*, p. 166 sqq.

[3] The story of the migration from Ma'rib, as related below, may have some historical basis, but the Dam itself was not finally destroyed until long afterwards. Inscriptions carved on the existing ruins show that it was more or less in working order down to the middle of the sixth century A.D. The first recorded flood took place in 447–450, and on another occasion (in 539–542) the Dam was partially reconstructed by Abraha, the Abyssinian viceroy of Yemen. See E. Glaser, *Zwei Inschriften über den Dammbruch von Mârib* (*Mitteilungen der Vorderasiatischen Gesellschaft*, 1897, 6).

[4] He is said to have gained this sobriquet from his custom of tearing to pieces (*mazaqa*) every night the robe which he had worn during the day.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the Dyke and looked carefully, and lo, there was a rat moving an enormous rock which fifty men could not have rolled from its place. Convinced by this and other prodigies that the Dyke would soon burst and the land be laid waste, he resolved to sell his possessions and depart with his family; and, lest conduct so extraordinary should arouse suspicion, he had recourse to the following stratagem. He invited the chief men of the city to a splendid feast, which, in accordance with a preconcerted plan, was interrupted by a violent altercation between himself and his son (or, as others relate, an orphan who had been brought up in his house). Blows were exchanged, and ʿAmr cried out, "O shame! on the day of my glory a stripling has insulted me and struck my face." He swore that he would put his son to death, but the guests entreated him to show mercy, until at last he gave way. "But by God," he exclaimed, "I will no longer remain in a city where I have suffered this indignity. I will sell my lands and my stock." Having successfully got rid of his encumbrances—for there was no lack of buyers eager to take him at his word—ʿAmr informed the people of the danger with which they were threatened, and set out from Ma'rib at the head of a great multitude. Gradually the waters made a breach in the Dyke and swept over the country, spreading devastation far and wide. Hence the proverb *Dhahabú* (or *tafarraqú*) *aydí Saba*, "They departed" (or "dispersed") "like the people of Saba."[1]

Fall of the Sabæan Empire.

This deluge marks an epoch in the history of South Arabia. The waters subside, the land returns to cultivation and prosperity, but Ma'rib lies desolate, and the Sabæans have disappeared for ever, except "to point a moral or adorn a tale." Al-Aʿshá sang:—

Metre *Mutaqárib*: (⏑ — ⏓ | ⏑ — ⏓ | ⏑ — ⏓ | ⏑ —).

---

[1] Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 497.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Let this warn whoever a warning will take—
And Ma'rib withal, which the Dam fortified.
Of marble did Ḥimyar construct it, so high,
The waters recoiled when to reach it they tried.
It watered their acres and vineyards, and hour
By hour, did a portion among them divide.
So lived they in fortune and plenty until
Therefrom turned away by a ravaging tide.
Then wandered their princes and noblemen through
Mirage-shrouded deserts that baffle the guide."[1]

The poet's reference to Ḥimyar is not historically accurate. It was only after the destruction of the Dyke and the dispersion of the Sabæans who built it[2] that the Ḥimyarites, with their capital Ẓafár (at a later period, Ṣan'á) became the rulers of Yemen.

The first Tubba', by which name the Ḥimyarite kings are known to Muḥammadan writers, was Ḥárith, called al-Rá'ish, *i.e.*, the Featherer, because he 'feathered' his people's nest with the booty which he brought home as a conqueror from India and Ádharbayján.[3] Of the Tubba's who come after him some obviously owe their place in the line of Ḥimyar to genealogists whose respect for the Koran was greater than their critical acumen. Such a man of straw is Ṣa'b Dhu 'l-Qarnayn (Ṣa'b the Two-horned).

The Tubba's.

The following verses show that he is a double of the mysterious Dhu 'l-Qarnayn of Koranic legend, supposed by most commentators to be identical with Alexander the Great[4]:—

Dhu 'l-Qarnayn.

[1] Hamdání, *Iklíl*, bk. viii, edited by D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.* (Vienna, 1881), vol. 97, p. 1037. The verses are quoted with some textual differences by Yáqút, *Mu'jam al-Buldán*, ed. by Wüstenfeld, vol. iv, 387, and Ibn Hishám, p. 9.

[2] The following inscription is engraved on one of the stone cylinders described by Arnaud: "Yatha'amar Bayyin, son of Samah'alí Yanúf, Prince of Saba, caused the mountain Balaq to be pierced and erected the flood-gates (called) Raḥab for convenience of irrigation." I translate after D. H. Müller, *loc. laud.*, p. 965.

[3] The words *Ḥimyar* and *Tubba'* do not occur at all in the older inscriptions, and very seldom even in those of a more recent date.

[4] See Koran, xviii, 82–98.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Ours the realm of Dhu 'l-Qarnayn the glorious,
Realm like his was never won by mortal king.
Followed he the Sun to view its setting
When it sank into the sombre ocean-spring;
Up he clomb to see it rise at morning,
From within its mansion when the East it fired;
All day long the horizons led him onward,[1]
All night through he watched the stars and never tired.
Then of iron and of liquid metal
He prepared a rampart not to be o'erpassed,
Gog and Magog there he threw in prison
Till on Judgment Day they shall awake at last."[2]

Bilqís.

Similarly, among the Tubbaʿs we find the Queen of Sheba, whose adventures with Solomon are related in the twenty-seventh chapter of the Koran. Although Muḥammad himself did not mention her name or lineage, his interpreters were equal to the occasion and revealed her as Bilqís, the daughter of Sharáḥíl (Sharaḥbíl).

The national hero of South Arabian legend is the Tubbaʿ

[1] Dhu 'l-Qarnayn is described as "the measurer of the earth" (*Massáḥu 'l-arḍ*) by Hamdání, *Jazíratu 'l-ʿArab*, p. 46, l. 10. If I may step for a moment outside the province of literary history to discuss the mythology of these verses, it seems to me more than probable that Dhu 'l-Qarnayn is a personification of the Sabæan divinity ʿAthtar, who represents "sweet Hesper-Phosphor, double name" (see D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.*, vol. 97, p. 973 seq.). The Minæan inscriptions have "ʿAthtar of the setting and ʿAthtar of the rising" (*ibid.*, p. 1033). Moreover, in the older inscriptions ʿAthtar and Almaqa are always mentioned together; and Almaqa, which according to Hamdání is the name of Venus (*al-Zuhara*), was identified by Arabian archæologists with Bilqís. For *qarn* in the sense of 'ray' or 'beam' see Goldziher, *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I, p. 114. I think there is little doubt that Dhu 'l-Qarnayn and Bilqís may be added to the examples (*ibid.*, p. 111 sqq.) of that peculiar conversion by which many heathen deities were enabled to maintain themselves under various disguises within the pale of Islam.

[2] The Arabic text will be found in Von Kremer's *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Jemen*, p. 15 (No. viii, l. 6 sqq.). Ḥassán b. Thábit, the author of these lines, was contemporary with Muḥammad, to whose cause he devoted what poetical talent he possessed. In the verses immediately preceding those translated above he claims to be a descendant of Qaḥṭán.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

As'ad Kámil, or, as he is sometimes called, Abú Karib. Even at the present day, says Von Kremer, his memory is kept alive, and still haunts the ruins of his palace at Ẓafár. "No one who reads the Ballad of his Adventures or the words of exhortation which he addressed on his death-bed to his son Ḥassán can escape from the conviction that here we have to do with genuine folk-poetry—fragments of a South Arabian legendary cycle, the beginnings of which undoubtedly reach back to a high antiquity." [1] I translate here the former of these pieces, which may be entitled

As'ad Kámil.

THE BALLAD OF THE THREE WITCHES.[2]

"Time brings to pass full many a wonder
Whereof the lesson thou must ponder.
Whilst all to thee seems ordered fair,
Lo, Fate hath wrought confusion there.
Against a thing foredoomed to be
Nor cunning nor caution helpeth thee.
Now a marvellous tale will I recite;
Trust me to know and tell it aright!

Once on a time was a boy of Asd
Who became the king of the land at last,
Born in Hamdán, a villager;
The name of that village was Khamir.
This lad in the pride of youth defied
His friends, and they with scorn replied.
None guessed his worth till he was grown
Ready to spring.

[1] Von Kremer, *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. vii of the Introduction.

[2] A prose translation is given by Von Kremer, *ibid.*, p. 78 sqq. The Arabic text which he published afterwards in *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Jemen*, p. 18 sqq., is corrupt in some places and incorrect in others. I have followed Von Kremer's interpretation except when it seemed to me to be manifestly untenable. The reader will have no difficulty in believing that this poem was meant to be recited by a wandering minstrel to the hearers that gathered round him at nightfall. It may well be the composition of one of those professional story-tellers who flourished in the first century after the Flight, such as 'Abíd b. Sharya (see p. 13 *supra*), or Yazíd b. Rabí'a b. Mufarrigh († 688 A.D.), who is said to have invented the poems and romances of the Ḥimyarite kings (*Aghání*, xvii, 52).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

One morn, alone
On Hinwam hill he was sore afraid.[1]
(His people knew not where he strayed;
They had seen him only yesternight,
For his youth and wildness they held him light.
The wretches! Him they never missed
Who had been their glory had they wist).

O the fear that fell on his heart when he
Saw beside him the witches three!
The eldest came with many a brew—
In some was blood, blood-dark their hue.
'Give me the cup!' he shouted bold;
'Hold, hold!' cried she, but he would not hold.
She gave him the cup, nor he did shrink
Tho' he reeled as he drained the magic drink.

Then the second yelled at him. Her he faced
Like a lion with anger in his breast.
'These be our steeds, come mount,' she cried,
'For asses are worst of steeds to ride.'
''Tis sooth,' he answered, and slipped his flank
O'er a hyena lean and lank,
But the brute so fiercely flung him away,
With deep, deep wounds on the earth he lay.
Then came the youngest and tended him
On a soft bed, while her eyes did swim
In tears; but he averted his face
And sought a rougher resting-place:
Such paramour he deemed too base.
And himthought, in anguish lying there,
That needles underneath him were.[2]

Now when they had marked his mien so bold,
Victory in all things they foretold.
'The wars, O As'ad, waged by thee
Shall heal mankind of misery.

---

[1] Instead of Hinwam the original has Hayyúm, for which Von Kremer reads Ahnúm. But see Hamdání, *Jazíratu 'l-'Arab*, p. 193, last line and fol.

[2] I read *al-jahdi* for *al-jahli*.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Thy sword and spear the foe shall rue
When his gashes let the daylight through ;
And blood shall flow on every hand
What time thou marchest from land to land.
By us be counselled : stay not within
Khamir, but go to Ẓafár and win !
To thee shall dalliance ne'er be dear,
Thy foes shall see thee before they hear.
Desire moved to encounter thee,
Noble prince, us witches three.
Not jest, but earnest on thee we tried,
And well didst thou the proof abide.'

As'ad went home and told his folk
What he had seen, but no heed they took.
On the tenth day he set out again
And fared to Ẓafár with thoughts in his brain.
There fortune raised him to high renown :
None swifter to strike ever wore a crown.[1]

* * * * *

Thus found we the tale in memory stored,
And Almighty is the Lord.
Praise be to God who liveth aye,
The Glorious to whom all men pray !"

Legend makes As'ad the hero of a brilliant expedition to Persia, where he defeated the general sent against him by the Arsacids, and penetrated to the Caspian Sea. On his way home he marched through the Ḥijáz, and having learned that his son, whom he left behind in Medína, had been treacherously murdered, he resolved to take a terrible vengeance on the people of that city.

"Now while the Tubba' was carrying on war against them, there came to him two Jewish Rabbins of the Banú Qurayẓa, men deep in knowledge, who when they heard that he wished to destroy the

[1] I omit the following verses, which tell how an old woman of Medína came to King As'ad, imploring him to avenge her wrongs, and how he gathered an innumerable army, routed his enemies, and returned to Ẓafár in triumph.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

city and its people, said to him: 'O King, forbear! Verily, if thou wilt accept nothing save that which thou desirest, an intervention will be made betwixt thee and the city, and we are not sure but that sudden chastisement may befall thee.' 'Why so?' he asked. They answered: ''Tis the place of refuge of a prophet who in the after time shall go forth from the sacred territory of Quraysh: it shall be his abode and his home.' So the king refrained himself, for he saw that those two had a particular knowledge, and he was pleased with what they told him. On departing from Medína he followed them in their religion.[1] . . . And he turned his face towards Mecca, that being his way to Yemen, and when he was between 'Usfán and Amaj some Hudhalites came to him and said: 'O King, shall we not guide thee to a house of ancient treasure which the kings before thee neglected, wherein are pearls and emeralds and chrysolites and gold and silver?' He said, 'Yea.' They said: 'It is a temple at Mecca which those who belong to it worship and in which they pray.' Now the Hudhalites wished to destroy him thereby, knowing that destruction awaited the king who should seek to violate its precinct. So on comprehending what they proposed, he sent to the two Rabbins to ask them about the affair. They replied: 'These folk intend naught but to destroy thee and thine army; we wot not of any house in the world that God hath chosen for Himself, save this. If thou do that to which they invite thee, thou and those with thee will surely perish together.' He said: 'What then is it ye bid me do when I come there?' They said: 'Thou wilt do as its people do—make the circuit thereof, and magnify and honour it, and shave thy head, and humble thyself before it, until thou go forth from its precinct.' He said: 'And what hinders you from doing that yourselves?' 'By God,' said they, 'it is the temple of our father Abraham, and verily it is even as we told thee, but we are debarred therefrom by the idols which its people have set up around it and by the blood-offerings which they make beside it; for they are vile polytheists,' or words to the same effect. The king perceived that their advice was good and their tale true. He ordered the Hudhalites to approach, and cut off their hands and feet. Then he continued his march to Mecca, where he made the circuit of the temple, sacrificed camels, and shaved his head. According to what is told, he stayed six days at Mecca, feasting the inhabitants with the flesh of camels

As'ad Kámil and the two Rabbins of Medína.

As'ad Kámil at Mecca.

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 13, l. 14 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and letting them drink honey.[1] . . . Then he moved out with his troops in the direction of Yemen, the two Rabbins accompanying him; and on entering Yemen he called on his subjects to adopt the religion which he himself had embraced, but they refused unless the question were submitted to the ordeal of fire which at that time existed in Yemen; for as the Yemenites say, there was in their country a fire that gave judgment between them in their disputes: it devoured the wrong-doer but left the injured person unscathed. The Yemenites therefore came forward with their idols and whatever else they used as a means of drawing nigh unto God, and the two Rabbins came forward with their scriptures hung on their necks like necklaces, and both parties seated themselves at the place from which the fire was wont to issue. And the fire blazed up, and the Yemenites shrank back from it as it approached them, and were afraid, but the bystanders urged them on and bade them take courage. So they held out until the fire enveloped them and consumed the idols and images and the men of Ḥimyar, the bearers thereof; but the Rabbins came forth safe and sound, their brows moist with sweat, and the scriptures were still hanging on their necks. Thereupon the Ḥimyarites consented to adopt the king's religion, and this was the cause of Judaism being established in Yemen."[2]

He seeks to establish Judaism in Yemen.

The ordeal of fire.

The poem addressed to his son and successor, Ḥassán, which tradition has put into his mouth, is a sort of last will and testament, of which the greater part is taken up with an account of his conquests and with glorification of his family and himself.[3] Nearly all that we find in the way of maxims or injunctions suitable to the solemn occasion is contained in the following verses:—

As'ad's farewell to his son.

"O Ḥassán, the hour of thy father's death has arrived at last:
Look to thyself ere yet the time for looking is past.
Oft indeed are the mighty abased, and often likewise
Are the base exalted: such is Man who is born and dies.

---

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 15, l. 1 sqq.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 17, l. 2 sqq.
[3] Arabic text in Von Kremer's *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Jemen*, p. 20 seq.; prose translation by the same author in *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. 84 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Bid ye Ḥimyar know that standing erect would I buried be,
And have my wine-skins and Yemen robes in the tomb with me.[1]
And hearken thou to my Sibyl, for surely can she foresay
The truth, and safe in her keeping is castle Ghaymán aye.[2]

In connection with Ghaymán a few words may be added respecting the castles in Yemen, of which the ruined skeletons rising from solitary heights seem still to frown defiance upon the passing traveller. Two thousand years ago, and probably long before, they were occupied by powerful barons, more or less independent, who in later times, when the Ḥimyarite Empire had begun to decline, always elected, and occasionally deposed, their royal master. Of these castles the geographer Hamdání has given a detailed account in the eighth book of his great work on the history and antiquities of Yemen entitled the *Iklíl*, or 'Crown.'[3] The oldest and most celebrated was Ghumdán, the citadel of Ṣan'á. It is described as a huge edifice of twenty stories, each story ten cubits high. The four façades were built with stone of different colours, white, black, green, and red. On the top story was a chamber which had windows of marble framed with ebony and planewood. Its roof was a slab of pellucid marble, so that when the lord of Ghumdán lay on his couch he saw the birds fly overhead, and could distinguish a raven from a kite. At each corner stood a brazen lion, and when the wind blew

The castles of Yemen.

Ghumdán.

[1] The second half of this verse is corrupt. Von Kremer translates (in his notes to the Arabic text, p. 26): "And bury with me the camel stallions (*al-khílán*) and the slaves (*al-ruqqán*)." Apart, however, from the fact that *ruqqán* (plural of *raqíq*) is not mentioned by the lexicographers, it seems highly improbable that the king would have commanded such a barbarity. I therefore take *khílán* (plural of *khál*) in the meaning of 'soft stuffs of Yemen,' and read *zuqqán* (plural of *ziqq*).

[2] Ghaymán or Miqláb, a castle near Ṣan'á, in which the Ḥimyarite kings were buried.

[3] The text and translation of this section of the *Iklíl* have been published by D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.*, vols. 94 and 97 (Vienna, 1879–1880).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

it entered the hollow interior of the effigies and made a sound like the roaring of lions.

The adventure of As'ad Kámil with the three witches must have recalled to every reader certain scenes in *Macbeth*. Curiously enough, in the history of his son Ḥassán an incident is related which offers a striking parallel to the march of Birnam Wood. Ṭasm and Jadís have already been mentioned. On the massacre of the former tribe by the latter, a single Ṭasmite named Ribáḥ b. Murra made his escape and took refuge with the Tubba' Ḥassán, whom he persuaded to lead an expedition against the murderers. Now Ribáḥ's sister had married a man of Jadís. Her name was Zarqá'u 'l-Yamáma—*i.e.*, the Blue-eyed Woman of Yamáma—and she had such piercing sight that she was able to descry an army thirty miles away. Ḥassán therefore bade his horsemen hold in front of them leafy branches which they tore down from the trees. They advanced thus hidden, and towards evening, when they had come within a day's journey, Zarqá said to her people: "I see trees marching." No one believed her until it was too late. Next morning Ḥassán fell upon them and put the whole tribe to the sword.

Zarqá'u 'l-Yamáma.

The warlike expeditions to which Ḥassán devoted all his energy were felt as an intolerable burden by the chiefs of Ḥimyar, who formed a plot to slay him and set his brother 'Amr on the throne. 'Amr was at first unwilling to lend himself to their designs, but ultimately his scruples were overcome, and he stabbed the Tubba' with his own hand. The assassin suffered a terrible punishment. Sleep deserted him, and in his remorse he began to execute the conspirators one after another. There was, however, a single chief called Dhú Ru'ayn, who had remained loyal and had done his best to save 'Amr from the guilt of fratricide. Finding his efforts fruitless, he requested 'Amr to take charge of a sealed

Ḥassán murdered by his brother.

Dhú Ru'ayn.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

paper which he brought with him, and to keep it in a safe place until he should ask for it. 'Amr consented and thought no more of the matter. Afterwards, imagining that Dhú Ru'ayn had joined in the fatal plot, he gave orders for his execution. "How!" exclaimed Dhú Ru'ayn, "did not I tell thee what the crime involved?" and he asked for the sealed writing, which was found to contain these verses—

> "O fool to barter sleep for waking! Blest
> Is he alone whose eyelids close in rest.
> Hath Ḥimyar practised treason, yet 'tis plain
> That God forgiveness owes to Dhú Ru'ayn.[1]"

On reading this, 'Amr recognised that Dhú Ru'ayn had spoken the truth, and he spared his life.

With 'Amr the Tubba' dynasty comes to an end. The succeeding kings were elected by eight of the most powerful barons, who in reality were independent princes, each ruling in his strong castle over as many vassals and retainers as he could bring into subjection. During this period the Abyssinians conquered at least some part of the country, and Christian viceroys were sent by the Najáshí (Negus) to govern it in his name. At last Dhú Nuwás, a descendant of the Tubba' As'ad Kámil, crushed the rebellious barons and made himself unquestioned monarch of Yemen. A fanatical adherent of Judaism, he resolved to stamp out Christianity in Najrán, where it is said to have been introduced from Syria by a holy man called Faymiyún (Phemion). The Ḥimyarites flocked to his standard, not so much from religious motives as from hatred of the Abyssinians. The pretended murder of two Jewish children gave Dhú Nuwás a plausible *casus belli*. He marched against Najrán with an overwhelming force, entered the city, and bade the inhabitants choose between Judaism and death. Many perished by the sword; the rest were thrown into a trench which the king ordered to be dug and filled with

Dhú Nuwás.

Massacre of the Christians in Najrán (523 A.D.).

[1] *Aghání*, xx, 8, l. 14 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

blazing fire. Nearly a hundred years later, when Muḥammad was being sorely persecuted, he consoled and encouraged his followers by the example of the Christians of Najrán, who suffered "*for no other reason but that they believed in the mighty, the glorious God.*"[1] Dhú Nuwás paid dearly for his triumph. Daws Dhú Tha'labán, one of those who escaped from the massacre, fled to the Byzantine emperor and implored him, as the head of Christendom, to assist them in obtaining vengeance. Justinus accordingly wrote a letter to the Najáshí, desiring him to take action, and ere long an Abyssinian army, 70,000 strong, under the command of Aryáṭ, disembarked in Yemen. Dhú Nuwás could not count on the loyalty of the Ḥimyarite nobles; his troops melted away. "When he saw the fate that had befallen himself and his people, he turned to the sea and setting spurs to his horse, rode through the shallows until he reached the deep water. Then he plunged into the waves and nothing more of him was seen."[2]

Death of Dhú Nuwás.

Thus died, or thus at any rate should have died, the last representative of the long line of Ḥimyarite kings. Henceforth Yemen appears in Pre-islamic history only as an Abyssinian dependency or as a Persian protectorate. The events now to be related form the prologue to a new drama in which South Arabia, so far from being the centre of interest, plays an almost insignificant rôle.[3]

On the death of Dhú Nuwás, the Abyssinian general Aryáṭ continued his march through Yemen. He slaughtered a third part of the males, laid waste a third part of the land, and sent a third part of the women and children to the Najáshí as slaves. Having reduced the Yemenites to submission and re-established order, he held the position of viceroy

Yemen under Abyssinian rule.

---

[1] Koran, lxxxv, 4 sqq.

[2] Ṭabarí, i, 927, l. 19 sqq.

[3] The following narrative is abridged from Ṭabarí, i, 928, l. 2 sqq. = Nöldeke, *Geschichte der Perser and Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*, p. 192 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

for several years. Then mutiny broke out in the Abyssinian army of occupation, and his authority was disputed by an officer, named Abraha. When the rivals faced each other, Abraha said to Aryáṭ: "What will it avail you to engage the Abyssinians in a civil war that will leave none of them alive? Fight it out with me, and let the troops follow the victor." His challenge being accepted, Abraha stepped forth. He was a short, fleshy man, compactly built, a devout Christian, while Aryáṭ was big, tall, and handsome. When the duel began, Aryáṭ thrust his spear with the intention of piercing Abraha's brain, but it glanced off his forehead, slitting his eyelid, nose, and lip—hence the name, *al-Ashram*, by which Abraha was afterwards known; and ere he could repeat the blow, a youth in Abraha's service, called 'Atwada, who was seated on a hillock behind his master, sprang forward and dealt him a mortal wound. Thus Abraha found himself commander-in-chief of the Abyssinian army, but the Najáshí was enraged and swore not to rest until he set foot on the soil of Yemen and cut off the rebel's forelock. On hearing this, Abraha wrote to the Najáshi: "O King, Aryáṭ was thy servant even as I am. We quarrelled over thy command, both of us owing allegiance to thee, but I had more strength than he to command the Abyssinians and keep discipline and exert authority. When I heard of the king's oath, I shore my head, and now I send him a sack of the earth of Yemen that he may put it under his feet and fulfil his oath." The Najáshí answered this act of submission by appointing Abraha to be his viceroy. . . . Then Abraha built the church (*al-Qalís*) at Ṣan'á, the like of which was not to be seen at that time in the whole world, and wrote to the Najáshí that he would not be content until he had diverted thither every pilgrim in Arabia. This letter made much talk, and a man of the Banú Fuqaym, one of those who arranged the calendar, was angered by what he learned of Abraha's purpose; so he went into the church and defiled it. When Abraha heard that the author of the outrage belonged to the people of the Temple in Mecca, and that he meant to show thereby his scorn and contempt for the new foundation, he waxed wroth and swore that he would march against the Temple and lay it in ruins.

Abraha and Aryáṭ.

Abraha viceroy of Yemen.

The disastrous failure of this expedition, which took place in the year of the Elephant (570 A.D.), did not at once free Yemen from the Abyssinian yoke. The sons of Abraha, Yaqsúm and Masrúq, bore heavily on the Arabs. Seeing no

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

help among his own people, a noble Ḥimyarite named Sayf b. Dhí Yazan resolved to seek foreign intervention. His choice lay between the Byzantine and Persian empires, and he first betook himself to Constantinople. Disappointed there, he induced the Arab king of Ḥíra, who was under Persian suzerainty, to present him at the court of Madá'in (Ctesiphon). How he won audience of the Sásánian monarch, Núshírwán, surnamed the Just, and tempted him by an ingenious trick to raise a force of eight hundred condemned felons, who were set free and shipped to Yemen under the command of an aged general; how they literally 'burned their boats' and, drawing courage from despair, routed the Abyssinian host and made Yemen a satrapy of Persia [1]—this forms an almost epic narrative, which I have omitted here (apart from considerations of space) because it belongs to Persian rather than to Arabian literary history, being probably based, as Nöldeke has suggested, on traditions handed down by the Persian conquerors who settled in Yemen to their aristocratic descendants whom the Arabs called *al-Abná* (the Sons) or *Banu 'l-Aḥrár* (Sons of the Noble).

Sayf b. Dhí Yazan.

The Persians in Yemen (*circa* 572 A.D.).

Leaving the once mighty kingdom of Yemen thus pitiably and for ever fallen from its high estate, we turn northward into the main stream of Arabian history.

[1] The reader will find a full and excellent account of these matters in Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 178–181.

Univ Calif · Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER II

THE HISTORY AND LEGENDS OF THE PAGAN ARABS

MUḤAMMADANS include the whole period of Arabian history from the earliest times down to the establishment of Islam in the term *al-Jáhiliyya*, which was used by Muḥammad in four passages of the Koran and is generally translated 'the state of ignorance' or simply 'the Ignorance.' Goldziher, however, has shown conclusively that the meaning attached to *jahl* (whence *Jáhiliyya* is derived) by the Pre-islamic poets is not so much 'ignorance' as 'wildness,' 'savagery,' and that its true antithesis is not *'ilm* (knowledge), but rather *ḥilm*, which denotes the moral reasonableness of a civilised man. "When Muḥammadans say that Islam put an end to the manners and customs of the *Jáhiliyya*, they have in view those barbarous practices, that savage temper, by which Arabian heathendom is distinguished from Islam and by the abolition of which Muḥammad sought to work a moral reformation in his countrymen: the haughty spirit of the *Jáhiliyya* (*ḥamiyyatu 'l-Jáhiliyya*), the tribal pride and the endless tribal feuds, the cult of revenge, the implacability and all the other pagan characteristics which Islam was destined to overcome." [1]

The Age of Barbarism (al-Jáhiliyya).

Our sources of information regarding this period may be classified as follows:—

(1) *Poems and fragments of verse*, which though not written

[1] Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 225.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

down at the time were preserved by oral tradition and committed to writing, for the most part, two or three hundred years afterwards. The importance of this, virtually the sole contemporary record of Pre-islamic history, is recognised in the well-known saying, "Poetry is the public register of the Arabs (*al-shi'ru díwánu 'l-'Arab*); thereby genealogies are kept in mind and famous actions are made familiar." Some account of the chief collections of old Arabian poetry will be given in the next chapter.

Sources of information concerning the Jáhiliyya.

(2) *Proverbs.* These are of less value, as they seldom explain themselves, while the commentary attached to them is the work of scholars bent on explaining them at all costs, though in many cases their true meaning could only be conjectured and the circumstances of their origin had been entirely forgotten. Notwithstanding this very pardonable excess of zeal, we could ill afford to lose the celebrated collections of Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbí († about 786 A.D.) and Maydání († 1124 A.D.),[1] which contain so much curious information throwing light on every aspect of Pre-islamic life.

(3) *Traditions and legends.* Since the art of writing was neither understood nor practised by the heathen Arabs in general, it was impossible that Prose, as a literary form, should exist among them. The germs of Arabic Prose, however, may be traced back to the *Jáhiliyya*. Besides the proverb (*mathal*) and the oration (*khuṭba*) we find elements of history and romance in the prose narratives used by the rhapsodists to introduce and set forth plainly the matter of their songs, and in the legends which recounted the glorious deeds of tribes and individuals. A vast number of such stories—some unmistakably genuine, others bearing the stamp of fiction—are preserved in various literary, historical, and geographical works composed under the 'Abbásid Caliphate, especially in the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání* (Book

[1] Maydání's collection has been edited, with a Latin translation by Freytag, in three volumes (*Arabum Proverbia*, Bonn, 1838–1843).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

of Songs) by Abu 'l-Faraj of Iṣfahán († 967 A.D.), an invaluable compilation based on the researches of the great Humanists as they have been well named by Sir Charles Lyall, of the second and third centuries after the Hijra.[1] The original writings of these early critics and scholars have perished almost without exception, and beyond the copious citations in the *Aghání* we possess hardly any specimens of their work. "The *Book of Songs*," says Ibn Khaldún, "is the Register of the Arabs. It comprises all that they had achieved in the past of excellence in every kind of poetry, history, music, *et cetera*. So far as I am aware, no other book can be put on a level with it in this respect. It is the final resource of the student of belles-lettres, and leaves him nothing further to desire." [2]

The *Book of Songs.*

In the following pages I shall not attempt to set in due order and connection the confused mass of poetry and legend in which all that we know of Pre-islamic Arabia lies deeply embedded. This task has already been performed with admirable skill by Caussin de Perceval in his *Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'Islamisme*,[3] and it could serve no useful purpose to inflict a dry summary of that famous work upon the reader. The better course, I think, will be to select a few typical and outstanding features of the time and to present them, wherever possible, as they have been drawn—largely from imagination—by the Arabs themselves. If the Arabian traditions are wanting in historical accuracy they are nevertheless, taken as a whole, true in spirit to the Dark Age which they call up from the dead and reverently unfold beneath our eyes.

Scope of this chapter.

[1] The *Kitábu 'l-Aghání* has been published at Buláq (1284–1285 A.H.) in twenty volumes. A volume of biographies not contained in the Buláq text was edited by R. E. Brünnow (Leiden, 1888).

[2] *Muqaddima* of Ibn Khaldún (Beyrout, 1900), p. 554, ll. 8–10; *Les Prolégomènes d' Ibn Khaldoun traduits par M. de Slane* (Paris, 1863–68) vol. iii, p. 331.

[3] Published at Paris, 1847–1848, in three volumes.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

About the middle of the third century of our era Arabia was enclosed on the north and north-east by the rival empires of Rome and Persia, to which the Syrian desert, stretching right across the peninsula, formed a natural termination. In order to protect themselves from Bedouin raiders, who poured over the frontier-provinces, and after laying hands on all the booty within reach vanished as suddenly as they came, both Powers found it necessary to plant a line of garrisons along the edge of the wilderness. Thus the tribesmen were partially held in check, but as force alone seemed an expensive and inefficient remedy it was decided, in accordance with the well-proved maxim, *divide et impera*, to enlist a number of the offending tribes in the Imperial service. Regular pay and the prospect of unlimited plunder—for in those days Rome and Persia were almost perpetually at war—were inducements that no true Bedouin could resist. They fought, however, as free allies under their own chiefs or phylarchs. In this way two Arabian dynasties sprang up—the Ghassánids in Syria and the Lakhmites at Ḥíra, west of the Euphrates—military buffer-states, always ready to collide even when they were not urged on by the suzerain powers behind them. The Arabs soon showed what they were capable of when trained and disciplined in arms. On the defeat of Valerian by the Chosroes Sábúr I, an Arab chieftain in Palmyra, named Udhayna (Odenathus), marched at the head of a strong force against the conqueror, drove him out of Syria, and pursued him up to the very walls of Madá'in, the Persian capital (265 A.D.). His brilliant exploits were duly rewarded by the Emperor Gallienus, who bestowed on him the title of Augustus. He was, in fact, the acknowledged master of the Roman legions in the East when, a year later, he was treacherously murdered. He found a worthy successor in his wife, the noble and ambitious Zenobia, who set herself the task of building up a great Oriental Empire. She fared, however, no

The Arab dynasties of Ḥíra and Ghassán.

Odenathus and Zenobia.

4

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

better than did Cleopatra in a like enterprise. For a moment the issue was doubtful, but Aurelian triumphed and the proud 'Queen of the East' was led a captive before his chariot through the streets of Rome (274 A.D.).

These events were not forgotten by the Arabs. It flattered their national pride to recall that once, at any rate, Roman armies had marched under the flag of an Arabian princess But the legend, as told in their traditions, has little in common with reality. Not only are names and places freely altered—Zenobia herself being confused with her Syrian general, Zabdai—but the historical setting, though dimly visible in the background, has been distorted almost beyond recognition: what remains is one of those romantic adventures which delighted the Arabs of the *Jáhiliyya*, just as their modern descendants are never tired of listening to the *Story of 'Antar* or to the *Thousand Nights and a Night.*

The first king of the Arab settlers in 'Iráq (Babylonia)[1] is said to have been Málik the Azdite, who was accidentally shot with an arrow by his son, Sulayma. Before he expired he uttered a verse which has become proverbial:—

Málik the Azdite.

U'allimuhu 'l-rimáyata kulla yawm^in
falamma 'shtadda sá'iduhú ramání.

"I taught him every day the bowman's art,
And when his arm grew strong, he pierced my heart."

Málik's kingdom, if it can properly be described as such, was consolidated and organised by his son, Jadhíma, surnamed al-Abrash (the Speckled)—a polite euphemism for al-Abraṣ (the Leprous). He reigned as the vassal of Ardashír Bábakán, the founder (226 A.D.) of the Sásánian dynasty in Persia, which thereafter continued to dominate the Arabs of 'Iráq during the whole Pre-islamic

Jadhíma al-Abrash.

[1] These are the same Bedouin Arabs of Tanúkh who afterwards formed part of the population of Ḥíra. See p. 38 *infra.*

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

period. Jadhíma is the hero of many fables and proverbs. His pride, it is said, was so overweening that he would suffer no boon-companions except two stars called *al-Farqadán*, and when he drank wine he used to pour out a cup for each of them. He had a page, 'Adí b. Naṣr, with whom his sister fell in love; and in a moment of intoxication he gave his consent to their marriage. Next morning, furious at the trick which had been played upon him, he beheaded the unlucky bridegroom and reviled his sister for having married a slave. Nevertheless, when a son was born, Jadhíma adopted the boy, and as he grew up regarded him with the utmost affection. One day the youthful 'Amr suddenly disappeared. For a long time no trace of him could be found, but at last he was discovered, running wild and naked, by two brothers, Málik and 'Aqíl, who cared for him and clothed him and presented him to the king. Overjoyed at the sight, Jadhíma promised to grant them whatever they asked. They chose the honour, which no mortal had hitherto obtained, of being his boon-companions, and by this title (*nadmáná Jadhíma*) they are known to fame.

Jadhíma was a wise and warlike prince. In one of his expeditions he defeated and slew 'Amr b. Ẓarib b. Ḥassán b. Udhayna, an Arab chieftain who had brought part of Eastern Syria and Mesopotamia under his sway, and who, as the name Udhayna indicates, is probably identical with Odenathus, the husband of Zenobia. This opinion is confirmed by the statement of Ibn Qutayba that "Jadhíma sought in marriage Zabbá, the daughter of the King of Mesopotamia, who became queen after her *husband*."[1] According to the view generally held by Muḥammadan authors Zabbá[2] was the daughter of 'Amr b. Ẓarib and was

The story of Zabbá.

[1] Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, p. 29.

[2] Properly *al-Zabbá*, an epithet meaning 'hairy.' According to Ṭabarí (i, 757) her name was Ná'ila. It is odd that in the Arabic version of the story the name Zenobia (Zaynab) should be borne by the heroine's sister.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

elected to succeed him when he fell in battle. However this may be, she proved herself a woman of extraordinary courage and resolution. As a safeguard against attack she built two strong castles on either bank of the Euphrates and connected them by a subterranean tunnel; she made one fortress her own residence, while her sister, Zaynab, occupied the other.

Having thus secured her position she determined to take vengeance on Jadhíma. She wrote to him that the sceptre was slipping from her feeble grasp, that she found no man worthy of her except himself, that she desired to unite her kingdom with his by marriage, and begged him to come and see her. Jadhíma needed no urging. Deaf to the warnings of his friend and counsellor, Qaṣír, he started from Baqqa, a castle on the Euphrates. When they had travelled some distance, Qaṣír implored him to return. "No," said Jadhíma, "the affair was decided at Baqqa"—words which passed into a proverb. On approaching their destination the king saw with alarm squadrons of cavalry between him and the city, and said to Qaṣír, "What is the prudent course?" "You left prudence at Baqqa," he replied; "if the cavalry advance and salute you as king and then retire in front of you, the woman is sincere, but if they cover your flanks and encompass you, they mean treachery. Mount al-'Aṣá"—Jadhíma's favourite mare—"for she cannot be overtaken or outpaced, and rejoin your troops while there is yet time." Jadhíma refused to follow this advice. Presently he was surrounded by the cavalry and captured. Qaṣír, however, sprang on the mare's back and galloped thirty miles without drawing rein.

When Jadhíma was brought to Zabbá she seated him on a skin of leather and ordered her maidens to open the veins in his arm, so that his blood should flow into a golden bowl. "O Jadhíma," said she, "let not a single drop be lost. I want it as a cure for madness." The dying man suddenly moved his arm and sprinkled with his blood one of the marble pillars of the hall—an evil portent for Zabbá, inasmuch as it had been prophesied by a certain soothsayer that unless every drop of the king's blood entered the bowl, his murder would be avenged.

Now Qaṣír came to 'Amr b. 'Adí, Jadhíma's nephew and son by adoption, who has been mentioned above, and engaged to win over the army to his side if he would take vengeance on Zabbá. "But how?" cried 'Amr; "for she is more inaccessible than the eagle of the air." "Only help me," said Qaṣír, "and you will be clear of blame." He

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

cut off his nose and ears and betook himself to Zabbá, pretending that he had been mutilated by 'Amr. The queen believed what she saw, welcomed him, and gave him money to trade on her behalf. Qaṣír hastened to the palace of 'Amr at Ḥíra, and, having obtained permission to ransack the royal treasury, he returned laden with riches. Thus he gradually crept into the confidence of Zabbá, until one day he said to her: "It behoves every king and queen to provide themselves with a secret passage wherein to take refuge in case of danger." Zabbá answered: "I have already done so," and showed him the tunnel which she had constructed underneath the Euphrates. His project was now ripe for execution. With the help of 'Amr he fitted out a caravan of a thousand camels, each carrying two armed men concealed in sacks. When they drew near the city of Zabbá, Qaṣír left them and rode forward to announce their arrival to the queen, who from the walls of her capital viewed the long train of heavily burdened camels and marvelled at the slow pace with which they advanced. As the last camel passed through the gates of the city the janitor pricked one of the sacks with an ox-goad which he had with him, and hearing a cry of pain, exclaimed, "By God, there's mischief in the sacks!" But it was too late. 'Amr and his men threw themselves upon the garrison and put them to the sword. Zabbá sought to escape by the tunnel, but Qaṣír stood barring the exit on the further side of the stream. She hurried back, and there was 'Amr facing her. Resolved that her enemy should not taste the sweetness of vengeance, she sucked her seal-ring, which contained a deadly poison, crying, "By my own hand, not by 'Amr's!"[1]

In the kingdoms of Ḥíra and Ghassán Pre-islamic culture attained its highest development, and from these centres it diffused itself and made its influence felt throughout Arabia. Some account, therefore, of their history and of the circumstances which enabled them to assume a civilising rôle will not be superfluous.[2]

[1] The above narrative is abridged from *Aghání*, xiv, 73, l. 20–75, l. 25. *Cf.* Ṭabarí, i, 757–766; Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. iii, pp. 189–199.

[2] Concerning Ḥíra and its history the reader may consult an admirable monograph by Dr. G. Rothstein, *Die Dynastie der Laḫmiden in al-Ḥíra* (Berlin, 1899), where the sources of information are set forth (p. 5 sqq.). The incidental references to contemporary events in Syriac and Byzantine writers, who often describe what they saw with their own eyes, are

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The foundation of Ḥíra.

About the beginning of the third century after Christ a number of Bedouin tribes, wholly or partly of Yemenite origin, who had formed a confederacy and called themselves collectively Tanúkh, took advantage of the disorder then prevailing in the Arsacid Empire to invade ʿIráq (Babylonia) and plant their settlements in the fertile country west of the Euphrates. While part of the intruders continued to lead a nomad life, others engaged in agriculture, and in course of time villages and towns grew up. The most important of these was Ḥíra (properly, al-Ḥíra, *i.e.*, the Camp), which occupied a favourable and healthy situation a few miles to the south of Kúfa, in the neighbourhood of ancient Babylon.[1] According to Hishám b. Muḥammad al-Kalbí († 819 or 821 A.D.), an excellent authority for the history of the Pre-islamic period, the inhabitants of Ḥíra during the reign of Ardashír Bábakán, the first Sásánian king of Persia (226–241 A.D.), consisted of three classes, viz. :—

(1) The *Tanúkh*, who dwelt west of the Euphrates between Ḥíra and Anbár in tents of camel's hair.

(2) The *ʿIbád*, who lived in houses in Ḥíra.

(3) The *Aḥláf* (Clients), who did not belong to either of the above-mentioned classes, but attached themselves to the people of Ḥíra and lived among them—blood-guilty fugitives

extremely valuable as a means of fixing the chronology, which Arabian historians can only supply by conjecture, owing to the want of a definite era during the Pre-islamic period. Muḥammadan general histories usually contain sections, more or less mythical in character, "On the Kings of Ḥíra and Ghassán." Attention may be called in particular to the account derived from Hishám b. Muḥammad al-Kalbí, which is preserved by Ṭabarí and has been translated with a masterly commentary by Nöldeke in his *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden.* Hishám had access to the archives kept in the churches of Ḥíra, and claims to have extracted therefrom many genealogical and chronological details relating to the Lakhmite dynasty (Ṭabarí, i, 770, 7).

[1] Ḥíra is the Syriac *ḥértá* (sacred enclosure, monastery), which name was applied to the originally mobile camp of the Persian Arabs and retained as the designation of the garrison town.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

pursued by the vengeance of their own kin, or needy emigrants seeking to mend their fortunes.

Naturally the townsmen proper formed by far the most influential element in the population. Hishám, as we have seen, calls them 'the 'Ibád.' His use of this term, however, is not strictly accurate. The 'Ibád are exclusively the *Christian Arabs of Ḥíra*, and are so called in virtue of their Christianity; the pagan Arabs, who at the time when Ḥíra was founded and for long afterwards constituted the bulk of the citizens, were never comprised in a designation which expresses the very opposite of paganism. *'Ibád* means 'servants,' *i.e.*, those who serve God or Christ. It cannot be determined at what epoch the name was first used to distinguish the religious community, composed of members of different tribes, which was dominant in Ḥíra during the sixth century. Dates are comparatively of little importance; what is really remarkable is the existence in Pre-islamic times of an Arabian community that was not based on blood-relationship or descent from a common ancestor, but on a spiritual principle, namely, the profession of a common faith. The religion and culture of the 'Ibád were conveyed by various channels to the inmost recesses of the peninsula, as will be shown more fully in a subsequent chapter. They were the schoolmasters of the heathen Arabs, who could seldom read or write, and who, it must be owned, so far from desiring to receive instruction, rather gloried in their ignorance of accomplishments which they regarded as servile. Nevertheless, the best minds among the Bedouins were irresistibly attracted to Ḥíra. Poets in those days found favour with princes. A great number of Pre-islamic bards visited the Lakhmite court, while some, like Nábigha and 'Abíd b. al-Abraṣ, made it their permanent residence.

The 'Ibád.

It is unnecessary to enter into the vexed question as to the origin and rise of the Lakhmite dynasty at Ḥíra. According

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

to Hishám b. Muhammad al-Kalbi, who gives a list of twenty kings, covering a period of 522 years and eight months, the first Lakhmite ruler was 'Amr b. 'Adí b. Nasr b. Rabí'a b. Lakhm, the same who was adopted by Jadhíma, and afterwards avenged his death on Queen Zabbá. Almost nothing is known of his successors until we come to Nu'mán I, surnamed al-A'war (the One-eyed), whose reign falls in the first quarter of the fifth century. Nu'mán is renowned in legend as the builder of Khawarnaq, a famous castle near Híra. It was built at the instance of the Sásánian king, Yazdigird I, who desired a salubrious residence for his son, Prince Bahrám Gór. On its completion, Nu'mán ordered the architect, a 'Roman' (*i.e.*, Byzantine subject) named Sinimmár, to be cast headlong from the battlements, either on account of his boast that he could have constructed a yet more wonderful edifice "which should turn round with the sun," or for fear that he might reveal the position of a certain stone, the removal of which would cause the whole building to collapse. One spring day (so the story is told) Nu'mán sat with his Vizier in Khawarnaq, which overlooked the Fen-land (al-Najaf), with its neighbouring gardens and plantations of palm-trees and canals, to the west, and the Euphrates to the east. Charmed by the beauty of the prospect, he exclaimed, "Hast thou ever seen the like of this?" "No," replied the Vizier, "if it would but last." "And what is lasting?" asked Nu'mán. "That which is with God in heaven." "How can one attain to it?" "By renouncing the world and serving God, and striving after that which He hath." Nu'mán, it is said, immediately resolved to abandon his kingdom; on the same night he clad himself in sack-cloth, stole away unperceived, and became a wandering devotee (*sá'ih*). This legend seems to have grown out of the following verses by 'Adí b. Zayd, the 'Ibádite:—

The Lakhmites.

Nu'mán I. (*circa* 400 A.D.).

The Castle of Khawarnaq.

Nu'mán becomes an anchorite.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Consider thou Khawarnaq's lord—and oft
Of heavenly guidance cometh vision clear—
Who once, rejoicing in his ample realm,
Surveyed the broad Euphrates, and Sadír;[1]
Then sudden terror struck his heart: he cried,
'Shall Man, who deathward goes, find pleasure here?'
They reigned, they prospered; yet, their glory past,
In yonder tombs they lie this many a year.
At last they were like unto withered leaves
Whirled by the winds away in wild career."[2]

The opinion of most Arabian authors, that Nu'mán embraced Christianity, is probably unfounded, but there is reason to believe that he was well disposed towards it, and that his Christian subjects—a Bishop of Ḥíra is mentioned as early as 410 A.D.—enjoyed complete religious liberty.

Mundhir I.

Nu'mán's place was filled by his son Mundhir, an able and energetic prince. The power of the Lakhmites at this time may be inferred from the fact that on the death of Yazdigird I Mundhir forcibly intervened in the dispute as to the Persian succession and procured the election of Bahrám Gór, whose claims had previously been rejected by the priesthood.[3] In the war which broke out shortly afterwards between Persia and Rome, Mundhir proved himself a loyal vassal, but was defeated by the Romans with great loss (421 A.D.). Passing over several obscure reigns, we arrive at the beginning of the sixth century, when another Mundhir, the third and most illustrious of his name, ascended the throne. This is he whom the Arabs called Mundhir b. Má' al-samá.[4] He had a long and brilliant reign, which, however, was temporarily

Mundhir III, b. Má' al-samá.

[1] Sadír was a castle in the vicinity of Ḥíra. [2] Ṭabarí, i, 853, 20 sqq.

[3] Bahrám was educated at Ḥíra under Nu'mán and Mundhir. The Persian grandees complained that he had the manners and appearance of the Arabs among whom he had grown up (Ṭabarí, i, 858, 7).

[4] Má' al-samá (*i.e.*, Water of the sky) is said to have been the sobriquet of Mundhir's mother, whose proper name was Máriya or Máwiyya.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

clouded by an event that cannot be understood without some reference to the general history of the period. About 480 A.D. the powerful tribe of Kinda, whose princes appear to have held much the same position under the Tubba‘s of Yemen as the Lakhmites under the Persian monarchs, had extended their sway over the greater part of Central and Northern Arabia.

Rise of Kinda.

The moving spirit in this conquest was Ḥujr, surnamed Ákilu 'l-Murár, an ancestor of the poet Imru'u 'l-Qays. On his death the Kindite confederacy was broken up, but towards the year 500 it was re-established for a brief space by his grandson, Ḥárith b. ‘Amr, and became a formidable rival to the kingdoms of Ghassán and Ḥíra. Meanwhile, in Persia, the communistic doctrines of Mazdak had obtained wide popularity among the lower classes, and were finally adopted by King Kawádh himself.[1] Now, it is certain that at some date between 505 and 529 Ḥárith b. ‘Amr, the Kindite, invaded ‘Iráq, and drove Mundhir out of his kingdom; and it seems not impossible that, as many historians assert, the latter's downfall was due to his anti-Mazdakite opinions, which would naturally excite the displeasure of his suzerain. At any rate, whatever the causes may have been, Mundhir was temporarily supplanted by Ḥárith, and although he was restored after a short interval, before the accession of Anúshirwán, who, as Crown Prince, carried out a wholesale massacre of the followers of Mazdak (528 A.D.), the humiliation which he had suffered and cruelly avenged was not soon forgotten;[2] the life and poems of Imru'u 'l-Qays

Mazdak.

Mundhir expelled from Ḥíra by Ḥárith of Kinda.

[1] For an account of Mazdak and his doctrines the reader may consult Nöldeke's translation of Ṭabarí, pp. 140–144, 154, and 455–467, and Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 168–172.

[2] Mundhir slaughtered in cold blood some forty or fifty members of the royal house of Kinda who had fallen into his hands. Ḥárith himself was defeated and slain by Mundhir in 529. Thereafter the power of Kinda sank, and they were gradually forced back to their original settlements in Ḥaḍramawt.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

bear witness to the hereditary hatred subsisting between Lakhm and Kinda. Mundhir's operations against the Romans were conducted with extraordinary vigour; he devastated Syria as far as Antioch, and Justinian saw himself obliged to entrust the defence of these provinces to the Ghassánid Ḥárith b. Jabala (Ḥárith al-Aʿraj), in whom Mundhir at last found more than his match. From this time onward the kings of Ḥíra and Ghassán are continually raiding and plundering each other's territory. In one of his expeditions Mundhir captured a son of Ḥárith, and "immediately sacrificed him to Aphrodite"—*i.e.*, to the Arabian goddess al-ʿUzzá;[1] but on taking the field again in 554 he was surprised and slain by stratagem in a battle which is known proverbially as 'The Day of Ḥalíma.'[2]

Death of Mundhir III.

On the whole, the Lakhmites were a heathen and barbarous race, and these epithets are richly deserved by Mundhir III. It is related in the *Aghání* that he had two boon-companions, Khálid b. al-Muḍallil and ʿAmr b. Masʿúd, with whom he used to carouse; and once, being irritated by words spoken in wine, he gave orders that they should be buried alive. Next morning he did not recollect what had passed and inquired as usual for his friends. On learning the truth he was filled with remorse. He caused two obelisks to be erected over their graves, and two days in every year he would come and sit beside these obelisks, which were called *al-Ghariyyán*—*i.e.*, the Blood-smeared. One day was the Day of Good (*yawmu naʿím^in*), and whoever first encountered him on that day received a hundred black camels. The other day was the Day of Evil (*yawmu bu'ṣ^in*), on which he would present the first-comer with the head of a black polecat (*ẓaribán*), then sacrifice him and smear the obelisks with his blood.[3] The

Mundhir's "Good Day and Evil Day."

[1] On another occasion he sacrificed four hundred Christian nuns to the same goddess.

[2] See p. 50 *infra*.

[3] *Aghání*, xix, 86, l. 16 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

poet ʻAbíd b. al-Abraṣ is said to have fallen a victim to this horrible rite. It continued until the doom fell upon a certain Ḥanẓala of Ṭayyi', who was granted a year's grace in order to regulate his affairs, on condition that he should find a surety. He appealed to one of Mundhir's suite, Sharík b. ʻAmr, who straightway rose and said to the king, "My hand for his and my blood for his if he fail to return at the time appointed." When the day came Ḥanẓala did not appear, and Mundhir was about to sacrifice Sharík, whose mourning-woman had already begun to chant the dirge. Suddenly a rider was seen approaching, wrapped in a shroud and perfumed for burial. A mourning-woman accompanied him. It was Ḥanẓala. Mundhir marvelled at their loyalty, dismissed them with marks of honour, and abolished the custom which he had instituted.[1]

Ḥanẓala and Sharík.

He was succeeded by his son ʻAmr, who is known to contemporary poets and later historians as ʻAmr, son of Hind.[2] During his reign Ḥíra became an important literary centre. Most of the famous poets then living visited his court; we shall see in the next chapter what relations he had with Ṭarafa, ʻAmr b. Kulthúm, and Ḥárith b. Ḥilliza. He was a morose, passionate, and tyrannical man. The Arabs stood in great awe of him, but vented their spite none the less. "At Ḥíra," said Daháb al-ʻIjlí, "there are mosquitoes and fever and lions and ʻAmr b. Hind, who acts unjustly and wrongfully."[3] He was slain by the chief of Taghlib, ʻAmr b. Kulthúm, in vengeance for an insult offered to his mother, Laylá.

ʻAmr b. Hind (554–569 A.D.).

It is sufficient to mention the names of Qábús and

[1] *Aghání*, xix, 87, l. 18 sqq.

[2] Hind was a princess of Kinda (daughter of the Ḥárith b. ʻAmr mentioned above), whom Mundhir probably captured in one of his marauding expeditions. She was a Christian, and founded a monastery at Ḥíra. See Nöldeke's translation of Ṭabarí, p. 172, n. 1.

[3] *Aghání*, xxi, 194, l. 22.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Mundhir IV, both of whom were sons of Hind, and occupied the throne for short periods. We now come to the last Lakhmite king of Ḥíra, and by far the most celebrated in tradition, Nu'mán III, son of Mundhir IV, with the *kunya* (name of honour) Abú Qábús, who reigned from 580 to 602 or from 585 to 607. He was brought up and educated by a noble Christian family in Ḥíra, the head of which was Zayd b. Ḥammád, father of the poet 'Adí b. Zayd. 'Adí is such an interesting figure, and his fortunes were so closely and tragically linked with those of Nu'mán, that some account of his life and character will be acceptable. Both his father and grandfather were men of unusual culture, who held high posts in the civil administration under Mundhir III and his successors. Zayd, moreover, through the good offices of a *dihqán*, or Persian landed proprietor, Farrukh-máhán by name, obtained from Khusraw Anúshirwán an important and confidential appointment—that of Postmaster—ordinarily reserved for the sons of satraps.[1] When 'Adí grew up, his father sent him to be educated with the son of the *dihqán*. He learned to write and speak Persian with complete facility and Arabic with the utmost elegance; he versified, and his accomplishments included archery, horsemanship, and polo. At the Persian court his personal beauty, wit, and readiness in reply so impressed Anúshirwán that he took him into his service as secretary and interpreter—Arabic had never before been written in the Imperial Chancery—and accorded him all the privileges of a favourite. He was entrusted with a mission to Constantinople, where he was honourably received; and on his departure the Qayṣar,[2] following an excellent custom, instructed the officials in charge of the post-routes to provide horses and

Nu'mán Abú Qábús.

'Adí b. Zayd.

[1] Zayd was actually Regent of Ḥíra after the death of Qábús, and paved the way for Mundhir IV, whose violence had made him detested by the people (Nöldeke's translation of Ṭabarí, p. 346, n. 1).

[2] The Arabs called the Byzantine emperor '*Qayṣar*,' *i.e.*, Cæsar, and the Persian emperor '*Kisrá*,' *i.e.*, Chosroes.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft

every convenience in order that the ambassador might see for himself the extent and resources of the Byzantine Empire. 'Adí passed some time in Syria, especially at Damascus, where his first poem is said to have appeared. On his father's death, which happened about this time, he renounced the splendid position at Ḥírá which he might have had for the asking, and gave himself up to hunting and to all kinds of amusement and pleasure, only visiting Madá'in (Ctesiphon) at intervals to perform his secretarial duties. While staying at Ḥíra he fell in love with Nu'mán's daughter Hind, who was then eleven years old. The story as told in the *Book of Songs* is too curious to be entirely omitted, though want of space prevents me from giving it in full.[1]

'Adí meets the Princess Hind in church.

It is related that Hind, who was one of the fairest women of her time, went to church on Thursday of Holy Week, three days after Palm Sunday, to receive the sacrament. 'Adí had entered the church for the same purpose. He espied her—she was a big, tall girl—while she was off her guard, and fixed his gaze upon her before she became aware of him. Her maidens, who had seen him approaching, said nothing to their mistress, because one of them called Máriya was enamoured of 'Adí and knew no other way of making his acquaintance. When Hind saw him looking at herself, she was highly displeased and scolded her handmaidens and beat some of them. 'Adí had fallen in love with her, but he kept the matter secret for a whole year. At the end of that time Máriya, thinking that Hind had forgotten what passed, described the church of Thómá (St. Thomas) and the nuns there and the girls who frequented it, and the beauty of the building and of the lamps, and said to her, "Ask thy mother's leave to go." As soon as leave was granted, Máriya conveyed the intelligence to 'Adí, who immediately dressed himself in a magnifi-

[1] My friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, writes to me that "the story of 'Adí's marriage with the king's daughter is based partly on a verse in which the poet speaks of himself as connected by marriage with the royal house (*Aghání*, ii, 26, l. 5), and partly on another verse in which he mentions 'the home of Hind' (*ibid.*, ii, 32, l. 1). But this Hind was evidently a Bedouin woman, not the king's daughter."

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

cent gold-embroidered Persian tunic (*yalmaq*) and hastened to the rendezvous, accompanied by several young men of Ḥíra. When Máriya perceived him, she cried to Hind, "Look at this youth: by God, he is fairer than the lamps and all things else that thou seest." "Who is he?" she asked. "'Adí, son of Zayd." "Do you think," said Hind, "that he will recognise me if I come nearer?" Then she advanced and watched him as he conversed with his friends, outshining them all by the beauty of his person, the elegance of his language, and the splendour of his dress. "Speak to him," said Máriya to her young mistress, whose countenance betrayed her feelings. After exchanging a few words the lovers parted. Máriya went to 'Adí and promised, if he would first gratify her wishes, to bring about his union with Hind. She lost no time in warning Nu'mán that his daughter was desperately in love with 'Adí and would either disgrace herself or die of grief unless he gave her to him. Nu'mán, however, was too proud to make overtures to 'Adí, who on his part feared to anger the prince by proposing an alliance. The ingenious Máriya found a way out of the difficulty. She suggested that 'Adí should invite Nu'mán and his suite to a banquet, and having well plied him with wine should ask for the hand of his daughter, which would not then be refused. So it came to pass. Nu'mán gave his consent to the marriage, and after three days Hind was brought home to her husband.[1]

His marriage to Hind.

On the death of Mundhir IV 'Adí warmly supported the claims of Nu'mán, who had formerly been his pupil and was now his father-in-law, to the throne of Ḥíra. The ruse which he employed on this occasion was completely successful, but it cost him his life.[2] The partisans of Aswad b. Mundhir, one of the defeated candidates, resolved on vengeance. Their intrigues awakened

'Adí secures the election of Nu'mán as King of Ḥíra.

[1] *Aghání*, ii, 22, l. 3 sqq.

[2] When Hurmuz summoned the sons of Mundhir to Ctesiphon that he might choose a king from among them, 'Adí said to each one privately, "If the Chosroes demands whether you can keep the Arabs in order, reply, 'All except Nu'mán.'" To Nu'mán, however, he said: "The Chosroes will ask, 'Can you manage your brothers?' Say to him: 'If I am not strong enough for them, I am still less able to control other folk!'" Hurmuz was satisfied with this answer and conferred the crown upon Nu'mán.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the suspicions of Nuʿmán against the 'King-maker.' ʿAdí was cast into prison, where he languished for a long time and was finally murdered by Nuʿmán when the Chosroes (Parwéz, son of Hurmuz) had already intervened to procure his release.[1]

He is imprisoned and put to death by Nuʿmán.

ʿAdí left a son named Zayd, who, on the recommendation of Nuʿmán, was appointed by Khusraw Parwéz to succeed his father as Secretary for Arabian Affairs at the court of Ctesiphon. Apparently reconciled to Nuʿmán, he was none the less bent on vengeance, and only waited for an opportunity. The kings of Persia were connoisseurs in female beauty, and when they desired to replenish their harems they used to circulate an advertisement describing with extreme particularity the physical and moral qualities which were to be sought after;[2] but hitherto they had neglected Arabia, which, as they supposed, could not furnish any woman possessed of these perfections. Zayd therefore approached the Chosroes and said: "I know that Nuʿmán has in his family a number of women answering to the description. Let me go to him, and send with me one of thy guardsmen who understands Arabic." The Chosroes complied, and Zayd set out for Ḥíra. On learning the object of his mission, Nuʿmán exclaimed with indignation: "What! are not the gazelles of Persia sufficient for your needs?" The comparison of a beautiful woman to a gazelle is a commonplace in Arabian poetry, but the officer accompanying Zayd was ill acquainted with Arabic, and asked the meaning of the word (*ʿín* or *mahá*) which Nuʿmán had employed. "Cows," said Zayd. When Parwéz heard from his guardsman that Nuʿmán had said, "Do not the cows of Persia content him?" he could scarcely suppress his rage. Soon afterwards he sent for Nuʿmán,

The vengeance of Zayd b. ʿAdí.

Death of Nuʿmán III.

[1] A full account of these matters is given by Ṭabarí, i, 1016–1024 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 314–324.

[2] A similar description occurs in Freytag's *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii. p. 589 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

threw him into chains, and caused him to be trampled to pieces by elephants.[1]

Character of Nu'mán III.

Nu'mán III appears in tradition as a tyrannical prince, devoted to wine, women, and song. He was the patron of many celebrated poets, and especially of Nábigha Dhubyání, who was driven from Ḥíra in consequence of a false accusation. This episode, as well as another in which the poet Munakhkhal was concerned, gives us a glimpse into the private life of Nu'mán. He had married his step-mother, Mutajarrida, a great beauty in her time; but though he loved her passionately, she bestowed her affections elsewhere. Nábigha was suspected on account of a poem in which he described the charms of the queen with the utmost minuteness, but Munakhkhal was the real culprit. The lovers were surprised by Nu'mán, and from that day Munakhkhal was never seen again. Hence the proverb, "Until Munakhkhal shall return," or, as we might say, "Until the coming of the Coqcigrues."

Nu'mán's conversion to Christianity.

Although several of the kings of Ḥíra are said to have been Christians, it is very doubtful whether any except Nu'mán III deserved even the name; the Lakhmites, unlike the majority of their subjects, were thoroughly pagan. Nu'mán's education would naturally predispose him to Christianity, and his conversion may have been wrought, as the legend asserts, by his mentor 'Adí b. Zayd.

The Ghassánids or Jafnites.

According to Muḥammadan genealogists, the Ghassánids, both those settled in Medína and those to whom the name is consecrated by popular usage—the Ghassánids of Syria—are descended from 'Amr b. 'Ámir al-Muzayqiyá, who, as was related in the last chapter, sold his possessions in Yemen and quitted the country, taking with him a great number of its inhabitants, shortly before the Bursting of

[1] Ṭabarí, i, 1024–1029 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 324–331. Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, pp. 32–33.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the Dyke of Ma'rib. His son Jafna is generally regarded as the founder of the dynasty. Of their early history very few authentic facts have been preserved. At first, we are told, they paid tribute to the Ḍajá'ima, a family of the stock of Salíḥ, who ruled the Syrian borderlands under Roman protection. A struggle ensued, from which the Ghassánids emerged victorious, and henceforth we find them established in these regions as the representatives of Roman authority with the official titles of Patricius and Phylarch, which they and the Arabs around them rendered after the simple Oriental fashion by 'King' (*malik*).

Ibn Qutayba's account of the Ghassánids.

The first (says Ibn Qutayba) that reigned in Syria of the family of Jafna was Ḥárith b. 'Amr Muḥarriq, who was so called because he burnt (*ḥarraqa*) the Arabs in their houses. He is Ḥárith the Elder (*al-Akbar*), and his name of honour (*kunya*) is Abú Shamir. After him reigned Ḥárith b. Abí Shamir, known as Ḥárith the Lame (*al-A'raj*), whose mother was Máriya of the Ear-rings. He was the best of their kings, and the most fortunate, and the craftiest; and in his raids he went the farthest afield. He led an expedition against Khaybar[1] and carried off a number of prisoners, but set them free after his return to Syria. When Mundhir b. Má' al-samá marched against him with an army 100,000 strong, Ḥárith sent a hundred men to meet him—among them the poet Labíd, who was then a youth—ostensibly to make peace. They surrounded Mundhir's tent and slew the king and his companions; then they took horse, and some escaped, while others were slain. The Ghassánid cavalry attacked the army of Mundhir and put them to flight. Ḥárith had a daughter named Ḥalíma, who perfumed the hundred champions on that day and clad them in shrouds of white linen and coats of mail. She is the heroine of the proverb, "The day of Ḥalíma is no secret."[2] Ḥárith was succeeded by his son, Ḥárith the Younger. Among his other sons were 'Amr b. Ḥárith (called Abú Shamir the Younger), to whom Nábigha came on leaving Nu'mán b. Mundhir; Mundhir b. Ḥárith; and al-Ayham b. Ḥárith. Jabala, the son of al-Ayham, was the last of the kings of Ghassán.

Ḥárith the Lame.

[1] A town in Arabia, some distance to the north of Medína.

[2] See Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 611.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

He was twelve spans in height, and his feet brushed the ground when he rode on horseback. He reached the Islamic period and became a Moslem in the Caliphate of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb, but afterwards he turned Christian and went to live in the Byzantine Empire. The occasion of his turning Christian was this: In passing through the bazaar of Damascus he let his horse tread upon one of the bystanders, who sprang up and struck Jabala a blow on the face. The Ghassánís seized the fellow and brought him before Abú 'Ubayda b. al-Jarráḥ,[1] complaining that he had struck their master. Abú 'Ubayda demanded proof. "What use wilt thou make of the proof?" said Jabala. He answered: "If he has struck thee, thou wilt strike him a blow in return." "And shall not he be slain?" "No." "Shall not his hand be cut off?" "No," said Abú 'Ubayda; "God has ordained retaliation only—blow for blow." Then Jabala went forth and betook himself to Roman territory and became a Christian; and he stayed there all the rest of his life.[2]

Jabala b. al-Ayham.

The Arabian traditions respecting the dynasty of Ghassán are hopelessly confused and supply hardly any material even for the rough historical sketch which may be pieced together from the scattered notices in Byzantine authors.[3] It would seem that the first unquestionable Ghassánid prince was Ḥárith b. Jabala (Ἀρέθας τοῦ Γαβάλα), who figures in Arabian chronicles as 'Ḥárith the Lame,' and who was appointed by Justinian (about 529 A.D.) to balance, on the Roman side, the active and enterprising King of Ḥíra, Mundhir b. Má' al-samá. During the greater part of his long reign (529–569 A.D.) he was engaged in war with this dangerous rival, to whose defeat and death in the decisive battle of Ḥalíma we have already referred. Like all his line, Ḥárith was a Christian of the Monophysite Church, which he defended with equal zeal and success at a time when its very existence

Ḥárith the Lame.

[1] A celebrated Companion of the Prophet. He led the Moslem army to the conquest of Syria, and died of the plague in 639 A.D.

[2] Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, pp. 26–28.

[3] The following details are extracted from Nöldeke's monograph: *Die Ghassânischen Fürsten aus dem Hause Gafna's*, in *Abhand. d. Kön. Preuss. Akad. d. Wissenschaften* (Berlin, 1887).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

was at stake. The following story illustrates his formidable character. Towards the end of his life he visited Constantinople to arrange with the Imperial Government which of his sons should succeed him, and made a powerful impression on the people of that city, especially on the Emperor's nephew, Justinus. Many years afterwards, when Justinus had fallen into dotage, the chamberlains would frighten him, when he began to rave, with "Hush! Arethas will come and take you."[1]

Ḥárith was succeeded by his son, Mundhir, who vanquished the new King of Ḥíra, Qábús b. Hind, on Ascension Day, 570 A.D., in a battle which is perhaps identical with that celebrated by the Arabs as the Battle of 'Ayn Ubágh. The refusal of the Emperor Justinus to furnish him with money may have prevented Mundhir from pursuing his advantage, and was the beginning of open hostility between them, which culminated about eleven years later in his being carried off to Constantinople and forced to reside in Sicily.

Mundhir b. Ḥárith.

From this time to the Persian conquest of Palestine (614 A.D.) anarchy prevailed throughout the Ghassánid kingdom. The various tribes elected their own princes, who sometimes, no doubt, were Jafnites; but the dynasty had virtually broken up. Possibly it was restored by Heraclius when he drove the Persians out of Syria (629 A.D.), as the Ghassánians are repeatedly found fighting for Rome against the Moslems, and according to the unanimous testimony of Arabian writers, the Jafnite Jabala b. al-Ayham, who took an active part in the struggle, was the last king of Ghassán. His accession may be placed about 635 A.D. The poet Ḥassán b. Thábit, who as a native of Medína could claim kinship with the Ghassánids, and visited their court in his youth, gives a glowing description of its luxury and magnificence.

[1] Nöldeke, *op. cit.*, p. 20, refers to John of Ephesus, iii, 2. See *The Third Part of the Ecclesiastical History of John, Bishop of Ephesus*, translated by R. Payne Smith, p. 168.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"I have seen ten singing-girls, five of them Greeks, singing Greek songs to the music of lutes, and five from Ḥíra who had been presented to King Jabala by Iyás b. Qabíṣa,[1] chanting Babylonian airs. Arab singers used to come from Mecca and elsewhere for his delight; and when he would drink wine he sat on a couch of myrtle and jasmine and all sorts of sweet-smelling flowers, surrounded by gold and silver vessels full of ambergris and musk. During winter aloes-wood was burned in his apartments, while in summer he cooled himself with snow. Both he and his courtiers wore light robes, arranged with more regard to comfort than ceremony,[2] in the hot weather, and white furs, called *fanak*,[3] or the like, in the cold season; and, by God, I was never in his company but he gave me the robe which he was wearing on that day, and many of his friends were thus honoured. He treated the rude with forbearance; he laughed without reserve and lavished his gifts before they were sought. He was handsome, and agreeable in conversation: I never knew him offend in speech or act." [4]

Ḥassán b. Thábit's picture of the Ghassánid court.

Unlike the rival dynasty on the Euphrates, the Ghassánids had no fixed residence. They ruled the country round Damascus and Palmyra, but these places were never in their possession. The capital of their nomad kingdom was the temporary camp (in Aramaic, *ḥêrtâ*) which followed them to and fro, but was generally to be found in the Gaulonitis

[1] Iyás b. Qabíṣa succeeded Nu'mán III as ruler of Ḥíra (602–611 A.D.). He belonged to the tribe of Ṭayyi'. See Rothstein, *Laḫmiden*, p. 119.

[2] I read *yatafaḍḍalu* for *yanfaṣilu*. The arrangement which the former word denotes is explained in Lane's Dictionary as "the throwing a portion of one's garment over his left shoulder, and drawing its extremity under his right arm, and tying the two extremities together in a knot upon his bosom."

[3] The *fanak* is properly a kind of white stoat or weasel found in Abyssinia and northern Africa, but the name is also applied by Muḥammadans to other furs.

[4] *Aghání*, xvi, 15, ll. 22–30. So far as it purports to proceed from Ḥassán, the passage is apocryphal, but this does not seriously affect its value as evidence, if we consider that it is probably compiled from the poet's *díwán* in which the Ghassánids are often spoken of. The particular reference to Jabala b. al-Ayham is a mistake. Ḥassán's acquaintance with the Ghassánids belongs to the pagan period of his life, and he is known to have accepted Islam many years before Jabala began to reign.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

(al-Jawlán), south of Damascus. Thus under the quickening impulse of Hellenistic culture the Ghassánids developed a civilisation far superior to that of the Lakhmites, who, just because of their half-barbarian character, were more closely in touch with the heathen Arabs, and exercised a deeper influence upon them. Some aspects of this civilisation have been indicated in the description of Jabala b. al-Ayham's court, attributed to the poet Ḥassán. An earlier bard, the famous Nábigha, having fallen out of favour with Nuʿmán III of Ḥíra, fled to Syria, where he composed a splendid eulogy of the Ghassánids in honour of his patron, King ʿAmr, son of Ḥárith the Lame. After celebrating their warlike prowess, which he has immortalised in the oft-quoted verse—

Ghassánid civilisation.

Nábigha's encomium.

"One fault they have: their swords are blunt of edge
Through constant beating on their foemen's mail,"

he concludes in a softer strain:

"Theirs is a liberal nature that God gave
To no men else; their virtues never fail.
Their home the Holy Land: their faith upright:
They hope to prosper if good deeds avail.
Zoned in fair wise and delicately shod,
They keep the Feast of Palms, when maidens pale,
Whose scarlet silken robes on trestles hang,
Greet them with odorous boughs and bid them hail.
Long lapped in ease tho' bred to war, their limbs
Green-shouldered vestments, white-sleeved, richly veil."[1]

The Pre-islamic history of the Bedouins is mainly a record of wars, or rather guerillas, in which a great deal of raiding and plundering was accomplished, as a rule without serious bloodshed. There was no lack of shouting; volleys of vaunts

[1] Nábigha, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 78; Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 96. The whole poem has been translated by Sir Charles Lyall in his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 95 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and satires were exchanged; camels and women were carried off; many skirmishes took place but few pitched battles: it was an Homeric kind of warfare that called forth individual exertion in the highest degree, and gave ample opportunity for single-handed deeds of heroism. "To write a true history of such Bedouin feuds is well-nigh impossible. As comparatively trustworthy sources of information we have only the poems and fragments of verse which have been preserved. According to Suyúṭí, the Arabian traditionists used to demand from any Bedouin who related an historical event the citation of some verses in its support; and, in effect, all such stories that have come down to us are crystallised round the poems. Unfortunately these crystals are seldom pure. It appears only too often that the narratives have been invented, with abundant fancy and with more or less skill, to suit the contents of the verses."[1] But although what is traditionally related concerning the Battle-days of the Arabs (*Ayyámu 'l-'Arab*) is to a large extent legendary, it describes with sufficient fidelity how tribal hostilities generally arose and the way in which they were conducted. The following account of the War of Basús—the most famous of those waged in Pre-islamic times—will serve to illustrate this important phase of Bedouin life.[2]

Character of Bedouin history.

Towards the end of the fifth century A.D. Kulayb, son of Rabí'a, was chieftain of the Banú Taghlib, a powerful tribe which divided with their kinsmen, the Banú Bakr, a vast tract in north-eastern Arabia, extending from the central highlands to the Syrian desert. His victory at the head of a confederacy formed by these tribes and others over the Yemenite Arabs made him the first man in the peninsula, and soon his pride became no less proverbial than his power.[3] He was

War of Basús.

[1] Thorbecke, *'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter*, p. 14.

[2] The following narrative is an abridgment of the history of the War of Basús as related in Tibrízí's commentary on the *Ḥamása* (ed. by Freytag), pp. 420–423 and 251–255. *Cf.* Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 39 sqq.

[3] See p. 5 *supra*.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

married to Ḥalíla, daughter of Murra, of the Banú Bakr, and dwelt in a 'preserve' (*ḥimá*), where he claimed the sole right of pasturage for himself and the sons of Murra. His brother-in-law, Jassás, had an aunt named Basús. While living under her nephew's protection she was joined by a certain Sa'd, a client of her own people, who brought with him a she-camel called Sarábi.

Kulayb b. Rabí'a and Jassás b. Murra.

Now it happened that Kulayb, seeing a lark's nest as he walked on his land, said to the bird, which was screaming and fluttering distressfully over her eggs, "Have no fear! I will protect thee." But a short time afterwards he observed in that place the track of a strange camel and found the eggs trodden to pieces. Next morning when he and Jassás visited the pasture ground, Kulayb noticed the she-camel of Sa'd among his brother-in-law's herd, and conjecturing that she had destroyed the eggs, cried out to Jassás, "Take heed thou! Take heed! I have pondered something, and were I sure, I would have done it! May this she-camel never come here again with this herd!" "By God," exclaimed Jassás, "but she shall come!" and when Kulayb threatened to pierce her udder with an arrow, Jassás retorted, "By the stones of Wá'il,[1] fix thine arrow in her udder and I will fix my lance in thy backbone!" Then he drove his camels forth from the *ḥimá*. Kulayb went home in a passion, and said to his wife, who sought to discover what ailed him, "Knowest thou any one who durst defend his client against me?" She answered, "No one except my brother Jassás, if he has given his word." She did what she could to prevent the quarrel going further, and for a time nothing worse than taunts passed between them, until one day Kulayb went to look after his camels which were being taken to water, and were followed by those of Jassás. While the latter were waiting their turn to drink, Sa'd's she-camel broke loose and ran towards the water. Kulayb imagined that Jassás had let her go deliberately, and resenting the supposed insult, he seized his bow and shot her through the udder. The beast lay down, moaning loudly, before the tent of Basús, who in vehement indignation at the wrong suffered by her friend, Sa'd, tore the veil from her head, beating her face and crying, "O shame, shame!" Then, addressing Sa'd, but raising her voice so that Jassás might

The wounding of Sa'd's she-camel.

[1] Wá'il is the common ancestor of Bakr and Taghlib. For the use of stones (*anṣáb*) in the worship of the Pagan Arabs see Wellhausen, *Reste Arabischen Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 101 sqq. Robertson Smith, *Lectures on the Religion of the Semites* (London, 1894), p. 200 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

hear, she spoke these verses, which are known as 'The Instigators' (*al-Muwaththibát*):—

Verses spoken by Basús.

> *"O Sa'd, be not deceived! Protect thyself!*
> *This people for their clients have no care.*
> *Look to my herds, I charge thee, for I doubt*
> *Even my little daughters ill may fare.*
> *By thy life, had I been in Minqar's house,*
> *Thou would'st not have been wronged, my client, there!*
> *But now such folk I dwell among that when*
> *The wolf comes, 'tis my sheep he comes to tear!"*[1]

Jassás was stung to the quick by the imputation, which no Arab can endure, that injury and insult might be inflicted upon his guest-friend with impunity. Some days afterwards, having ascertained that Kulayb had gone out unarmed, he followed and slew him, and fled in haste to his own people. Murra, when he heard the news, said to his son, "Thou alone must answer for thy deed: thou shalt be put in chains that his kinsmen may slay thee. By the stones of Wá'il, never will Bakr and Taghlib be joined together in welfare after the death of Kulayb. Verily, an evil thing hast thou brought upon thy people, O Jassás! Thou hast slain their chief and severed their union and cast war into their midst." So he put Jassás in chains and confined him in a tent; then he summoned the elders of the families and asked them, "What do ye say concerning Jassás? Here he is, a prisoner, until the avengers demand him and we deliver him unto them." "No, by God," cried Sa'd b. Málik b. Ḍubay'a b. Qays, "we will not give him up, but will fight for him to the last man!" With these words he called for a camel to be sacrificed, and when its throat was cut they swore to one another over the blood. Thereupon Murra said to Jassás:—

Kulayb murdered by Jassás.

Verses of Murra, the father of Jassás.

> *"If thou hast plucked down war on me,*
> *No laggard I with arms outworn.*
> *Whate'er befall, I make to flow*
> *The baneful cups of death at morn.*
>
> *When spear-points clash, my wounded man*
> *Is forced to drag the spear he stained.*
> *Never I reck, if war must be,*
> *What Destiny hath preordained.*

---

[1] *Ḥamása*, 422, 14 sqq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 39, last line and foll.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Donning war's harness, I will strive
To fend from me the shame that sears.
Already I thrill and eager am
For the shock of the horsemen against the spears!"[1]

Thus began the War of Basús between Taghlib on the one side and the clan of Shaybán, to which Murra belonged, on the other; for at first the remaining divisions of Bakr held aloof from the struggle, considering Shaybán to be clearly in the wrong. The latter were reduced to dire straits, when an event occurred which caused the Bakrites to rise as one man on behalf of their fellows. Ḥárith b. 'Ubád, a famous knight of Bakr, had refused to take part in the contest, saying in words which became proverbial, "I have neither camel nor she-camel in it," *i.e.*, "it is no affair of mine." One day his nephew, Bujayr, encountered Kulayb's brother, Muhalhil, on whom the mantle of the murdered chief had fallen; and Muhalhil, struck with admiration for the youth's comeliness, asked him who he was. "Bujayr," said he, "the son of 'Amr, the son of 'Ubád." "And who is thy uncle on the mother's side?" "My mother is a captive" (for he would not name an uncle of whom he had no honour). Then Muhalhil slew him, crying, "Pay for Kulayb's shoe-latchet!" On hearing this, Ḥárith sent a message to Muhalhil in which he declared that if vengeance were satisfied by the death of Bujayr, he for his part would gladly acquiesce. But Muhalhil replied, "I have taken satisfaction only for Kulayb's shoe-latchet." Thereupon Ḥárith sprang up in wrath and cried:—

Outbreak of war between Taghlib and Bakr.

"*God knows, I kindled not this fire, altho'*
I am burned in it to-day.
A lord for a shoe-latchet is too dear:
To horse! To horse! Away!"[2]

And al-Find, of the Banú Bakr, said on this occasion:—

"*We spared the Banú Hind*[3] *and said, 'Our brothers they remain:*
It may be Time will make of us one people yet again.'

---

[1] *Ḥamása*, 423, 11 sqq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 41, l. 3 sqq.

[2] *Ḥamása*, 252, 8 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 44, l. 3 seq.

[3] Hind is the mother of Bakr and Taghlib. Here the Banú Hind (Sons of Hind) are the Taghlibites.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

But when the wrong grew manifest, and naked Ill stood plain,
And naught was left but ruthless hate, we paid them bane with bane!

Verses by al-Find.

As lions marched we forth to war in wrath and high disdain:
Our swords brought widowhood and tears and wailing in their train,
Our spears dealt gashes wide whence blood like water spilled amain.
No way but Force to weaken Force and mastery obtain;
'Tis wooing contumely to meet wild actions with humane:
By evil thou may'st win to peace when good is tried in vain."[1]

The Banú Bakr now prepared for a decisive battle. As their enemy had the advantage in numbers, they adopted a stratagem devised by Ḥárith. "Fight them," said he, "with your women. Equip every woman with a small waterskin and give her a club. Place the whole body of them behind you—this will make you more resolved in battle—and wear some distinguishing mark which they will recognise, so that when a woman passes by one of your wounded she may know him by his mark and give him water to drink, and raise him from the ground; but when she passes by one of your foes she will smite him with her club and slay him." So the Bakrites shaved their heads, devoting themselves to death, and made this a mark of recognition between themselves and their women, and this day was called the Day of Shearing. Now Jaḥdar b. Ḍubay'a was an ill-favoured, dwarfish man, with fair flowing love-locks, and he said, "O my people, if ye shave my head ye will disfigure me, so leave my locks for the first horseman of Taghlib that shall emerge from the hill-pass on the morrow" (meaning "I will answer for him, if my locks are spared"). On his request being granted, he exclaimed:—

The Day of Shearing.

"To wife and daughter
Henceforth I am dead:
Dust for ointment
On my hair is shed.

Let me close with the horsemen
Who hither ride,
Cut my locks from me
If I stand aside!

The vow of Jaḥdar b. Ḍubay'a.

[1] *Ḥamása*, 9, 17 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 45, l. 10 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Well wots a mother
If the son she bore
And swaddled in her bosom
And smelt him o'er,

Whenever warriors
In the mellay meet,
Is a puny weakling
Or a man complete!" [1]

He kept his promise but in the course of the fight he fell, severely wounded. When the women came to him, they saw his love-locks and imagining that he was an enemy despatched him with their clubs.

Women as combatants.

The presence of women on the field and the active share they took in the combat naturally provoked the bitterest feelings. If they were not engaged in finishing the bloody work of the men, their tongues were busy inciting them. We are told that a daughter of al-Find bared herself recklessly and chanted :—

"*War! War! War! War!*
It has blazed up and scorched us sore.
The highlands are filled with its roar.
Well done, the morning when your heads ye shore!" [2]

The mothers were accompanied by their children, whose tender age did not always protect them from an exasperated foe. It is related that a horseman of the Banú Taghlib transfixed a young boy and lifted him up on the point of his spear. He is said to have been urged to this act of savagery by one al-Bazbáz, who was riding behind him on the crupper. Their triumph was short; al-Find saw them, and with a single spear-thrust pinned them to each other—an exploit which his own verses record.

On this day the Banú Bakr gained a great victory, and broke the power of Taghlib. It was the last battle of note in the Forty Years' War, which was carried on, by raiding and plundering, until the exhaustion of both tribes and the influence of King Mundhir III of Ḥíra brought it to an end.

Not many years after the conclusion of peace between

[1] *Ḥamása*, 252, 14 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 46, l. 16 sqq.
[2] *Ḥamása*, 254, 6 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 47, l. 2 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Bakr and Taghlib, another war, hardly less famous in tradition than the War of Basús, broke out in Central Arabia. The combatants were the tribes of 'Abs and Dhubyán, the principal stocks of the Banú Ghaṭafán, and the occasion of their coming to blows is related as follows:—

The War of Dáḥis and Ghabrá.

Qays, son of Zuhayr, was chieftain of 'Abs. He had a horse called Dáḥis, renowned for its speed, which he matched against Ghabrá, a mare belonging to Ḥudhayfa b. Badr, the chief of Dhubyán. It was agreed that the course should be a hundred bow-shots in length, and that the victor should receive a hundred camels. When the race began Ghabrá took the lead, but as they left the firm ground and entered upon the sand, where the 'going' was heavy, Dáḥis gradually drew level and passed his antagonist. He was nearing the goal when some Dhubyánites sprang from an ambuscade prepared beforehand, and drove him out of his course, thus enabling Ghabrá to defeat him. On being informed of this foul play Qays naturally claimed that he had won the wager, but the men of Dhubyán refused to pay even a single camel. Bitterly resenting their treachery, he waylaid and slew one of Ḥudhayfa's brothers. Ḥudhayfa sought vengeance, and the murder of Málik, a brother of Qays, by his horsemen gave the signal for war. In the fighting which ensued Dhubyán more than held their own, but neither party could obtain a decisive advantage. Qays slew the brothers Ḥudhayfa and Ḥamal—

> "*Ḥamal I slew and eased my heart thereby,*
> *Ḥudhayfa glutted my avenging brand;*
> *But though I slaked my thirst by slaying them,*
> *I would as lief have lost my own right hand.*" [1]

After a long period—forty years according to the traditional computation—'Abs and Dhubyán were reconciled by the exertions of two chieftains of the latter tribe, Ḥárith b. 'Awf and Harim b.

---

[1] *Ḥamása*, 96. Ibn Nubáta, cited by Rasmussen, *Additamenta ad Historiam Arabum ante Islamismum*, p. 34, remarks that before Qays no one had ever lamented a foe slain by himself (*wa-huwa awwalu man rathá maqtúlahu*).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Sinán, whose generous and patriotic intervention the poet Zuhayr has celebrated. Qays went into exile. "I will not look," he said, "on the face of any woman of Dhubyán whose father or brother or husband or son I have killed." If we may believe the legend, he became a Christian monk and ended his days in 'Umán.

Descending westward from the highlands of Najd the traveller gradually approaches the Red Sea, which is separated from the mountains running parallel to it by a narrow strip of coast-land, called the Tih   áma (Netherland). The rugged plateau between Najd and the coast forms the Ḥijáz (Barrier), through which in ancient times the Sabæan caravans laden with costly merchandise passed on their way to the Mediterranean ports. Long before the beginning of our era two considerable trading settlements had sprung up in this region, viz., Macoraba (Mecca) and, some distance farther north, Yathrippa (Yathrib, the Pre-islamic name of Medína). Of their early inhabitants and history we know nothing except what is related by Muḥammadan writers, whose information reaches back to the days of Adam and Abraham. Mecca was the cradle of Islam, and Islam, according to Muḥammad, is the religion of Abraham, which was corrupted by succeeding generations until he himself was sent to purify it and to preach it anew. Consequently the Pre-islamic history of Mecca has all been, so to speak, 'Islamised.' The Holy City of Islam is made to appear in the same light thousands of years before the Prophet's time: here, it is said, the Arabs were united in worship of Allah, hence they scattered and fell into idolatry, hither they return annually as pilgrims to a shrine which had been originally dedicated to the One Supreme Being, but which afterwards became a Pantheon of tribal deities. This theory lies at the root of the Muḥammadan legend which I shall now recount as briefly as possible, only touching on the salient points of interest.

The Hijáz.

In the Meccan valley—the primitive home of that portion

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

of the Arab race which claims descent from Ismá'íl (Ishmael), the son of Ibráhím (Abraham) by Hájar (Hagar)—stands an irregular, cube-shaped building of small dimensions —the Ka'ba. Legend attributes its foundation to Adam, who built it by Divine command after a celestial archetype. At the Deluge it was taken up into heaven, but was rebuilt on its former site by Abraham and Ishmael. While they were occupied in this work Gabriel brought the celebrated Black Stone, which is set in the south-east corner of the building, and he also instructed them in the ceremonies of the Pilgrimage. When all was finished Abraham stood on a rock known to later ages as the *Maqámu Ibráhím*, and, turning to the four quarters of the sky, made proclamation: "O ye people! The Pilgrimage to the Ancient House is prescribed unto you. Hearken to your Lord!" And from every part of the world came the answer: "*Labbayka 'lláhumma, labbayka*"—*i.e.*, "We obey, O God, we obey."

Foundation of the Ka'ba.

The descendants of Ishmael multiplied exceedingly, so that the barren valley could no longer support them, and a great number wandered forth to other lands. They were succeeded as rulers of the sacred territory by the tribe of Jurhum, who waxed in pride and evil-doing until the vengeance of God fell upon them. Mention has frequently been made of the Bursting of the Dyke of Ma'rib, which caused an extensive movement of Yemenite stocks to the north. The invaders halted in the Ḥijáz and, having almost exterminated the Jurhumites, resumed their journey. One group, however—the Banú Khuzá'a, led by their chief Luḥayy—settled in the neighbourhood of Mecca. 'Amr, son of Luḥayy, was renowned among the Arabs for his wealth and generosity. Ibn Hishám says: 'I have been told by a learned man that 'Amr b. Luḥayy went from Mecca to Syria on some business and when he arrived at Má'ab, in the land of al-Balqá, he found the inhabitants, who were 'Amáliq, worshipping idols. "What are these idols?" he in-

Idolatry introduced at Mecca.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

quired. "They are idols that send us rain when we ask them for rain, and help us when we ask them for help." "Will ye not give me one of them," said 'Amr, "that I may take it to Arabia to be worshipped there?" So they gave him an idol called Hubal, which he brought to Mecca and set it up and bade the people worship and venerate it.'[1] Following his example, the Arabs brought their idols and installed them round the sanctuary. The triumph of Paganism was complete. We are told that hundreds of idols were destroyed by Muḥammad when he entered Mecca at the head of a Moslem army in 8 A.H. = 629 A.D.

To return to the posterity of Ismá'íl through 'Adnán: the principal of their descendants who remained in the Ḥijáz were the Hudhayl, the Kinána, and the Quraysh. The last-named tribe must now engage our attention almost exclusively. During the century before Muḥammad we find them in undisputed possession of Mecca and acknowledged guardians of the Ka'ba—an office which they administered with a shrewd appreciation of its commercial value. Their rise to power is related as follows:—

The Quraysh.

Kiláb b. Murra, a man of Quraysh, had two sons, Zuhra and Zayd. The latter was still a young child when his father died, and soon afterwards his mother, Fáṭima, who had married again, left Mecca, taking Zayd with her, and went to live in her new husband's home beside the Syrian borders. Zayd grew up far from his native land, and for this reason he got the name of Quṣayy—*i.e.*, 'Little Far-away.' When he reached man's estate and discovered his true origin he returned to Mecca, where the hegemony was wholly in the hands of the Khuzá'ites under their chieftain, Ḥulayl b. Ḥubshiyya, with the determination to procure the superintendence of the Ka'ba for his own people, the Quraysh, who as pure-blooded descendants of Ismá'íl had the best right to that honour. By his marriage with Ḥubbá, the daughter of Ḥulayl, he hoped to inherit the privileges vested in his father-in-law, but Ḥulayl on his death-bed committed the keys of the Ka'ba to a

The story of Quṣayy.

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 51, l. 7 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

kinsman named Abú Ghubshán. Not to be baffled, Quṣayy made the keeper drunk and persuaded him to sell the keys for a skin of wine—hence the proverbs "A greater fool than Abú Ghubshán" and "Abú Ghubshán's bargain," denoting a miserable fraud. Naturally the Khuzá'ites did not acquiesce in the results of this transaction; they took up arms, but Quṣayy was prepared for the struggle and won a decisive victory. He was now master of Temple and Town and could proceed to the work of organisation. His first step was to bring together the Quraysh, who had previously been dispersed over a wide area, into the Meccan valley—this earned for him the title of *al-Mujammi'* (the Congregator)—so that each family had its allotted quarter. He built a House of Assembly (*Dáru 'l-Nadwa*), where matters affecting the common weal were discussed by the Elders of the tribe. He also instituted and centred in himself a number of dignities in connection with the government of the Ka'ba and the administration of the Pilgrimage, besides others of a political and military character. Such was his authority that after his death, no less than during his life, all these ordinances were regarded by the Quraysh as sacred and inviolable.

Quṣayy master of Mecca.

The death of Quṣayy may be placed in the latter half of the fifth century. His descendant, the Prophet Muḥammad, was born about a hundred years afterwards, in 570 or 571 A.D. With one notable exception, to be mentioned immediately, the history of Mecca during the period thus defined is a record of petty factions unbroken by any event of importance. The Prophet's ancestors fill the stage and assume a commanding position, which in all likelihood they never possessed; the historical rivalry of the Umayyads and 'Abbásids appears in the persons of their founders, Umayya and Háshim—and so forth. Meanwhile the influence of the Quraysh was steadily maintained and extended. The Ka'ba had become a great national rendezvous, and the crowds of pilgrims which it attracted from almost every Arabian clan not only raised the credit of the Quraysh, but also materially contributed to their commercial prosperity. It has already been related how Abraha, the Abyssinian viceroy of Yemen, resolved to march against

Mecca in the sixth century after Christ.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Mecca with the avowed purpose of avenging upon the Ka'ba a sacrilege committed by one of the Quraysh in the church at Ṣan'á. Something of that kind may have served as a pretext, but no doubt his real aim was to conquer Mecca and to gain control of her trade.

The Year of the Elephant.

This memorable expedition[1] is said by Moslem historians to have taken place in the year of Muḥammad's birth (about 570 A.D.), usually known as the Year of the Elephant—a proof that the Arabs were deeply impressed by the extraordinary spectacle of these huge animals, one or more of which accompanied the Abyssinian force. The report of Abraha's preparations filled the tribesmen with dismay. At first they endeavoured to oppose his march, regarding the defence of the Ka'ba as a sacred duty, but they soon lost heart, and Abraha, after defeating Dhú Nafar, a Ḥimyarite chieftain, encamped in the neighbourhood of Mecca without further resistance. He sent the following message to 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib, the Prophet's grandfather, who was at that time the most influential personage in Mecca: "I have not come to wage war on you, but only to destroy the Temple. Unless you take up arms in its defence, I have no wish to shed your blood." 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib replied: "By God, we seek not war, for which we are unable. This is God's holy House and the House of Abraham, His Friend; it is for Him to protect His House and Sanctuary; if He abandons it, we cannot defend it."

The Abyssinians at Mecca.

'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib's interview with Abraha.

Then 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib was conducted by the envoy to the Abyssinian camp, as Abraha had ordered. There he inquired after Dhú Nafar, who was his friend, and found him a prisoner. "O Dhú Nafar," said he, "can you do aught in that which has befallen us?" Dhú Nafar answered, "What can a man do who is a captive in the hands of a

[1] In the account of Abraha's invasion given below I have followed Ṭabarí, i, 936, 9 – 945, 19 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 206–220.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

king, expecting day and night to be put to death? I can do nothing at all in the matter, but Unays, the elephant-driver, is my friend; I will send to him and press your claims on his consideration and ask him to procure you an audience with the king. Tell Unays what you wish: he will plead with the king in your favour if he can." So Dhú Nafar sent for Unays and said to him, "O Unays, 'Abdu l-Muṭṭalib is lord of Quraysh and master of the caravans of Mecca. He feeds the people in the plain and the wild creatures on the mountain-tops. The king has seized two hundred of his camels. Now get him admitted to the king's presence and help him to the best of your power." Unays consented, and soon 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib stood before the king. When Abraha saw him he held him in too high respect to let him sit in an inferior place, but was unwilling that the Abyssinians should see the Arab chief, who was a large man and a comely, seated on a level with himself; he therefore descended from his throne and sat on his carpet and bade 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib sit beside him. Then he said to his dragoman, "Ask him what he wants of me." 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib replied, "I want the king to restore to me two hundred camels of mine which he has taken away." Abraha said to the dragoman, "Tell him: You pleased me when I first saw you, but now that you have spoken to me I hold you cheap. What! do you speak to me of two hundred camels which I have taken, and omit to speak of a temple venerated by you and your fathers which I have come to destroy?" Then said 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib: "The camels are mine, but the Temple belongs to another, who will defend it," and on the king exclaiming, "He cannot defend it from me," he said, "That is your affair; only give me back my camels."

As it is related in a more credible version, the tribes settled round Mecca sent ambassadors, of whom 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib was one, offering to surrender a third part of their possessions to Abraha on condition that he should spare the Temple, but he refused. Having recovered his camels, 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib returned to the Quraysh, told them what had happened, and bade them leave the city and take shelter in the mountains. Then he went to the Ka'ba, accompanied by several of the Quraysh, to pray for help against Abraha and his army. Grasping the ring of the door, he cried:—

"O God, defend Thy neighbouring folk even as a man his gear[1] defendeth!
Let not their Cross and guileful plans defeat the plans Thyself intendeth!
But if Thou make it so, 'tis well: according to Thy will it endeth."[2]

---

[1] I read *ḥilálak*. See Glossary to Ṭabarí. [2] Ṭabarí, i, 940, 13.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Next morning, when Abraha prepared to enter Mecca, his elephant knelt down and would not budge, though they beat its head with an axe and thrust sharp stakes into its flanks; but when they turned it in the direction of Yemen, it rose up and trotted with alacrity. Then God sent from the sea a flock of birds like swallows every one of which carried three stones as large as a chick-pea or a lentil, one in its bill and one in each claw, and all who were struck by those stones perished.[1] The rest fled in disorder, dropping down as they ran or wherever they halted to quench their thirst. Abraha himself was smitten with a plague so that his limbs rotted off piecemeal.[2]

Rout of the Abyssinians.

These details are founded on the 105th chapter of the Koran, entitled 'The Súra of the Elephant,' which may be freely rendered as follows:—

"Hast not thou seen the people of the Elephant, how dealt with them the Lord?
Did not He make their plot to end in ruin abhorred?—
When He sent against them birds, horde on horde,
And stones of baked clay upon them poured,
And made them as leaves of corn devoured."

The part played by 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib in the story is, of course, a pious fiction designed to glorify the Holy City and to claim for the Prophet's family fifty years before Islam a predominance which they did not obtain until long afterwards; but equally of course the legend reflects Muḥammadan belief, and may be studied with advantage as a characteristic specimen of its class.

"When God repulsed the Abyssinians from Mecca and smote them with His vengeance, the Arabs held the Quraysh

[1] Another version says: "Whenever a man was struck sores and pustules broke out on that part of his body. This was the first appearance of the small-pox" (Ṭabarí, i, 945, 2 sqq.). Here we have the historical fact—an outbreak of pestilence in the Abyssinian army—which gave rise to the legend related above.

[2] There is trustworthy evidence that Abraha continued to rule Yemen for some time after his defeat.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

in high respect and said, 'They are God's people: God hath fought for them and hath defended them against their enemy;' and made poems on this matter."[1] The following verses, according to Ibn Isháq, are by Abu 'l-Ṣalt b. Abí Rabí'a of Thaqíf; others more reasonably ascribe them to his son Umayya, a well-known poet and monotheist (*Ḥaníf*) contemporary with Muhammad:—

Verses by Umayya b. Abi 'l-Ṣalt.

"Lo, the signs of our Lord are everlasting,
None disputes them except the unbeliever.
He created Day and Night: unto all men
Is their Reckoning ordained, clear and certain.
Gracious Lord! He illumines the daytime
With a sun widely scattering radiance.
He the Elephant stayed at Mughammas
So that sore it limped as though it were hamstrung,
Cleaving close to its halter, and down dropped,
As one falls from the crag of a mountain.
Gathered round it were princes of Kinda,
Noble heroes, fierce hawks in the mellay.
There they left it: they all fled together,
Every man with his shank-bone broken.
Vain before God is every religion,
When the dead rise, except the Ḥanífite.[2]"

The patriotic feelings aroused in the Arabs of the Ḥijáz by the Abyssinian invasion—feelings which must have been shared to some extent by the Bedouins generally—received a fresh stimulus through events which occurred about forty years after this time on the other side of the peninsula. It will be remembered that the Lakhmite dynasty at Ḥíra came to an end with Nu'mán III, who was cruelly executed by Khusraw Parwéz (602 or 607 A.D.).[3] Before his death he had deposited his arms and other property with Háni', a chieftain of the Banú Bakr. These were claimed by Khusraw, and as Háni' refused to give them up, a Persian army was sent to Dhú Qár,

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 38, l. 14 sqq. [2] *Ibid.*, p. 40, l. 12 sqq.
[3] See pp. 48–49 *supra*.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

a place near Kúfa abounding in water and consequently a favourite resort of the Bakrites during the dry season. A desperate conflict ensued, in which the Persians were completely routed.[1] Although the forces engaged were comparatively small,[2] this victory was justly regarded by the Arabs as marking the commencement of a new order of things; *e.g.*, it is related that Muḥammad said when the tidings reached him: "This is the first day on which the Arabs have obtained satisfaction from the Persians." The desert tribes, hitherto overshadowed by the Sásánian Empire and held in check by the powerful dynasty of Ḥíra, were now confident and aggressive. They began to hate and despise the Colossus which they no longer feared, and which, before many years had elapsed, they trampled in the dust.

Battle of Dhú Qár (*circa* 610 A.D.).

[1] Full details are given by Ṭabarí, i, 1016–1037 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 311–345.

[2] A poet speaks of three thousand Arabs and two thousand Persians Ṭabarí, i, 1036, 5–6).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER III

PRE-ISLAMIC POETRY, MANNERS, AND RELIGION

"When there appeared a poet in a family of the Arabs, the other tribes round about would gather together to that family and wish them joy of their good luck. Feasts would be got ready, the women of the tribe would join together in bands, playing upon lutes, as they were wont to do at bridals, and the men and boys would congratulate one another; for a poet was a defence to the honour of them all, a weapon to ward off insult from their good name, and a means of perpetuating their glorious deeds and of establishing their fame for ever. And they used not to wish one another joy but for three things—the birth of a boy, the coming to light of a poet, and the foaling of a noble mare." [1]

As far as extant literature is concerned—and at this time there was only a spoken literature, which was preserved by oral tradition, and first committed to writing long afterwards—the *Jáhiliyya* or Pre-islamic Age covers scarcely more than a century, from about 500 A.D., when the oldest poems of which we have any record were composed, to the year of Muḥammad's Flight to Medína (622 A.D.), which is the starting-point of a new era in Arabian history. The influence of these hundred and twenty years was great and lasting.

[1] Ibn Rashíq in Suyúṭí's *Muzhir* (Buláq, 1282 A.H.), Part II, p. 236, l. 22 sqq. I quote the translation of Sir Charles Lyall in the Introduction to his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 17, a most admirable work which should be placed in the hands of every one who is beginning the study of this difficult subject.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

They saw the rise and incipient decline of a poetry which most Arabic-speaking Moslems have always regarded as a model of unapproachable excellence; a poetry rooted in the life of the people, that insensibly moulded their minds and fixed their character and made them morally and spiritually a nation long before Muḥammad welded the various conflicting groups into a single organism, animated, for some time at least, by a common purpose. In those days poetry was no luxury for the cultured few, but the sole medium of literary expression. Every tribe had its poets, who freely uttered what they felt and thought. Their unwritten words "flew across the desert faster than arrows," and came home to the hearts and bosoms of all who heard them. Thus in the midst of outward strife and disintegration a unifying principle was at work. Poetry gave life and currency to an ideal of Arabian virtue (*muruwwa*), which, though based on tribal community of blood and insisting that only ties of blood were sacred, nevertheless became an invisible bond between diverse clans, and formed, whether consciously or not, the basis of a national community of sentiment.

Origins of Arabian poetry

In the following pages I propose to trace the origins of Arabian poetry, to describe its form, contents, and general features, to give some account of the most celebrated Pre-islamic poets and collections of Pre-islamic verse, and finally to show in what manner it was preserved and handed down.

By the ancient Arabs the poet (*shá'ir*, plural *shu'ará*), as his name implies, was held to be a person endowed with supernatural knowledge, a wizard in league with spirits (*jinn*) or satans (*shayáṭín*) and dependent on them for the magical powers which he displayed. This view of his personality, as well as the influential position which he occupied, are curiously indicated by the story of a certain youth who was refused the hand of his beloved on the ground that he was neither a poet

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

nor a soothsayer nor a water-diviner.[1] The idea of poetry as an art was developed afterwards; the pagan *shá'ir* is the oracle of his tribe, their guide in peace and their champion in war. It was to him they turned for counsel when they sought new pastures, only at his word would they pitch or strike their 'houses of hair,' and when the tired and thirsty wanderers found a well and drank of its water and washed themselves, led by him they may have raised their voices together and sung, like Israel—

"Spring up, O well, sing ye unto it."[2]

Besides fountain-songs, war-songs, and hymns to idols, other kinds of poetry must have existed in the earliest times—*e.g.*, the love-song and the dirge. The powers of the *shá'ir*, however, were chiefly exhibited in Satire (*hijá*), which in the oldest known form "introduces and accompanies the tribal feud, and is an element of war just as important as the actual fighting."[3] The menaces which he hurled against the foe were believed to be inevitably fatal. His rhymes, often compared to arrows, had all the effect of a solemn curse spoken by a divinely inspired prophet or priest,[4] and their pronunciation was attended with peculiar ceremonies of a symbolic character, such as anointing the hair on one side of the head, letting the mantle hang down loosely, and wearing only one sandal.[5] Satire retained something of these ominous associations at a much later period when the magic utterance of the *shá'ir* had long given place to the lampoon

Satire.

[1] Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 494.

[2] Numb. xxi, 17. Such well-songs are still sung in the Syrian desert (see Enno Littmann, *Neuarabische Volkspoesie*, in *Abhand. der Kön. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, Phil.-Hist. Klasse*, Göttingen, 1901), p. 92. In a specimen cited at p. 81 we find the words *witla yā dlêwēna*—*i.e.*, "Rise, O bucket!" several times repeated.

[3] Goldziher, *Ueber die Vorgeschichte der Higâ'-Poesie* in his *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I (Leyden, 1896), p. 26.

[4] *Cf.* the story of Balak and Balaam, with Goldziher's remarks thereon, *ibid.*, p. 42 seq.

[5] *Ibid.*, p. 46 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

by which the poet reviles his enemies and holds them up to shame.

The obscure beginnings of Arabian poetry, presided over by the magician and his familiar spirits, have left not a rack behind in the shape of literature, but the task of reconstruction is comparatively easy where we are dealing with a people so conservative and tenacious of antiquity as the Arabs. Thus it may be taken for certain that the oldest form of poetical speech in Arabia was rhyme without metre (*Saj'*), or, as we should say, 'rhymed prose,' although the fact of Muḥammad's adversaries calling him a poet because he used it in the Koran shows the light in which it was regarded even after the invention and elaboration of metre. Later on, as we shall see, *Saj'* became a merely rhetorical ornament, the distinguishing mark of all eloquence whether spoken or written, but originally it had a deeper, almost religious, significance as the special form adopted by poets, soothsayers, and the like in their supernatural revelations and for conveying to the vulgar every kind of mysterious and esoteric lore.

Saj'.

Out of *Saj'* was evolved the most ancient of the Arabian metres, which is known by the name of *Rajaz*.[1] This is an irregular iambic metre usually consisting of four or six—an Arab would write 'two or three'—feet to the line; and it is a peculiarity of *Rajaz*, marking its affinity to *Saj'*, that all the lines rhyme with each other, whereas in the more artificial metres only the opening verse[2]

Rajaz.

[1] *Rajaz* primarily means "a tremor (which is a symptom of disease) in the hind-quarters of a camel." This suggested to Dr. G. Jacob his interesting theory that the Arabian metres arose out of the camel-driver's song (*ḥidá*) in harmony with the varying paces of the animal which he rode (*Studien in arabischen Dichtern*, Heft III, p. 179 sqq.).

[2] The Arabic verse (*bayt*) consists of two halves or hemistichs (*miṣrá'*). It is generally convenient to use the word 'line' as a translation of *miṣrá'*, but the reader must understand that the 'line' is not, as in English poetry, an independent unit. *Rajaz* is the sole exception to this rule, there being here no division into hemistichs, but each line (verse) forming an unbroken whole and rhyming with that which precedes it.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

is doubly rhymed. A further characteristic of *Rajaz* is that it should be uttered extempore, a few verses at a time—commonly verses expressing some personal feeling, emotion, or experience, like those of the aged warrior Durayd b. Zayd b. Nahd when he lay dying :—

> "The house of death[1] is builded for Durayd to-day.
> Could Time be worn out, sure had I worn Time away.
> No single foe but I had faced and brought to bay.
> The spoils I gathered in, how excellent were they !
> The women that I loved, how fine was their array !"[2]

Here would have been the proper place to give an account of the principal Arabian metres—the 'Perfect' (*Kámil*), the 'Ample' (*Wáfir*), the 'Long' (*Ṭawíl*), the 'Wide' (*Basíṭ*), the 'Light' (*Khafíf*), and several more—but in order to save valuable space I must content myself with referring the reader to the extremely lucid treatment of this subject by Sir Charles Lyall in the Introduction to his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, pp. xlv–lii. All the metres are quantitative, as in Greek and Latin. Their names and laws were unknown to the Pre-islamic bards : the rules of prosody were first deduced from the ancient poems and systematised by the grammarian, Khalíl b. Aḥmad († 791 A.D.), to whom the idea is said to have occurred as he watched a coppersmith beating time on the anvil with his hammer.

Other metres.

We have now to consider the form and matter of the oldest extant poems in the Arabic language. Between these highly developed productions and the rude doggerel of *Saj'* or *Rajaz* there lies an interval, the length of which it is impossible even to conjecture. The first poets are already consummate masters of the craft. "The number and complexity of the measures which they use, their established laws of quantity and rhyme, and the uniform

The oldest extant poems.

[1] In Arabic 'al-bayt,' the tent, which is here used figuratively for the grave.

[2] Ibn Qutayba, *Kitábu 'l-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ará*, p. 36, l. 3 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

manner in which they introduce the subject of their poems,[1] notwithstanding the distance which often separated one composer from another, all point to a long previous study and cultivation of the art of expression and the capacities of their language, a study of which no record now remains." [2]

It is not improbable that the dawn of the Golden Age of Arabian Poetry coincided with the first decade of the sixth century after Christ. About that time the War of Basús, the chronicle of which has preserved a considerable amount of contemporary verse, was in full blaze; and the first Arabian ode was composed, according to tradition, by Muhalhil b. Rabí'a the Taghlibite on the death of his brother, the chieftain Kulayb, which caused war to break out between Bakr and Taghlib. At any rate, during the next hundred years in almost every part of the peninsula we meet with a brilliant succession of singers, all using the same poetical dialect and strictly adhering to the same rules of composition. The fashion which they set maintained itself virtually unaltered down to the end of the Umayyad period (750 A.D.), and though challenged by some daring spirits under the 'Abbásid Caliphate, speedily reasserted its supremacy, which at the present day is almost as absolute as ever.

Their date.

This fashion centres in the *Qaṣída*,[3] or Ode, the only form, or rather the only finished type of poetry that existed

[1] Already in the sixth century A.D. the poet 'Antara complains that his predecessors have left nothing new for him to say (*Mu'allaqa*, v. 1).

[2] *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, Introduction, p. xvi.

[3] *Qaṣída* is explained by Arabian lexicographers to mean a poem with an artistic purpose, but they differ as to the precise sense in which 'purpose' is to be understood. Modern critics are equally at variance. Jacob (*Stud. in Arab. Dichtern*, Heft III, p. 203) would derive the word from the principal motive of these poems, namely, to gain a rich reward in return for praise and flattery. Ahlwardt (*Bemerkungen über die Aechtheit der alten Arab. Gedichte*, p. 24 seq.) connects it with *qaṣada, to break*, "because it consists of verses, every one of which is divided into two halves, with a common end-rhyme: thus the whole poem is *broken*, as it were, into two halves;" while in the *Rajaz* verses, as we have seen (p. 74 *supra*), there is no such break.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

in what, for want of a better word, may be called the classical period of Arabic literature. The verses (*abyát*, singular *bayt*) of which it is built vary in number, but are seldom less than twenty-five or more than a hundred; and the arrangement of the rhymes is such that, while the two halves of the first verse rhyme together, the same rhyme is repeated once in the second, third, and every following verse to the end of the poem. Blank-verse is alien to the Arabs, who regard rhyme not as a pleasing ornament or a "troublesome bondage," but as a vital organ of poetry. The rhymes are usually feminine, *e.g.*, sa*khíná*, tu*líná*, mu*híná*; mukh*lidí*, *yadí*, 'uw*wadí*; ri*jámuhá*, si*lámuhá*, ḥa*rámuhá*. To surmount the difficulties of the monorhyme demands great technical skill even in a language of which the peculiar formation renders the supply of rhymes extraordinarily abundant. The longest of the *Mu'allaqát*, the so-called 'Long Poems,' is considerably shorter than Gray's *Elegy*. An Arabian Homer or Chaucer must have condescended to prose. With respect to metre the poet may choose any except *Rajaz*, which is deemed beneath the dignity of the Ode, but his liberty does not extend either to the choice of subjects or to the method of handling them: on the contrary, the course of his ideas is determined by rigid conventions which he durst not overstep.

The Qaṣída.

"I have heard," says Ibn Qutayba, "from a man of learning that the composer of Odes began by mentioning the deserted dwelling-places and the relics and traces of habitation. Then he wept and complained and addressed the desolate encampment, and begged his companion to make a halt, in order that he might have occasion to speak of those who had once lived there and afterwards departed; for the dwellers in tents were different from townsmen or villagers in respect of coming and going, because they moved from one water-spring to another, seeking pasture and searching out the places where rain had fallen. Then to this h· linked the erotic prelude (*nasíb*), and bewailed the violence of his love and the anguish of separation from his mistress and the extremity of his passion and desire, so as to win the hearts of his hearers and divert

Ibn Qutayba's account of the contents and divisions of the Ode.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

their eyes towards him and invite their ears to listen to him, since the song of love touches men's souls and takes hold of their hearts, God having put it in the constitution of His creatures to love dalliance and the society of women, in such wise that we find very few but are attached thereto by some tie or have some share therein, whether lawful or unpermitted. Now, when the poet had assured himself of an attentive hearing, he followed up his advantage and set forth his claim : thus he went on to complain of fatigue and want of sleep and travelling by night and of the noonday heat, and how his camel had been reduced to leanness. And when, after representing all the discomfort and danger of his journey, he knew that he had fully justified his hope and expectation of receiving his due meed from the person to whom the poem was addressed, he entered upon the panegyric (*madíḥ*), and incited him to reward, and kindled his generosity by exalting him above his peers and pronouncing the greatest dignity, in comparison with his, to be little." [1]

Hundreds of Odes answer exactly to this description, which must not, however, be regarded as the invariable model. The erotic prelude is often omitted, especially in elegies; or if it does not lead directly to the main subject, it may be followed by a faithful and minute delineation of the poet's horse or camel which bears him through the wilderness with a speed like that of the antelope, the wild ass, or the ostrich : Bedouin poetry abounds in fine studies of animal life.[2] The choice of a motive is left open. Panegyric, no doubt, paid better than any other, and was therefore the favourite ; but in Pre-islamic times the poet could generally please himself. The *qaṣída* is no organic whole : rather its unity resembles that of a series of pictures by the same hand or, to employ an Eastern trope, of pearls various in size and quality threaded on a necklace.

The ancient poetry may be defined as an illustrative criti-

[1] *Kitábu 'l-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ará*, p. 14, l. 10 sqq.

[2] Nöldeke (*Fünf Mo'allaqát*, i, p. 3 sqq.) makes the curious observation, which illustrates the highly artificial character of this poetry, that certain animals well known to the Arabs (*e.g.*, the panther, the jerboa, and the hare) are seldom mentioned and scarcely ever described, apparently for no reason except that they were not included in the conventional repertory.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

cism of Pre-islamic life and thought. Here the Arab has drawn himself at full length without embellishment or extenuation.

It is not mere chance that Abú Tammám's famous anthology is called the *Ḥamása*, *i.e.*, 'Fortitude,' from the title of its first chapter, which occupies nearly a half of the book. 'Ḥamása' denotes the virtues most highly prized by the Arabs—bravery in battle, patience in misfortune, persistence in revenge, protection of the weak and defiance of the strong; the will, as Tennyson has said,

> "To strive, to seek, to find, and not to yield."

The ideal Arab hero.

As types of the ideal Arab hero we may take Shanfará of Azd and his comrade in foray, Ta'abbaṭa Sharr^an^. Both were brigands, outlaws, swift runners, and excellent poets. Of the former

Shanfará.

> "it is said that he was captured when a child from his tribe by the Banú Salámán, and brought up among them: he did not learn his origin until he had grown up, when he vowed vengeance against his captors, and returned to his own tribe. His oath was that he would slay a hundred men of Salámán; he slew ninety-eight, when an ambush of his enemies succeeded in taking him prisoner. In the struggle one of his hands was hewn off by a sword stroke, and, taking it in the other, he flung it in the face of a man of Salámán and killed him, thus making ninety-nine. Then he was overpowered and slain, with one still wanting to make up his number. As his skull lay bleaching on the ground, a man of his enemies passed by that way and kicked it with his foot; a splinter of bone entered his foot, the wound mortified, and he died, thus completing the hundred." [1]

The following passage is translated from Shanfará's splendid Ode named *Lámiyyatu 'l-'Arab* (the poem rhymed in *l* of the

[1] *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 83.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Arabs), in which he describes his own heroic character and the hardships of a predatory life:—[1]

"Somewhere the noble find a refuge afar from scathe,
The outlaw a lonely spot where no kin with hatred burn.
Oh, never a prudent man, night-faring in hope or fear,
Hard pressed on the face of earth, but still he hath room to turn.

To me now, in your default, are comrades a wolf untired,
A sleek leopard, and a fell hyena with shaggy mane:[2]
True comrades, who yield not up the secret consigned to them,
Nor basely forsake their friend because that he brought them bane.

And each is a gallant heart and ready at honour's call,
Yet I, when the foremost charge, am bravest of all the brave;
But if they with hands outstretched are seizing the booty won,
The slowest am I whenas most quick is the greedy knave.

By naught save my generous will I reach to the height of worth
Above them, and sure the best is he with the will to give.
Yea, well I am rid of those who pay not a kindness back,
Of whom I have no delight though neighbours to me they live.

Enow are companions three at last: an intrepid soul,
A glittering trenchant blade, a tough bow of ample size,
Loud-twanging, the sides thereof smooth-polished, a handsome bow
Hung down from the shoulder-belt by thongs in a comely wise,
That groans, when the arrow slips away, like a woman crushed
By losses, bereaved of all her children, who wails and cries."

---

[1] Verses 3–13. I have attempted to imitate the 'Long' (*Ṭawíl*) metre of the original, viz.:—

⏑ — ⏓ | ⏑ — ⏓ — | ⏑ — ⏓ | ⏑ — ⏑ —

The Arabic text of the *Lámiyya*, with prose translation and commentary, is printed in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe* (2nd ed.), vol. ii^2, p. 134 sqq., and vol. ii, p. 337 sqq. It has been translated into English verse by G. Hughes (London, 1896). Other versions are mentioned by Nöldeke, *Beiträge zur Kenntniss d. Poesie d. alten Araber*, p. 200.

[2] The poet, apparently, means that his three friends are *like* the animals mentioned. Prof. Bevan remarks, however, that this interpretation is doubtful, since an Arab would scarcely compare his *friend* to a hyena.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

On quitting his tribe, who cast him out when they were threatened on all sides by enemies seeking vengeance for the blood that he had spilt, Shanfará said :—

"Bury me not! Me you are forbidden to bury,
But thou, O hyena, soon wilt feast and make merry,
When foes bear away mine head, wherein is the best of me,
And leave on the battle-field for thee all the rest of me.
Here nevermore I hope to live glad—a stranger
Accurst, whose wild deeds have brought his people in danger."[1]

Thábit b. Jábir b. Sufyán of Fahm is said to have got his nickname, Ta'abbaṭa Sharr^{an}, because one day his mother, who had seen him go forth from his tent with a sword under his arm, on being asked, "Where is Thábit?" replied, "I know not: he put a mischief under his arm-pit (*ta'abbaṭa sharr^{an}*) and departed." According to another version of the story, the 'mischief' was a Ghoul whom he vanquished and slew and carried home in this manner. The following lines, which he addressed to his cousin, Shams b. Málik, may be applied with equal justice to the poet himself :—

Ta'abbaṭa Sharran.

"Little he complains of labour that befalls him; much he wills;
Diverse ways attempting, mightily his purpose he fulfils.
Through one desert in the sun's heat, through another in starlight,
Lonely as the wild ass, rides he bare-backed Danger noon and night.
He the foremost wind outpaceth, while in broken gusts it blows,
Speeding onward, never slackening, never staying for repose.
Prompt to dash upon the foeman, every minute watching well—
Are his eyes in slumber lightly sealed, his heart stands sentinel.
When the first advancing troopers rise to sight, he sets his hand
From the scabbard forth to draw his sharp-edged, finely-mettled brand.

[1] *Ḥamása*, 242.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

When he shakes it in the breast-bone of a champion of the foe,
How the grinning Fates in open glee their flashing side-teeth show!
Solitude his chosen comrade, on he fares while overhead
By the Mother of the mazy constellations he is led."[1]

These verses admirably describe the rudimentary Arabian virtues of courage, hardness, and strength. We must now take a wider survey of the moral ideas on which pagan society was built, and of which Pre-islamic poetry is at once the promulgation and the record. There was no written code, no legal or religious sanction—nothing, in effect, save the binding force of traditional sentiment and opinion, *i.e.*, Honour. What, then, are the salient points of honour in which Virtue (*Muruwwa*), as it was understood by the heathen Arabs, consists?

The old Arabian points of honour.

Courage has been already mentioned. Arab courage is like that of the ancient Greeks, "dependent upon excitement and vanishing quickly before depression and delay."[2] Hence the Arab hero is defiant and boastful, as he appears, *e.g.*, in the *Mu'allaqa* of 'Amr b. Kulthúm. When there is little to lose by flight he will ride off unashamed; but he will fight to the death for his womenfolk, who in serious warfare often accompanied the tribe and were stationed behind the line of battle.[3]

Courage.

"When I saw the hard earth hollowed
By our women's flying footprints,
And Lamís her face uncovered
Like the full moon of the skies,
Showing forth her hidden beauties—
Then the matter was grim earnest:
I engaged their chief in combat,
Seeing help no other wise." [4]

[1] *Ḥamâsa*, 41–43. This poem has been rendered in verse by Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 16, and by the late Dr. A. B. Davidson, *Biblical and Literary Essays*, p. 263.

[2] Mahaffy, *Social Life in Greece*, p. 21.

[3] See pp. 59–60 *supra*.

[4] *Ḥamâsa*, 82–83. The poet is 'Amr b. Ma'díkarib, a famous heathen knight who accepted Islam and afterwards distinguished himself in the Persian wars.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The tribal constitution was a democracy guided by its chief men, who derived their authority from noble blood, noble character, wealth, wisdom, and experience. As a Bedouin poet has said in homely language—

> "A folk that hath no chiefs must soon decay,
> And chiefs it hath not when the vulgar sway.
> Only with poles the tent is reared at last,
> And poles it hath not save the pegs hold fast.
> But when the pegs and poles are once combined,
> Then stands accomplished that which was designed."[1]

The chiefs, however, durst not lay commands or penalties on their fellow-tribesmen. Every man ruled himself, and was free to rebuke presumption in others. "*If you are our lord*" (*i.e.*, if you act discreetly as a *sayyid* should), "*you will lord over us*, *but if you are a prey to pride*, *go and be proud!*" (*i.e.*, we will have nothing to do with you).[2] Loyalty in the mouth of a pagan Arab did not mean allegiance to his superiors, but faithful devotion to his equals; and it was closely connected with the idea of kinship. The family and the tribe, which included strangers living in the tribe under a covenant of protection—to defend these, individually and collectively, was a sacred duty. Honour required that a man should stand by his own people through thick and thin.

Loyalty.

> "I am of Ghaziyya: if she be in error, then I will err;
> And if Ghaziyya be guided right, I go right with her!"

sang Durayd b. Ṣimma, who had followed his kin, against his better judgment, in a foray which cost the life of his brother 'Abdulláh.[3] If kinsmen seek help it should be given promptly, without respect to the merits of the case; if they do wrong

[1] Al-Afwah al-Awdí in Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 4, ll. 8–10. The poles and pegs represent lords and commons.

[2] *Ḥamása*, 122.

[3] *Ibid.*, 378.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

it should be suffered as long as possible before resorting to violence.[1] The utilitarian view of friendship is often emphasised, as in these verses :—

> " Take for thy brother whom thou wilt in the days of peace,
> But know that when fighting comes thy kinsman alone is near.
> Thy true friend thy kinsman is, who answers thy call for aid
> With good will, when deeply drenched in bloodshed are sword and spear.
> Oh, never forsake thy kinsman e'en tho' he do thee wrong,
> For what he hath marred he mends thereafter and makes sincere." [2]

At the same time, notwithstanding their shrewd common sense, nothing is more characteristic of the Arabs—heathen and Muḥammadan alike—than the chivalrous devotion and disinterested self-sacrifice of which they are capable on behalf of their friends. In particular, the ancient poetry affords proof that they regarded with horror any breach of the solemn covenant plighted between patron and client or host and guest. This topic might be illustrated by many striking examples, but one will suffice :—

The story of Samaw'al b. 'Ádiyá.

The Arabs say: "*Awfá mina 'l-Samaw'ali*"—"More loyal than al-Samaw'al"; or *Wafá*[un] *ka-wafá'i 'l-Samaw'ali*"—"A loyalty like that of al-Samaw'al." These proverbs refer to Samaw'al b. 'Ádiyá, an Arab of Jewish descent and Jew by religion, who lived in his castle, called al-Ablaq (The Piebald), at Taymá, some distance north of Medína. There he dug a well of sweet water, and would entertain the Arabs who used to alight beside it; and they supplied themselves with provisions from his castle and set up a market. It is related that the poet Imru'u 'l-Qays, while fleeing, hotly pursued by his enemies, towards Syria, took refuge with Samaw'al, and before proceeding on his way left in charge of his host five coats of mail which had been handed down as heirlooms by the princes of his family. Then he departed, and in due course arrived at Constantinople, where he besought the Byzantine emperor to help him to

[1] *Cf.* the verses by al-Find, p. 58 *supra*.
[2] *Ḥamása*, 327.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

recover his lost kingdom. His appeal was not unsuccessful, but he died on the way home. Meanwhile his old enemy, the King of Ḥíra, sent an army under Ḥárith b. Ẓálim against Samaw'al, demanding that he should surrender the coats of mail. Samaw'al refused to betray the trust committed to him, and defended himself in his castle. The besiegers, however, captured his son, who had gone out to hunt. Ḥárith asked Samaw'al: "Dost thou know this lad?" "Yes, he is my son." "Then wilt thou deliver what is in thy possession, or shall I slay him?" Samaw'al answered: "Do with him as thou wilt. I will never break my pledge nor give up the property of my guest-friend." So Ḥárith smote the lad with his sword and clove him through the middle. Then he raised the siege. And Samaw'al said thereupon:—

> "*I was true with the mail-coats of the Kindite,*[1]
> *I am true though many a one is blamed for treason.*
> *Once did 'Ádiyá, my father, exhort me:*
> *'O Samaw'al, ne'er destroy what I have builded.'*
> *For me built 'Ádiyá a strong-walled castle*
> *With a well where I draw water at pleasure;*
> *So high, the eagle slipping back is baffled.*
> *When wrong befalls me I endure not tamely.*"[2]

The Bedouin ideal of generosity and hospitality is personified in Ḥátim of Ṭayyi', of whom many anecdotes are told. We may learn from the following one how extravagant are an Arab's notions on this subject:—

Ḥátim of Ṭayyi'.

When Ḥátim's mother was pregnant she dreamed that she was asked, "Which dost thou prefer?—a generous son called Ḥátim, or ten like those of other folk, lions in the hour of battle, brave lads and strong of limb?" and that she answered, "Ḥátim." Now, when Ḥátim grew up he was wont to take out his food, and if he found any one to share it he would eat, otherwise he threw it away. His father, seeing that

---

[1] Imru'u 'l-Qays was one of the princes of Kinda, a powerful tribe in Central Arabia.

[2] *Aghání*, xix, 99. The last two lines are wanting in the poem as there cited, but appear in the Selection from the *Aghání* published at Beyrout in 1888, vol. ii, p. 18.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

he wasted his food, gave him a slave-girl and a mare with her foal and sent him to herd the camels. On reaching the pasture, Ḥátim began to search for his fellows, but none was in sight; then he came to the road, but found no one there. While he was thus engaged he descried a party of riders on the road and went to meet them. "O youth," said they, "hast thou aught to entertain us withal?" He answered: "Do ye ask me of entertainment when ye see the camels?" Now, these riders were 'Abíd b. al-Abraṣ and Bishr b. Abí Kházim and Nábigha al-Dhubyání, and they were on their way to King Nu'mán.[1] Ḥátim slaughtered three camels for them, whereupon 'Abíd said: "We desired no entertainment save milk, but if thou must needs charge thyself with something more, a single young she-camel would have sufficed us." Ḥátim replied: "That I know, but seeing different faces and diverse fashions I thought ye were not of the same country, and I wished that each of you should mention what ye saw, on returning home." So they spoke verses in praise of him and celebrated his generosity, and Ḥátim said: "I wished to bestow a kindness upon you, but your bounty is greater than mine. I swear to God that I will hamstring every camel in the herd unless ye come forward and divide them among yourselves." The poets did as he desired, and each man received ninety-nine camels; then they proceeded on their journey to Nu'mán. When Ḥátim's father heard of this he came to him and asked, "Where are the camels?" "O my father," replied Ḥátim, "by means of them I have conferred on thee everlasting fame and honour that will cleave to thee like the ring of the ringdove, and men will always bear in mind some verse of poetry in which we are praised. This is thy recompense for the camels." On hearing these words his father said, "Didst thou with my camels thus?" "Yes." "By God, I will never dwell with thee again." So he went forth with his family, and Ḥátim was left alone with his slave-girl and his mare and the mare's foal.[2]

We are told that Ḥátim's daughter was led as a captive before the Prophet and thus addressed him: "'O Muḥammad, my sire is dead, and he who would have come to plead for me is gone. Release me, if it seem good to thee, and do not let the Arabs rejoice at my misfortune; for I am the daughter of the chieftain of my people. My father was wont to free the captive, and protect those near and dear to him, and entertain

[1] See p. 45 sqq. [2] *Aghání*, xvi, 98, ll. 5–22.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the guest, and satisfy the hungry, and console the afflicted, and give food and greeting to all; and never did he turn away any who sought a boon. I am Ḥátim's daughter.' The Prophet (on whom be the blessing and peace of God) answered her: 'O maiden, the true believer is such as thou hast described. Had thy father been an Islamite, verily we should have said, "God have mercy upon him!" Let her go,' he continued, 'for her sire loved noble manners, and God loves them likewise.'"[1]

Ḥátim's daughter before the Prophet.

Ḥátim was a poet of some repute.[2] The following lines are addressed to his wife, Máwiyya:—

"O daughter of 'Abdulláh and Málik and him who wore
The two robes of Yemen stuff—the hero that rode the roan,
When thou hast prepared the meal, entreat to partake thereof
A guest—I am not the man to eat, like a churl, alone—:
Some traveller thro' the night, or house-neighbour; for in sooth
I fear the reproachful talk of men after I am gone.
The guest's slave am I, 'tis true, as long as he bides with me,
Although in my nature else no trait of the slave is shown."[3]

Here it will be convenient to make a short digression in order that the reader may obtain, if not a complete view, at least some glimpses of the position and influence of women in Pre-islamic society. On the whole, their position was high and their influence great. They were free to choose their husbands, and could return, if ill-treated or displeased, to their own people; in some cases

Position of women.

[1] *Aghání*, xvi, 97, l. 5 sqq.

[2] His *Díwán* has been edited with translation and notes by F. Schulthess (Leipzig, 1897).

[3] *Ḥamása*, 729. The hero mentioned in the first verse is 'Ámir b. Uḥaymir of Bahdala. On a certain occasion, when envoys from the Arabian tribes were assembled at Ḥíra, King Mundhir b. Má' al-samá produced two pieces of cloth of Yemen and said, "Let him whose tribe is noblest rise up and take them." Thereupon 'Ámir stood forth, and wrapping one piece round his waist and the other over his shoulders, carried off the prize unchallenged.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

they even offered themselves in marriage and had the right of divorce. They were regarded not as slaves and chattels, but as equals and companions. They inspired the poet to sing and the warrior to fight. The chivalry of the Middle Ages is, perhaps, ultimately traceable to heathen Arabia. "Knight-errantry, the riding forth on horseback in search of adventures, the rescue of captive maidens, the succour rendered everywhere to women in adversity—all these were essentially Arabian ideas, as was the very name of *chivalry*, the connection of honourable conduct with the horse-rider, the man of noble blood, the cavalier." [1] But the nobility of the women is not only reflected in the heroism and devotion of the men; it stands recorded in song, in legend, and in history. Fáṭima, the daughter of Khurshub, was one of three noble matrons who bore the title *al-Munjibát*, 'the Mothers of Heroes.' She had seven sons, three of whom, viz., Rabí' and 'Umára and Anas, were called 'the Perfect' (*al-Kamala*). One day Ḥamal b. Badr the Fazárite raided the Banú 'Abs, the tribe to which Fáṭima belonged, and made her his prisoner. As he led away the camel on which she was mounted at the time, she cried: "Man, thy wits are wandering. By God, if thou take me captive, and if we leave behind us this hill which is now in front of us, surely there will never be peace between thee and the sons of Ziyád" (Ziyád was the name of her husband), "because people will say what they please, and the mere suspicion of evil is enough." "I will carry thee off," said he, "that thou mayest herd my camels." When Fáṭima knew that she was certainly his prisoner she threw herself headlong from her camel and died; so did she fear to bring dishonour on her sons.[2] Among the names which have become proverbial for loyalty we find

Arabian heroines.

Fáṭima, daughter of Khurshub.

[1] Lady Anne and Mr. Wilfrid Blunt, *The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia*, Introduction, p. 14.

[2] *Aghání* xvi, 22, ll. 10–16.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

those of two women, Fukayha and Umm Jamíl. As to Fukayha, it is related that her clansmen, having been raided by the brigand Sulayk b. Sulaka, resolved to attack him; but since he was a famous runner, on the advice of one of their shaykhs they waited until he had gone down to the water and quenched his thirst, for they knew that he would then be unable to run. Sulayk, however, seeing himself caught, made for the nearest tents and sought refuge with Fukayha. She threw her smock over him, and stood with drawn sword between him and his pursuers; and as they still pressed on, she tore the veil from her hair and shouted for help. Then her brothers came and defended Sulayk, so that his life was saved.[1] Had space allowed, it would have been a pleasant task to make some further extracts from the long Legend of Noble Women. I have illustrated their keen sense of honour and loyalty, but I might equally well have chosen examples of gracious dignity and quick intelligence and passionate affection. Many among them had the gift of poetry, which they bestowed especially on the dead; it is a final proof of the high character and position of women in Pre-islamic Arabia that the hero's mother and sisters were deemed most worthy to mourn and praise him. The praise of living women by their lovers necessarily takes a different tone; the physical charms of the heroine are fully described, but we seldom find any appreciation of moral beauty. One notable exception to this rule occurs at the beginning of an ode by Shanfará. The passage defies translation. It is, to quote Sir Charles Lyall, with whose faithful and sympathetic rendering of the ancient poetry every student of Arabic literature should be acquainted, "the most lovely picture of womanhood which heathen Arabia has left us, drawn by the same hand that has given us, in the unrivalled *Lâmîyah*, its highest ideal of heroic hardness and virile strength."[2]

Fukayha.

[1] *Aghání*, xviii, 137, ll. 5–10. Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 834.
[2] *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 81.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

UMAYMA.

"She charmed me, veiling bashfully her face,
Keeping with quiet looks an even pace;
Some lost thing seem to seek her downcast eyes:
Aside she bends not—softly she replies.
Ere dawn she carries forth her meal—a gift
To hungry wives in days of dearth and thrift.
No breath of blame up to her tent is borne,
While many a neighbour's is the house of scorn.
Her husband fears no gossip fraught with shame,
For pure and holy is Umayma's name.
Joy of his heart, to her he need not say
When evening brings him home—'Where passed the day?
Slender and full in turn, of perfect height,
A very fay were she, if beauty might
Transform a child of earth into a fairy sprite!"[1]

Only in the freedom of the desert could the character thus exquisitely delineated bloom and ripen. These verses, taken by themselves, are a sufficient answer to any one who would maintain that Islam has increased the social influence of Arabian women, although in some respects it may have raised them to a higher level of civilisation.[2]

There is, of course, another side to all this. In a land where might was generally right, and where

"the simple plan
That he should take who has the power
And he should keep who can,"

was all but universally adopted, it would have been strange if the weaker sex had not often gone to the wall. The custom which prevailed in the *Jáhiliyya* of burying female infants alive, revolting as it appears to us, was due partly to the frequent famines with which Arabia is afflicted through lack of rain, and partly to a perverted sense of honour. Fathers

[1] *Mufaḍḍaliyyát*, ed. Thorbecke, p. 23.
[2] See Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part II, p. 295 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

feared lest they should have useless mouths to feed, or lest they should incur disgrace in consequence of their daughters being made prisoners of war. Hence the birth of a daughter was reckoned calamitous, as we read in the Koran: "*They attribute daughters unto God—far be it from Him!—and for themselves they desire them not. When a female child is announced to one of them, his face darkens wrathfully: he hides himself from his people because of the bad news, thinking—'Shall I keep the child to my disgrace or cover it away in the dust?'*"[1] It was said proverbially, "The despatch of daughters is a kindness" and "The burial of daughters is a noble deed."[2] Islam put an end to this barbarity, which is expressly forbidden by the Koran: "*Kill not your children in fear of impoverishment: we will provide for them and for you: verily their killing was a great sin.*"[3] Perhaps the most touching lines in Arabian poetry are those in which a father struggling with poverty wishes that his daughter may die before him and thus be saved from the hard mercies of her relatives:—

Infanticide.

THE POOR MAN'S DAUGHTER.

"But for Umayma's sake I ne'er had grieved to want nor braved
Night's blackest horror to bring home the morsel that she craved.
Now my desire is length of days because I know too well
The orphan girl's hard lot, with kin unkind enforced to dwell.
I dread that some day poverty will overtake my child,
And shame befall her when exposed to every passion wild.[4]

---

[1] Koran, xvi, 59–61.
[2] Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 229.
[3] Koran, xvii, 33. *Cf.* lxxxi, 8–9 (a description of the Last Judgment): "*When the girl buried alive shall be asked for what crime she was killed.*"
[4] Literally: "And tear the veil from (her, as though she were) flesh on a butcher's board," *i.e.*, defenceless, abandoned to the first-comer.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

She wishes me to live, but I must wish her dead, woe's me :
Death is the noblest wooer a helpless maid can see.
I fear an uncle may be harsh, a brother be unkind,
When I would never speak a word that rankled in her mind."[1]

And another says :—

"Were not my little daughters
Like soft chicks huddling by me,
Through earth and all its waters
To win bread would I roam free.

Our children among us going,
Our very hearts they be ;
The wind upon them blowing
Would banish sleep from me."[2]

"Odi et amo": these words of the poet might serve as an epitome of Bedouin ethics. For, if the heathen Arab was, as we have seen, a good friend to his friends, he had in the same degree an intense and deadly feeling of hatred towards his enemies. He who did not strike back when struck was regarded as a coward. No honourable man could forgive an injury or fail to avenge it. An Arab, smarting under the loss of some camels driven off by raiders, said of his kin who refused to help him :—

Treatment of enemies.

"For all their numbers, they are good for naught,
My people, against harm however light :
They pardon wrong by evildoers wrought,
Malice with lovingkindness they requite."[3]

The last verse, which would have been high praise in the

[1] *Ḥamása*, 140. Although these verses are not Pre-islamic, and belong in fact to a comparatively late period of Islam, they are sufficiently pagan in feeling to be cited in this connection. The author, Isḥáq b. Khalaf, lived under the Caliph Ma'mún (813–833 A.D.). He survived his adopted daughter—for Umayma was his sister's child—and wrote an elegy on her, which is preserved in the *Kámil* of al-Mubarrad, p. 715, l. 7 sqq., and has been translated, together with the verses now in question, by Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 26.

[2] *Ḥamása*, 142. Lyall, *op. cit.*, p. 28.

[3] *Ḥamása*, 7.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

mouth of a Christian or Muḥammadan moralist, conveyed to those who heard it a shameful reproach. The approved method of dealing with an enemy is set forth plainly enough in the following lines :—

> "Humble him who humbles thee, close tho' be your kindredship:
> If thou canst not humble him, wait till he is in thy grip.
> Friend him while thou must; strike hard when thou hast him on the hip." [1]

Above all, blood called for blood. This obligation lay heavy on the conscience of the pagan Arabs. Vengeance, with them, was "almost a physical necessity, which if it be not obeyed will deprive its subject of sleep, of appetite, of health." It was a tormenting thirst which nothing would quench except blood, a disease of honour which might be described as madness, although it rarely prevented the sufferer from going to work with coolness and circumspection. Vengeance was taken upon the murderer, if possible, or else upon one of his fellow-tribesmen. Usually this ended the matter, but in some cases it was the beginning of a regular blood-feud in which the entire kin of both parties were involved; as, *e.g.*, the murder of Kulayb led to the Forty Years' War between Bakr and Taghlib.[2] The slain man's next of kin might accept a blood-wit (*diya*), commonly paid in camels—the coin of the country—as atonement for him. If they did so, however, it was apt to be cast in their teeth that they preferred milk (*i.e.*, she-camels) to blood.[3] The true Arab feeling is expressed in verses like these :—

Blood-revenge.

> "With the sword will I wash my shame away,
> Let God's doom bring on me what it may!" [4]

---

[1] *Ḥamása*, 321.
[2] See p. 55 sqq.
[3] *Cf.* Rückert's *Hamâsa*, vol. i, p. 61 seq.
[4] *Ḥamása*, 30.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

It was believed that until vengeance had been taken for the dead man, his spirit appeared above his tomb in the shape of an owl (*háma* or *ṣadá*), crying "*Isqúní*" ("Give me to drink"). But pagan ideas of vengeance were bound up with the Past far more than with the Future. The shadowy after-life counted for little or nothing beside the deeply-rooted memories of fatherly affection, filial piety, and brotherhood in arms.

Though liable to abuse, the rough-and-ready justice of the vendetta had a salutary effect in restraining those who would otherwise have indulged their lawless instincts without fear of punishment. From our point of view, however, its interest is not so much that of a primitive institution as of a pervading element in old Arabian life and literature. Full, or even adequate, illustration of this topic would carry me far beyond the limits of my plan. I have therefore selected from the copious material preserved in the *Book of Songs* a characteristic story which tells how Qays b. al-Khaṭím took vengeance on the murderers of his father and his grandfather.[1]

The story of the vengeance of Qays b. al-Khaṭím.

It is related on the authority of Abú 'Ubayda that 'Adí b. 'Amr, the grandfather of Qays, was slain by a man named Málik belonging to the Banú 'Amr b. 'Ámir b. Rabí'a b. 'Ámir b. Ṣa'ṣa'a; and his father, Khaṭím b. 'Adí, by one of the Banú 'Abd al-Qays who were settled in Hajar. Khaṭím died before avenging his father, 'Adí, when Qays was but a young lad. The mother of Qays, fearing that he would sally forth to seek vengeance for the blood of his father and his grandfather and perish, went to a mound of dust beside the door of their dwelling and laid stones on it, and began to say to Qays, "This is the grave of thy father and thy grandfather;" and Qays never doubted but that it was so. He grew up strong in the arms, and one day he had a tussle with a youth of the Banú Ẓafar, who said to him: "By God, thou would'st do better to turn the strength of thine arms against the slayers of thy father and grandfather instead of putting it forth upon me." "And who are their slayers?" "Ask thy mother, she will tell thee." So Qays

[1] *Aghání*, ii, 160, l. 11–162, l. 1 = p. 13 sqq. of the Beyrout Selection.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

took his sword and set its hilt on the ground and its edge between his two breasts, and said to his mother : " Who killed my father and my grandfather ? " " They died as people die, and these are their graves in the camping-ground." " By God, verily thou wilt tell me who slew them or I will bear with my whole weight upon this sword until it cleaves through my back." Then she told him, and Qays swore that he would never rest until he had slain their slayers. " O my son," said she, " Málik, who killed thy grandfather, is of the same folk as Khidásh b. Zuhayr, and thy father once bestowed a kindness on Khidásh, for which he is grateful. Go, then, to him and take counsel with him touching thine affair and ask him to help thee." So Qays set out immediately, and when he came to the garden where his water-camel was watering his date-palms, he smote the cord (of the bucket) with his sword and cut it, so that the bucket dropped into the well. Then he took hold of the camel's head, and loaded the beast with two sacks of dates, and said : " Who will care for this old woman " (meaning his mother) " in my absence ? If I die, let him pay her expenses out of this garden, and on her death it shall be his own ; but if I live, my property will return to me, and he shall have as many of its dates as he wishes to eat." One of his folk cried, " I am for it," so Qays gave him the garden and set forth to inquire concerning Khidásh. He was told to look for him at Marr al-Ẓahrán, but not finding him in his tent, he alighted beneath a tree, in the shade of which the guests of Khidásh used to shelter, and called to the wife of Khidásh, " Is there any food ? " Now, when she came up to him, she admired his comeliness—for he was exceeding fair of countenance—and said : " By God, we have no fit entertainment for thee, but only dates." He replied, " I care not, bring out what thou hast." So she sent to him dates in a large measure (*qubá'*), and Qays took a single date and ate half of it and put back the other half in the *qubá'*, and gave orders that the *qubá'* should be brought in to the wife of Khidásh ; then he departed on some business. When Khidásh returned and his wife told him the news of Qays, he said, " This is a man who would render his person sacred."[1] While he sat there with his wife eating fresh ripe dates, Qays returned on camel-back ; and Khidásh, when he saw the foot of the approaching rider, said to his wife, " Is this thy guest ? " " Yes." " 'Tis as though his foot were the foot of

---

[1] The Bedouins consider that any one who has eaten of their food or has touched the rope of their tent is entitled to claim their protection. Such a person is called *dakhíl.* See Burckhardt, *Notes on the Bedouins and Wahábys* (London, 1831), vol. i, p. 160 sqq. and 329 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

my good friend, Khaṭím the Yathribite." Qays drew nigh, and struck the tent-rope with the point of his spear, and begged leave to come in. Having obtained permission, he entered to Khidásh and told his lineage and informed him of what had passed, and asked him to help and advise him in his affair. Khidásh bade him welcome, and recalled the kindness which he had of his father, and said, "As to this affair, truly I have been expecting it of thee for some time. The slayer of thy grandfather is a cousin of mine, and I will aid thee against him. When we are assembled in our meeting-place, I will sit beside him and talk with him, and when I strike his thigh, do thou spring on him and slay him." Qays himself relates: "Accompanied by Khidásh, I approached him until I stood over his head when Khidásh sat with him, and as soon as he struck the man's thigh I smote his head with a sword named *Dhu 'l-Khurṣayn*" (the Two-ringed). "His folk rushed on me to slay me, but Khidásh came between us, crying, 'Let him alone, for, by God, he has slain none but the slayer of his grandfather.'" Then Khidásh called for one of his camels and mounted it, and started with Qays to find the 'Abdite who killed his father. And when they were near Hajar Khidásh advised him to go and inquire after this man, and to say to him when he discovered him: "I encountered a brigand of thy people who robbed me of some articles, and on asking who was the chieftain of his people I was directed to thee. Go with me, then, that thou mayest take from him my property. If," Khidásh continued, "he follow thee unattended, thou wilt gain thy desire of him; but should he bid the others go with thee, laugh, and if he ask why thou laughest, say, 'With us, the noble does not as thou dost, but when he is called to a brigand of his people, he goes forth alone with his whip, not with his sword; and the brigand when he sees him gives him everything that he took, in awe of him.' If he shall dismiss his friends, thy course is clear; but if he shall refuse to go without them, bring him to me nevertheless, for I hope that thou wilt slay both him and them." So Khidásh stationed himself under the shade of a tree, while Qays went to the 'Abdite and addressed him as Khidásh had prompted; and the man's sense of honour was touched to the quick, so that he sent away his friends and went with Qays. And when Qays came back to Khidásh, the latter said to him, "Choose, O Qays! Shall I help thee or shall I take thy place?" Qays answered, "I desire neither of these alternatives, but if he slay me, let him not slay thee!" Then he rushed upon him and wounded him in the flank and drove his lance through the other side, and he fell dead on the spot. When Qays had finished with him, Khidásh said, "If we flee just now, his folk

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

will pursue us; but let us go somewhere not far off, for they will never think that thou hast slain him and stayed in the neighbourhood. No; they will miss him and follow his track, and when they find him slain they will start to pursue us in every direction, and will only return when they have lost hope." So those two entered some hollows of the sand, and after staying there several days (for it happened exactly as Khidásh had foretold), they came forth when the pursuit was over, and did not exchange a word until they reached the abode of Khidásh. There Qays parted from him and returned to his own people.

The poems relating to blood-revenge show all that is best and much that is less admirable in the heathen Arab—on the one hand, his courage and resolution, his contempt of death and fear of dishonour, his single-minded devotion to the dead as to the living, his deep regard and tender affection for the men of his own flesh and blood; on the other hand, his implacable temper, his perfidious cruelty and reckless ferocity in hunting down the slayers, and his savage, well-nigh inhuman exultation over the slain. The famous Song or Ballad of Vengeance that I shall now attempt to render in English verse is usually attributed to Ta'abbaṭa Sharr^{an},[1] although some pronounce it to be a forgery by Khalaf al-Aḥmar, the reputed author of Shanfará's masterpiece, and beyond doubt a marvellously skilful imitator of the ancient bards. Be that as it may, the ballad is utterly pagan in tone and feeling. Its extraordinary merit was detected by Goethe, who, after reading it in a Latin translation, published a German rendering, with some fine criticism of the poetry, in his *West-oestlicher Divan*.[2] I have endeavoured to suggest as far as possible the metre and rhythm of the original,

Song of Vengeance by Ta'abbaṭa Sharran.

[1] See p. 81 *supra*.

[2] Stuttgart, 1819, p. 253 sqq. The other renderings in verse with which I am acquainted are those of Rückert (*Hamâsa*, vol. i, p. 299) and Sir Charles Lyall (*Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 48). I have adopted Sir Charles Lyall's arrangement of the poem, and have closely followed his masterly interpretation, from which I have also borrowed some turns of phrase that could not be altered except for the worse.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

since to these, in my opinion, its peculiar effect is largely due. The metre is that known as the 'Tall' (*Madíd*), viz. :—

⏑̱ ⏑ — — | ⏑̱ ⏑ — | — ⏑ — —

Thus the first verse runs in Arabic :—

Inna bi'l-shi' | bi 'lladhí | 'inda Sal'in
la-qatílan | damuhú | má yuṭallu.

Of course, Arabic prosody differs radically from English, but *mutatis mutandis* several couplets in the following version (*e.g.* the third, eighth, and ninth) will be found to correspond exactly with their model. As has been said, however, my object was merely to suggest the abrupt metre and the heavy, emphatic cadences, so that I have been able to give variety to the verse, and at the same time to retain that artistic freedom without which the translator of poetry cannot hope to satisfy either himself or any one else.

The poet tells how he was summoned to avenge his uncle, slain by the tribesmen of Hudhayl: he describes the dead man's heroic character, the foray in which he fell, his former triumphs over the same enemy, and finally the terrible vengeance taken for him.[1]

"In the glen there a murdered man is lying—
Not in vain for vengeance his blood is crying.
He hath left me the load to bear and departed;
I take up the load and bear it true-hearted.
I, his sister's son, the bloodshed inherit,
I whose knot none looses, stubborn of spirit;[2]
Glowering darkly, shame's deadly out-wiper,
Like the serpent spitting venom, the viper.

[1] The Arabic text will be found in the *Ḥamása*, p. 382 sqq.

[2] This and the following verse are generally taken to be a description not of the poet himself, but of his nephew. The interpretation given above does no violence to the language, and greatly enhances the dramatic effect.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Hard the tidings that befell us, heart-breaking ;
Little seemed thereby the anguish most aching.
Fate hath robbed me—still is Fate fierce and froward—
Of a hero whose friend ne'er called him coward :
As the warm sun was he in wintry weather,
'Neath the Dog-star shade and coolness together :
Spare of flank—yet this in him showed not meanness ;
Open-handed, full of boldness and keenness :
Firm of purpose, cavalier unaffrighted—
Courage rode with him and with him alighted :
In his bounty, a bursting cloud of rain-water ;
Lion grim when he leaped to the slaughter.
Flowing hair, long robe his folk saw aforetime,
But a lean-haunched wolf was he in war-time.
Savours two he had, untasted by no men :
Honey to his friends and gall to his foemen.
Fear he rode nor recked what should betide him :
Save his deep-notched Yemen blade, none beside him.

Oh, the warriors girt with swords good for slashing,
Like the levin, when they drew them, outflashing !
Through the noonday heat they fared: then, benighted,
Farther fared, till at dawning they alighted.[1]
Breaths of sleep they sipped ; and then, while they nodded,
Thou didst scare them : lo, they scattered and scudded.
Vengeance wreaked we upon them, unforgiving :
Of the two clans scarce was left a soul living.[2]

Ay, if *they* bruised his glaive's edge 'twas in token
That by him many a time their own was broken.
Oft he made them kneel down by force and cunning—
Kneel on jags where the foot is torn with running.
Many a morn in shelter he took them napping ;
After killing was the rieving and rapine.

They have gotten of me a roasting—I tire not
Of desiring them till me they desire not.
First, of foemen's blood my spear deeply drinketh,
Then a second time, deep in, it sinketh.

---

[1] In the original this and the preceding verse are transposed.

[2] Although the poet's uncle was killed in this onslaught, the surprised party suffered severely. "The two clans" belonged to the great tribe of Hudhayl, which is mentioned in the penultimate verse.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Lawful now to me is wine, long forbidden :
Sore my struggle ere the ban was o'erridden.[1]
Pour me wine, O son of 'Amr ! I would taste it,
Since with grief for mine uncle I am wasted.
O'er the fallen of Hudhayl stands screaming
The hyena ; see the wolf's teeth gleaming !
Dawn will hear the flap of wings, will discover
Vultures treading corpses, too gorged to hover."

All the virtues which enter into the Arabian conception of Honour were regarded not as personal qualities inherent or acquired, but as hereditary possessions which a man derived from his ancestors, and held in trust that he might transmit them untarnished to his descendants. It is the desire to uphold and emulate the fame of his forbears, rather than the hope of winning immortality for himself, that causes the Arab "to say the say and do the deeds of the noble." Far from sharing the sentiment of the Scots peasant—"a man's a man for a' that" —he looks askance at merit and renown unconsecrated by tradition.

Honour conferred by noble ancestry.

"The glories that have grown up with the grass
Can match not those inherited of old."[2]

Ancestral renown (*ḥasab*) is sometimes likened to a strong castle built by sires for their sons, or to a lofty mountain which defies attack.[3] The poets are full of boastings (*mafákhir*) and revilings (*mathálib*) in which they loudly proclaim the nobility of their own ancestors, and try to blacken those of their enemy without any regard to decorum.

It was my intention to add here some general remarks on Arabian poetry as compared with that of the Hebrews, the

[1] It was customary for the avenger to take a solemn vow that he would drink no wine before accomplishing his vengeance.

[2] *Ḥamása*, 679.

[3] *Cf.* the lines translated below from the *Mu'allaqa* of Ḥárith.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Persians, and our own, but since example is better than precept I will now turn directly to those celebrated odes which are well known by the title of *Mu'allaqát*, or 'Suspended Poems,' to all who take the slightest interest in Arabic literature.[1]

Mu'allaqa (plural, *Mu'allaqát*) "is most likely derived from the word *'ilq*, meaning 'a precious thing or a thing held in high estimation,' either because one 'hangs on' tenaciously to it, or because it is 'hung up' in a place of honour, or in a conspicuous place, in a treasury or store-house."[2] In course of time the exact signification of *Mu'allaqa* was forgotten, and it became necessary to find a plausible explanation. Hence arose the legend, which frequent repetition has made familiar, that the 'Suspended Poems' were so called from having been hung up in the Ka'ba on account of their merit; that this distinction was awarded by the judges at the fair of 'Ukáẓ, near Mecca, where poets met in rivalry and recited their choicest productions; and that the successful compositions, before being affixed to the door of the Ka'ba, were transcribed in letters of gold upon pieces of fine Egyptian linen.[3] Were these state-

The Mu'allaqát, or 'Suspended Poems.'

[1] The best edition of the *Mu'allaqát* is Sir Charles Lyall's (*A Commentary on Ten Ancient Arabic Poems*, Calcutta, 1894), which contains in addition to the seven *Mu'allaqát* three odes by A'shá, Nábigha, and 'Abíd b. al-Abraṣ. Nöldeke has translated five Mu'allaqas (omitting those of Imru' u' l-Qays and Ṭarafa) with a German commentary, *Sitzungsberichte der Kais. Akad. der Wissenschaften in Wien, Phil.-Histor. Klasse*, vols. 140–144 (1899–1901); this is by far the best translation for students. No satisfactory version in English prose has hitherto appeared, but I may call attention to the fine and original, though somewhat free, rendering into English verse by Lady Anne Blunt and Wilfrid Scawen Blunt (*The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia*, London, 1903).

[2] *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, Introduction, p. xliv. Many other interpretations have been suggested—*e.g.*, 'The Poems written down from oral dictation' (Von Kremer), 'The richly bejewelled' (Ahlwardt), 'The Pendants,' as though they were pearls strung on a necklace (A. Müller).

[3] The belief that the *Mu'allaqát* were written in letters of gold seems to have arisen from a misunderstanding of the name *Mudhhabát* or *Mudhahhabát* (*i.e.*, the Gilded Poems) which is sometimes given to them in token of their excellence, just as the Greeks gave the title χρύσεα ἔπη

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

ments true, we should expect them to be confirmed by some allusion in the early literature. But as a matter of fact nothing of the kind is mentioned in the Koran or in religious tradition, in the ancient histories of Mecca, or in such works as the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání*, which draw their information from old and trustworthy sources.[1] Almost the first authority who refers to the legend is the grammarian Aḥmad al-Naḥḥás († 949 A.D.), and by him it is stigmatised as entirely groundless. Moreover, although it was accepted by scholars like Reiske, Sir W. Jones, and even De Sacy, it is incredible in itself. Hengstenberg, in the Prolegomena to his edition of the *Mu'allaqa* of Imru'u 'l-Qays (Bonn, 1823) asked some pertinent questions: Who were the judges, and how were they appointed? Why were only these seven poems thus distinguished? His further objection, that the art of writing was at that time a rare accomplishment, does not carry so much weight as he attached to it, but the story is sufficiently refuted by what we know of the character and customs of the Arabs in the sixth century and afterwards. Is it conceivable that the proud sons of the desert could have submitted a matter so nearly touching their tribal honour, of which they were jealous above all things, to external arbitration, or meekly acquiesced in the partial verdict of a court sitting in the neighbourhood of Mecca, which would certainly have shown scant consideration for competitors belonging to distant clans?[2]

However *Mu'allaqa* is to be explained, the name is not contemporary with the poems themselves. In all probability they were so entitled by the person who first chose them

to a poem falsely attributed to Pythagoras. That some of the *Mu'allaqát* were recited at 'Ukáẓ is probable enough and is definitely affirmed in the case of 'Amr b. Kulthúm (*Aghání*, ix, 182).

[1] The legend first appears in the *'Iqd al-Faríd* (ed. of Cairo, 1293 A.H., vol. iii, p. 116 seq.) of Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi, who died in 940 A.D.

[2] See the Introduction to Nöldeke's *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber* (Hannover, 1864), p. xvii sqq., and his article 'Mo'allaḳát' in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

out of innumerable others and embodied them in a separate collection. This is generally allowed to have been Ḥammád al-Ráwiya, a famous rhapsodist who flourished in the latter days of the Umayyad dynasty, and died about 772 A.D., in the reign of the 'Abbásid Caliph Mahdí. What principle guided Ḥammád in his choice we do not know. Nöldeke conjectures that he was influenced by the fact that all the *Mu'allaqát* are long poems—they are sometimes called 'The Seven Long Poems' (*al-Sab' al-Ṭiwál*) —for in Ḥammád's time little of the ancient Arabian poetry survived in a state even of relative completeness.

Origin of the collection.

It must be confessed that no rendering of the *Mu'allaqát* can furnish European readers with a just idea of the originals, a literal version least of all. They contain much that only a full commentary can make intelligible, much that to modern taste is absolutely incongruous with the poetic style. Their finest pictures of Bedouin life and manners often appear uncouth or grotesque, because without an intimate knowledge of the land and people it is impossible for us to see what the poet intended to convey, or to appreciate the truth and beauty of its expression; while the artificial framework, the narrow range of subject as well as treatment, and the frank realism of the whole strike us at once. In the following pages I shall give some account of the *Mu'allaqát* and their authors, and endeavour to bring out the characteristic qualities of each poem by selecting suitable passages for translation.[1]

Difficulty of translating the Mu'allaqát.

The oldest and most famous of the *Mu'allaqát* is that of Imru'u 'l-Qays, who was descended from the ancient kings of Yemen. His grandfather was King Ḥárith of Kinda, the antagonist of Mundhir III, King of Ḥíra, by whom he was

[1] It is well known that the order of the verses in the *Mu'allaqát*, as they have come down to us, is frequently confused, and that the number of various readings is very large. I have generally followed the text and arrangement adopted by Nöldeke in his German translation.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

defeated and slain.[1] On Ḥárith's death, the confederacy which he had built up split asunder, and his sons divided among themselves the different tribes of which it was composed. Ḥujr, the poet's father, ruled for some time over the Banú Asad in Central Arabia, but finally they revolted and put him to death. "The duty of avenging his murder fell upon Imru'u 'l-Qays, who is represented as the only capable prince of his family; and the few historical data which we have regarding him relate to his adventures while bent upon this vengeance."[2] They are told at considerable length in the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání*, but need not detain us here. Suffice it to say that his efforts to punish the rebels, who were aided by Mundhir, the hereditary foe of his house, met with little success. He then set out for Constantinople, where he was favourably received by the Emperor Justinian, who desired to see the power of Kinda re-established as a thorn in the side of his Persian rivals. The emperor appointed him Phylarch of Palestine, but on his way thither he died at Angora (about 540 A.D.). He is said to have perished, like Nessus, from putting on a poisoned robe sent to him as a gift by Justinian, with whose daughter he had an intrigue. Hence he is sometimes called 'The Man of the Ulcers' (*Dhu 'l-Quruḥ*).

Imru'u 'l-Qays.

Many fabulous traditions surround the romantic figure of Imru'u 'l-Qays.[3] According to one story, he was banished by his father, who despised him for being a poet and was enraged by the scandals to which his love adventures gave rise. Imru'u 'l-Qays left his home and wandered from tribe to tribe with a company of outcasts like himself, leading a wild life, which caused him to be known as 'The Vagabond Prince' (*al-Malik al-Ḍillíl*). When the news of his father's death

[1] See p. 42 *supra*.

[2] *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 105.

[3] See the account of his life (according to the *Kitábu' l-Aghání*) in *Le Diwan d'Amro'lkaïs*, edited with translation and notes by Baron MacGuckin de Slane (Paris, 1837), pp. 1–51; and in *Amrilkais, der Dichter und König* by Friedrich Rückert (Stuttgart and Tübingen, 1843).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

reached him he cried, "My father wasted my youth, and now that I am old he has laid upon me the burden of blood-revenge. Wine to-day, business to-morrow!" Seven nights he continued the carouse; then he swore not to eat flesh, nor drink wine, nor use ointment, nor touch woman, nor wash his head until his vengeance was accomplished. In the valley of Tabála, north of Najrán, there was an idol called Dhu 'l-Khalaṣa much reverenced by the heathen Arabs. Imru'u 'l-Qays visited this oracle and consulted it in the ordinary way, by drawing one of three arrows entitled 'the Commanding,' 'the Forbidding,' and 'the Waiting.' He drew the second, whereupon he broke the arrows and dashed them on the face of the idol, exclaiming with a gross imprecation, "If *thy* father had been slain, thou would'st not have hindered me!"

Imru'u 'l-Qays is almost universally reckoned the greatest of the Pre-islamic poets. Muḥammad described him as 'their leader to Hell-fire,' while the Caliphs 'Umar and 'Alí, *odium theologicum* notwithstanding, extolled his genius and originality.[1] Coming to the *Mu'allaqa* itself, European critics have vied with each other in praising its exquisite diction and splendid images, the sweet flow of the verse, the charm and variety of the painting, and, above all, the feeling by which it is inspired of the joy and glory of youth. The passage translated below is taken from the first half of the poem, in which love is the prevailing theme:—[2]

> "Once, on the hill, she mocked at me and swore,
> 'This hour I leave thee to return no more.'

---

[1] That he was not, however, the inventor of the Arabian *qaṣída* as described above (p. 76 sqq.) appears from the fact that he mentions in one of his verses a certain Ibn Ḥumám or Ibn Khidhám who introduced, or at least made fashionable, the prelude with which almost every ode begins: a lament over the deserted camping-ground (Ibn Qutayba, *K. al-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ará*, p. 52).

[2] The following lines are translated from Arnold's edition of the *Mu'allaqát* (Leipsic, 1850), p. 9 sqq., vv. 18–35.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Soft! if farewell is planted in thy mind,
Yet spare me, Fáṭima, disdain unkind.
Because my passion slays me, wilt thou part?
Because thy wish is law unto mine heart?
Nay, if thou so mislikest aught in me,
Shake loose my robe and let it fall down free.
But ah, the deadly pair, thy streaming eyes!
They pierce a heart that all in ruin lies.

How many a noble tent hath oped its treasure
To me, and I have ta'en my fill of pleasure,
Passing the warders who with eager speed
Had slain me, if they might but hush the deed,
What time in heaven the Pleiades unfold
A belt of orient gems distinct with gold.
I entered. By the curtain there stood she,
Clad lightly as for sleep, and looked on me.
'By God,' she cried, 'what recks thee of the cost?
I see thine ancient madness is not lost.'
I led her forth—she trailing as we go
Her broidered skirt, lest any footprint show—
Until beyond the tents the valley sank
With curving dunes and many a pilèd bank.
Then with both hands I drew her head to mine,
And lovingly the damsel did incline
Her slender waist and legs more plump than fine;—
A graceful figure, a complexion bright,
A bosom like a mirror in the light;
Her face a pearl where pale contends with rose;
For her, clear water from the untrodden fountain flows.
Now she bends half away: two cheeks appear,
And such an eye as marks the frighted deer
Beside her fawn; and lo, the antelope-neck
Not bare of ornament, else without a fleck;
While from her shoulders in profusion fair,
Like clusters on the palm, hangs down her jet-black hair."

In strange contrast with this tender and delicate idyll are the wild, hard verses almost immediately following, in which the poet roaming through the barren waste hears the howl of a starved wolf and hails him as a comrade:—

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

> "Each one of us what thing he finds devours:
> Lean is the wretch whose living is like ours." [1]

The noble qualities of his horse and its prowess in the chase are described, and the poem ends with a magnificent picture of a thunder-storm among the hills of Najd.

Ṭarafa.

Ṭarafa b. al-'Abd was a member of the great tribe of Bakr. The particular clan to which he belonged was settled in Baḥrayn on the Persian Gulf. He early developed a talent for satire, which he exercised upon friend and foe indifferently; and after he had squandered his patrimony in dissolute pleasures, his family chased him away as though he were 'a mangy camel.' At length a reconciliation was effected. He promised to mend his ways, returned to his people, and took part, it is said, in the War of Basús. In a little while his means were dissipated once more and he was reduced to tend his brother's herds. His *Mu'allaqa* composed at this time won for him the favour of a rich kinsman and restored him to temporary independence. On the conclusion of peace between Bakr and Taghlib the youthful poet turned his eyes in the direction of Ḥíra, where 'Amr b. Hind had lately succeeded to the throne (554 A.D.). He was well received by the king, who attached him, along with his uncle, the poet Mutalammis, to the service of the heir-apparent. But Ṭarafa's bitter tongue was destined to cost him dear. Fatigued and disgusted by the rigid ceremony of the court, he improvised a satire in which he said—

> "Would that we had instead of 'Amr
> A milch-ewe bleating round our tent!"

Shortly afterwards he happened to be seated at table opposite the king's sister. Struck with her beauty, he exclaimed—

[1] The native commentators are probably right in attributing this and the three preceding verses (48–51 in Arnold's edition) to the brigand-poet, Ta'abbaṭa Sharr^an.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Behold, she has come back to me,
My fair gazelle whose ear-rings shine;
Had not the king been sitting here,
I would have pressed her lips to mine!"

ʿAmr b. Hind was a man of violent and implacable temper. Ṭarafa's satire had already been reported to him, and this new impertinence added fuel to his wrath. Sending for Ṭarafa and Mutalammis, he granted them leave to visit their homes, and gave to each of them a sealed letter addressed to the governor of Baḥrayn. When they had passed outside the city the suspicions of Mutalammis were aroused. As neither he nor his companion could read, he handed his own letter to a boy of Ḥíra[1] and learned that it contained orders to bury him alive. Thereupon he flung the treacherous missive into the stream and implored Ṭarafa to do likewise. Ṭarafa refused to break the royal seal. He continued his journey to Baḥrayn, where he was thrown into prison and executed.

Thus perished miserably in the flower of his youth—according to some accounts he was not yet twenty—the passionate and eloquent Ṭarafa. In his *Muʿallaqa* he has drawn a spirited portrait of himself. The most striking feature of the poem, apart from a long and, to us who are not Bedouins, painfully tedious description of the camel, is its insistence on sensual enjoyment as the sole business of life:—

"Canst thou make me immortal, O thou that blamest me so
For haunting the battle and loving the pleasures that fly?
If thou hast not the power to ward me from Death, let me go
To meet him and scatter the wealth in my hand, ere I die.

Save only for three things in which noble youth take delight,
I care not how soon rises o'er me the coronach loud:
Wine that bubbles when water is poured on it, ruddy and bright,
Red wine that I quaff stol'n away from the cavilling crowd;

[1] We have already (p. 39) referred to the culture of the Christian Arabs of Ḥíra.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"And second, my charge at the cry of distress on a steed
Bow-legged like the wolf you have startled when thirsty he cowers;
And third, on a wet day—oh, wet days are pleasant indeed!—
'Neath a propped leathern tent with a girl to beguile the slow hours."[1]

Keeping, as far as possible, the chronological order, we have now to mention two *Mu'allaqas* which, though not directly related to each other,[2] are of the same period—the reign of 'Amr b. Hind, King of Ḥíra (554–568 A.D.). Moreover, their strong mutual resemblance and their difference from the other *Mu'allaqas*, especially from typical *qaṣídas* like those of 'Antara and Labíd, is a further reason for linking them together. Their distinguishing mark is the abnormal space devoted to the main subject, which leaves little room for the subsidiary motives.

'Amr b. Kulthúm.

'Amr b. Kulthúm belonged to the tribe of Taghlib. His mother was Laylá, a daughter of the famous poet and warrior Muhalhil. That she was a woman of heroic mould appears from the following anecdote, which records a deed of prompt vengeance on the part of 'Amr that gave rise to the proverb, "Bolder in onset than 'Amr b. Kulthúm"[3]:—

One day 'Amr. b. Hind, the King of Ḥíra, said to his boon-companions, "Do ye know any Arab whose mother would disdain to serve mine?" They answered, "Yes, the mother of 'Amr b.

---

[1] Vv. 54–59 (Lyall); 56–61 (Arnold).

[2] See Nöldeke, *Fünf Mu'allaqát*, i, p. 51 seq. According to the traditional version (*Aghání*, ix, 179), a band of Taghlibites went raiding, lost their way in the desert, and perished of thirst, having been refused water by a sept of the Banú Bakr. Thereupon Taghlib appealed to King 'Amr to enforce payment of the blood-money which they claimed, and chose 'Amr b. Kulthúm to plead their cause at Ḥíra. So 'Amr recited his *Mu'allaqa* before the king, and was answered by Ḥárith on behalf of Bakr.

[3] Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 233.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Kulthúm." "Why so?" asked the king. "Because," said they, "her father is Muhalhil b. Rabí'a and her uncle is Kulayb b. Wá'il, the most puissant of the Arabs, and her husband is Kulthúm b. Málik, the knightliest, and her son is 'Amr, the chieftain of his tribe." Then the king sent to 'Amr b. Kulthúm, inviting him to pay a visit to himself, and asking him to bring his mother, Laylá, to visit his own mother, Hind. So 'Amr came to Ḥíra with some men of Taghlib, and Laylá came attended by a number of their women; and while the king entertained 'Amr and his friends in a pavilion which he had caused to be erected between Ḥíra and the Euphrates, Laylá found quarters with Hind in a tent adjoining. Now, the king had ordered his mother, as soon as he should call for dessert, to dismiss the servants, and cause Laylá to wait upon her. At the pre-arranged signal she desired to be left alone with her guest, and said, "O Laylá, hand me that dish." Laylá answered, "Let those who want anything rise up and serve themselves." Hind repeated her demand, and would take no denial. "O shame!" cried Laylá. "Help! Taghlib, help!" When 'Amr heard his mother's cry the blood flew to his cheeks. He seized a sword hanging on the wall of the pavilion—the only weapon there—and with a single blow smote the king dead.[1]

How 'Amr avenged an insult to his mother.

'Amr's *Mu'allaqa* is the work of a man who united in himself the ideal qualities of manhood as these were understood by a race which has never failed to value, even too highly, the display of self-reliant action and decisive energy. And if in 'Amr's poem these virtues are displayed with an exaggerated boastfulness which offends our sense of decency and proper reserve, it would be a grave error to conclude that all this sound and fury signifies nothing. The Bedouin poet deems it his bounden duty to glorify to the utmost himself, his family, and his tribe; the Bedouin warrior is never tired of proclaiming his unshakable valour and recounting his brilliant feats of arms: he hurls menaces and vaunts in the same breath, but it does not follow that he is a *Miles Gloriosus*. 'Amr certainly was not: his *Mu'allaqa* leaves a vivid impression of conscious and exultant strength. The first eight verses seem

[1] *Aghání*, ix, 182.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

to have been added to the poem at a very early date, for out of them arose the legend that 'Amr drank himself to death with unmixed wine. It is likely that they were included in the original collection of the *Mu'allaqát*, and they are worth translating for their own sake:—

"Up, maiden! Fetch the morning-drink and spare not
The wine of Andarín,
Clear wine that takes a saffron hue when water
Is mingled warm therein.
The lover tasting it forgets his passion,
His heart is eased of pain;
The stingy miser, as he lifts the goblet,
Regardeth not his gain.

Pass round from left to right! Why let'st thou, maiden,
Me and my comrades thirst?
Yet am I, whom thou wilt not serve this morning,
Of us three not the worst!
Many a cup in Baalbec and Damascus
And Qáṣirín I drained,
Howbeit we, ordained to death, shall one day
Meet death, to us ordained." [1]

In the next passage he describes his grief at the departure of his beloved, whom he sees in imagination arriving at her journey's end in distant Yamáma:—

"And oh, my love and yearning when at nightfall
I saw her camels haste,
Until sharp peaks uptowered like serried sword-blades,
And me Yamáma faced!
Such grief no mother-camel feels, bemoaning
Her young one lost, nor she,
The grey-haired woman whose hard fate hath left her
Of nine sons graves thrice three." [2]

Now the poet turns abruptly to his main theme. He

[1] Vv. 1–8 (Arnold); in Lyall's edition the penultimate verse is omitted.
[2] Vv. 15–18 (Lyall); 19–22 (Arnold).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

addresses the King of Ḥíra, ʿAmr b. Hind, in terms of defiance, and warns the foes of Taghlib that they will meet more than their match :—

"Father of Hind,[1] take heed and ere thou movest
Rashly against us, learn
That still our banners go down white to battle
And home blood-red return.
And many a chief bediademed, the champion
Of the outlaws of the land,
Have we o'erthrown and stripped him, while around him
Fast-reined the horses stand.
Our neighbours lopped like thorn-trees, snarls in terror
Of us the demon-hound ;[2]
Never we try our hand-mill on the foemen
But surely they are ground.
We are the heirs of glory, all Maʿadd knows,[3]
Our lances it defend,
And when the tent-pole tumbles in the foray,
Trust us to save our friend ![4]

O ʿAmr, what mean'st thou ? Are we, we of Taghlib,
Thy princeling's retinue ?
O ʿAmr, what mean'st thou, rating us and hearkening
To tale-bearers untrue ?
O ʿAmr, ere thee full many a time our spear-shaft
Has baffled foes to bow ;[5]
Nipped in the vice it kicks like a wild camel
That will no touch allow—
Like a wild camel, so it creaks in bending
And splits the bender's brow !"[6]

The *Muʿallaqa* ends with a eulogy, superb in its extravagance, of the poet's tribe :—

[1] The Arabs use the term *kunya* to denote this familiar style of address in which a person is called, not by his own name, but 'father of So-and-so' (either a son or, as in the present instance, a daughter).
[2] *I.e.*, even the *jinn* (genies) stand in awe of us.
[3] Here Maʿadd signifies the Arabs in general.
[4] Vv. 20–30 (Lyall), omitting vv. 22, 27, 28.
[5] This is a figurative way of saying that Taghlib has never been subdued
[6] Vv. 46–51 (Lyall), omitting v. 48.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Well wot, when our tents rise along their valleys,
The men of every clan
That we give death to those who durst attempt us,
To friends what food we can;
That staunchly we maintain a cause we cherish,
Camp where we choose to ride,
Nor will we aught of peace, when we are angered,
Till we are satisfied.
We keep our vassals safe and sound, but rebels
We soon bring to their knees;
And if we reach a well, we drink pure water,
Others the muddy lees.
Ours is the earth and all thereon: when *we* strike,
There needs no second blow;
Kings lay before the new-weaned boy of Taghlib
Their heads in homage low.
We are called oppressors, being none, but shortly
A true name shall it be![1]
We have so filled the earth 'tis narrow for us,
And with our ships the sea![2]

Ḥárith b. Ḥilliza.

Less interesting is the *Mu'allaqa* of Ḥárith b. Ḥilliza of Bakr. Its inclusion among the *Mu'allaqát* is probably due, as Nöldeke suggested, to the fact that Ḥammád, himself a client of Bakr, wished to flatter his patrons by selecting a counterpart to the *Mu'allaqa* of 'Amr b. Kulthúm, which immortalised their great rivals, the Banú Taghlib. Ḥárith's poem, however, has some historical importance, as it throws light on feuds in Northern Arabia connected with the antagonism of the Roman and Persian Empires. Its purpose is to complain of unjust accusations made against the Banú Bakr by a certain group of the Banú Taghlib known as the Aráqim:—

[1] *I.e.*, we will show our enemies that they cannot defy us with impunity. This verse, the 93rd in Lyall's edition, is omitted by Arnold.

[2] Vv. 94–104 (Arnold), omitting vv. 100 and 101. If the last words are anything more than a poetic fiction, 'the sea' must refer to the River Euphrates.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Our brothers the Aráqim let their tongues
Against us rail unmeasuredly.
The innocent with the guilty they confound:
Of guilt what boots it to be free?
They brand us patrons of the vilest deed,
Our clients in each miscreant see." [1]

A person whom Ḥárith does not name was 'blackening' the Banú Bakr before the King of Ḥíra. The poet tells him not to imagine that his calumnies will have any lasting effect: often had Bakr been slandered by their foes, but (he finely adds):—

"Maugre their hate we stand, by firm-based might
Exalted and by ancestry—
Might which ere now hath dazzled men's eyes: thence scorn
To yield and haughty spirit have we.
On us the Days beat as on mountain dark
That soars in cloudless majesty,
Compact against the hard calamitous shocks
And buffetings of Destiny." [2]

He appeals to the offenders not wantonly to break the peace which ended the War of Basús:—

"Leave folly and error! If ye blind yourselves,
Just therein lies the malady.
Recall the oaths of Dhu 'l-Majáz [3] for which
Hostages gave security,
Lest force or guile should break them: can caprice
Annul the parchments utterly? [4]

'Antara.

'Antara b. Shaddád, whose father belonged to the tribe of 'Abs, distinguished himself in the War of Dáḥis.[5] In modern times it is not as a poet that he is chiefly remembered, but as a hero of romance—the Bedouin Achilles. Goddess-born, however, he could not be called by

[1] Vv. 16–18.
[2] Vv. 23–26.
[3] A place in the neighbourhood of Mecca.
[4] Vv. 40–42 (Lyall); 65–67 (Arnold).
[5] See *'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter*, by H. Thorbecke (Leipzig, 1867).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

any stretch of imagination. His mother was a black slave, and he must often have been taunted with his African blood, which showed itself in a fiery courage that gained the respect of the pure-bred but generally less valorous Arabs. 'Antara loved his cousin 'Abla, and following the Arabian custom by which cousins have the first right to a girl's hand, he asked her in marriage. His suit was vain—the son of a slave mother being regarded as a slave unless acknowledged by his father—until on one occasion, while the 'Absites were hotly engaged with some raiders who had driven off their camels, 'Antara refused to join in the mèlée, saying, "A slave does not understand how to fight; his work is to milk the camels and bind their udders." "Charge!" cried his father, "thou art free." Though 'Antara uttered no idle boast when he sang—

> "On one side nobly born and of the best
> Of 'Abs am I: my sword makes good the rest!"

his contemptuous references to 'jabbering barbarians,' and to 'slaves with their ears cut off, clad in sheepskins,' are characteristic of the man who had risen to eminence in spite of the stain on his scutcheon. He died at a great age in a foray against the neighbouring tribe of Ṭayyi'. His *Mu'allaqa* is famous for its stirring battle-scenes, one of which is translated here:—[1]

> "Learn, Málik's daughter, how
> I rush into the fray,
> And how I draw back only
> At sharing of the prey.
>
> I never quit the saddle,
> My strong steed nimbly bounds;
> Warrior after warrior
> Have covered him with wounds.

[1] I have taken some liberties in this rendering, as the reader may see by referring to the verses (44 and 47–52 in Lyall's edition) on which it is based.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Full-armed against me stood
  One feared of fighting men:
He fled not oversoon
  Nor let himself be ta'en.

With straight hard-shafted spear
  I dealt him in his side
A sudden thrust which opened
  Two streaming gashes wide,

Two gashes whence outgurgled
  His life-blood: at the sound
Night-roaming ravenous wolves
  Flock eagerly around.

So with my doughty spear
  I trussed his coat of mail—
For truly, when the spear strikes,
  The noblest man is frail—

And left him low to banquet
  The wild beasts gathering there;
They have torn off his fingers,
  His wrist and fingers fair!"

While 'Antara's poem belongs to the final stages of the War of Dáḥis, the *Mu'allaqa* of his contemporary, Zuhayr b. Abí Sulmá, of the tribe of Muzayna, celebrates an act of private munificence which brought about the conclusion of peace. By the self-sacrificing intervention of two chiefs of Dhubyán, Harim b. Sinán and Ḥárith b. 'Awf, the whole sum of blood-money to which the 'Absites were entitled on account of the greater number of those who had fallen on their side, was paid over to them. Such an example of generous and disinterested patriotism—for Harim and Ḥárith had shed no blood themselves—was a fit subject for one of whom it was said that he never praised men but as they deserved :—

Zuhayr.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Noble pair of Ghayẓ ibn Murra,[1] well ye laboured to restore
Ties of kindred hewn asunder by the bloody strokes of war.
Witness now mine oath the ancient House in Mecca's hallowed bound,[2]
Which its builders of Quraysh and Jurhum solemnly went round,[3]
That in hard or easy issue never wanting were ye found!
Peace ye gave to 'Abs and Dhubyán when each fell by other's hand
And the evil fumes they pestled up between them filled the land."[4]

At the end of his panegyric the poet, turning to the lately reconciled tribesmen and their confederates, earnestly warns them against nursing thoughts of vengeance :—

"Will ye hide from God the guilt ye dare not unto Him disclose?
Verily, what thing soever ye would hide from God, He knows.
Either it is laid up meantime in a scroll and treasured there
For the day of retribution, or avenged all unaware.[5]
War ye have known and war have tasted: not by hearsay are ye wise.
Raise no more the hideous monster! If ye let her raven, she cries
Ravenously for blood and crushes, like a mill-stone, all below,
And from her twin-conceiving womb she brings forth woe on woe."[6]

After a somewhat obscure passage concerning the lawless deeds of a certain Ḥusayn b. Ḍamḍam, which had well-nigh

[1] Ghayẓ b. Murra was a descendant of Dhubyán and the ancestor of Harim and Ḥárith.
[2] The Ka'ba.
[3] This refers to the religious circumambulation (*ṭawáf*).
[4] Vv. 16–19 (Lyall).
[5] There is no reason to doubt the genuineness of this passage, which affords evidence of the diffusion of Jewish and Christian ideas in pagan Arabia. Ibn Qutayba observes that these verses indicate the poet's belief in the Resurrection (*K. al-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ará*, p. 58, l. 12).
[6] Vv. 27–31.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

caused a fresh outbreak of hostilities, Zuhayr proceeds, with a natural and touching allusion to his venerable age, to enforce the lessons of conduct and morality suggested by the situation :—

"I am weary of life's burden : well a man may weary be
After eighty years, and this much now is manifest to me :
Death is like a night-blind camel stumbling on :—the smitten die
But the others age and wax in weakness whom he passes by.
He that often deals with folk in unkind fashion, underneath
They will trample him and make him feel the sharpness of their teeth.
He that hath enough and over and is niggard with his pelf
Will be hated of his people and left free to hug himself.
He alone who with fair actions ever fortifies his fame
Wins it fully : blame will find him out unless he shrinks from blame.
He that for his cistern's guarding trusts not in his own stout arm
Sees it ruined : he must harm his foe or he must suffer harm.
He that fears the bridge of Death across it finally is driven,
Though he bridges with a ladder all the space 'twixt earth and heaven.
He that will not take the lance's butt-end while he has the chance
Must thereafter be contented with the spike-end of the lance.
He that keeps his word is blamed not ; he whose heart repaireth straight
To the sanctuary of duty never needs to hesitate.
He that hies abroad to strangers doth account his friends his foes ;
He that honours not himself lacks honour wheresoe'er he goes.
Be a man's true nature what it will, that nature is revealed
To his neighbours, let him fancy as he may that 'tis concealed." [1]

The ripe sententious wisdom and moral earnestness of Zuhayr's poetry are in keeping with what has been said

[1] The order of these verses in Lyall's edition is as follows : 56, 57, 54, 50, 55, 53, 49, 47, 48, 52, 58.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

above concerning his religious ideas and, from another point of view, with the tradition that he used to compose a *qaṣída* in four months, correct it for four months, submit it to the poets of his acquaintance during a like period, and not make it public until a year had expired.

Of his life there is little to tell. Probably he died before Islam, though it is related that when he was a centenarian he met the Prophet, who cried out on seeing him, "O God, preserve me from his demon!"[1] The poetical gifts which he inherited from his uncle Bashâma he bequeathed to his son Ka'b, author of the famous ode, *Bánat Su'ád.*

Labíd b. Rabí'a, of the Banú 'Ámir b. Ṣa'ṣa'a, was born in the latter half of the sixth century, and is said to have died soon after Mu'áwiya's accession to the Caliphate, which took place in A.D. 661. He is thus the youngest of the Seven Poets. On accepting Islam he abjured poetry, saying, "God has given me the Koran in exchange for it." Like Zuhayr, he had, even in his heathen days, a strong vein of religious feeling, as is shown by many passages in his Díwán.

Labíd.

Labíd was a true Bedouin, and his *Mu'allaqa*, with its charmingly fresh pictures of desert life and scenery, must be considered one of the finest examples of the Pre-islamic *qaṣída* that have come down to us. The poet owes something to his predecessors, but the greater part seems to be drawn from his own observation. He begins in the conventional manner by describing the almost unrecognisable vestiges of the camping-ground of the clan to which his mistress belonged :—

"Waste lies the land where once alighted and did wone
The people of Miná : Rijám and Ghawl are lone.

[1] Reference has been made above to the old Arabian belief that poets owed their inspiration to the *jinn* (genii), who are sometimes called *shayáṭín* (satans). See Goldziher, *Abhand. zur arab. Philologie*, Part I, pp. 1–14.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The camp in Rayyán's vale is marked by relics dim
Like weather-beaten script engraved on ancient stone.
Over this ruined scene, since it was desolate,
Whole years with secular and sacred months had flown.
In spring 'twas blest by showers 'neath starry influence shed,
And thunder-clouds bestowed a scant or copious boon.
Pale herbs had shot up, ostriches on either slope
Their chicks had gotten and gazelles their young had thrown;
And large-eyed wild-cows there beside the new-born calves
Reclined, while round them formed a troop the calves half-grown.
Torrents of rain had swept the dusty ruins bare,
Until, as writing freshly charactered, they shone,
Or like to curved tattoo-lines on a woman's arm,
With soot besprinkled so that every line is shown.
I stopped and asked, but what avails it that we ask
Dumb changeless things that speak a language all unknown?"[1]

After lamenting the departure of his beloved the poet bids himself think no more about her : he will ride swiftly away from the spot. Naturally, he must praise his camel, and he introduces by way of comparison two wonderful pictures of animal life. In the former the onager is described racing at full speed over the backs of the hills when thirst and hunger drive him with his mate far from the barren solitudes into which they usually retire. The second paints a wild-cow, whose young calf has been devoured by wolves, sleeping among the sand-dunes through a night of incessant rain. At daybreak "her feet glide over the firm wet soil." For a whole week she runs to and fro, anxiously seeking her calf, when suddenly she hears the sound of hunters approaching and makes off in alarm. Being unable to get within bowshot, the hunters loose their dogs, but she turns desperately upon them, wounding one with her needle-like horn and killing another.

Then, once more addressing his beloved, the poet speaks complacently of his share in the feasting and revelling, on which a noble Arab plumes himself hardly less than on his bravery :—

[1] Vv. 1–10 (Lyall), omitting v. 5.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Know'st thou not, O Nawár, that I am wont to tie
The cords of love, yet also snap them without fear?
That I abandon places when I like them not,
Unless Death chain the soul and straiten her career?
Nay, surely, but thou know'st not I have passed in talk
Many a cool night of pleasure and convivial cheer,
And often to a booth, above which hung for sign
A banner, have resorted when old wine was dear.
For no light price I purchased many a dusky skin
Or black clay jar, and broached it that the juice ran clear;
And many a song of shrill-voiced singing-girl I paid,
And her whose fingers made sweet music to mine ear."[1]

Continuing, he boasts of dangerous service as a spy in the enemy's country, when he watched all day on the top of a steep crag; of his fearless demeanour and dignified assertion of his rights in an assembly at Ḥíra, to which he came as a delegate, and of his liberality to the poor. The closing verses are devoted, in accordance with custom, to matters of immediate interest and to a panegyric on the virtues of the poet's kin.

Besides the authors of the *Mu'allaqát* three poets may be mentioned, of whom the two first-named are universally acknowledged to rank with the greatest that Arabia has produced—Nábigha, A'shá, and 'Alqama.

Nábigha of Dhubyán.

Nábigha[2]—his proper name is Ziyád b. Mu'áwiya, of the tribe Dhubyán—lived at the courts of Ghassán and Ḥíra during the latter half of the century before Islam. His chief patron was King Nu'mán b. Mundhir Abú Qábús of Ḥíra. For many years he basked in the sunshine of royal favour, enjoying every privilege that Nu'mán bestowed on his most intimate friends. The occasion of their falling out is differently related. According to one story, the poet described the charms of

[1] Vv. 55–60 (Lyall).

[2] The term *nábigha* is applied to a poet whose genius is slow in declaring itself but at last "jets forth vigorously and abundantly" (*nabagha*).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Queen Mutajarrida, which Nu'mán had asked him to celebrate, with such charm and liveliness as to excite her husband's suspicion; but it is said—and Nábigha's own words make it probable—that his enemies denounced him as the author of a scurrilous satire against Nu'mán which had been forged by themselves. At any rate he had no choice but to quit Ḥíra with all speed, and ere long we find him in Ghassán, welcomed and honoured, as the panegyrist of King 'Amr b. Ḥárith and the noble house of Jafna. But his heart was in Ḥíra still. Deeply wounded by the calumnies of which he was the victim, he never ceased to affirm his innocence and to lament the misery of exile. The following poem, which he addressed to Nu'mán, is at once a justification and an appeal for mercy [1]:—

"They brought me word, O King, thou blamedst me;
For this am I o'erwhelmed with grief and care.
I passed a sick man's night: the nurses seemed,
Spreading my couch, to have heaped up briars there.
Now (lest thou cherish in thy mind a doubt)
Invoking our last refuge, God, I swear
That he, whoever told thee I was false,
Is the more lying and faithless of the pair.
Exiled perforce, I found a strip of land
Where I could live and safely take the air:
Kings made me arbiter of their possessions,
And called me to their side and spoke me fair—
Even as thou dost grace thy favourites
Nor deem'st a fault the gratitude they bear.[2]
O leave thine anger! Else, in view of men
A mangy camel, smeared with pitch, I were.
Seest thou not God hath given thee eminence
Before which monarchs tremble and despair?

---

[1] *Díwán*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 83; Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 96.

[2] He means to say that Nu'mán has no reason to feel aggrieved because he (Nábigha) is grateful to the Ghassánids for their munificent patronage; since Nu'mán does not consider that his own favourites, in showing gratitude to himself, are thereby guilty of treachery towards their former patrons.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

All other kings are stars and thou a sun :
When the sun rises, lo, the heavens are bare !
A friend in trouble thou wilt not forsake ;
I may have sinned : in sinning all men share.
If I am wronged, thou hast but wronged a slave,
And if thou spar'st, 'tis like thyself to spare."

It is pleasant to record that Nábigha was finally reconciled to the prince whom he loved, and that Ḥíra again became his home. The date of his death is unknown, but it certainly took place before Islam was promulgated. Had the opportunity been granted to him he might have died a Moslem : he calls himself 'a religious man' (*dhú ummat^in*),[1] and although the tradition that he was actually a Christian lacks authority, his long residence in Syria and 'Iráq must have made him acquainted with the externals of Christianity and with some, at least, of its leading ideas.

A'shá.

The grave and earnest tone characteristic of Nábigha's poetry seldom prevails in that of his younger contemporary, Maymún b. Qays, who is generally known by his surname, al-A'shá—that is, 'the man of weak sight.' A professional troubadour, he roamed from one end of Arabia to the other, harp in hand, singing the praises of those who rewarded him; and such was his fame as a satirist that few ventured to withhold the bounty which he asked. By common consent he stands in the very first rank of Arabian poets. Abu 'l-Faraj, the author of the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání*, declares him to be superior to all the rest, adding, however, "this opinion is not held unanimously as regards A'shá or any other." His

[1] *Díwán*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 76, ii, 21. In another place (p. 81, vi, 6) he says, addressing his beloved :—

"Wadd give thee greeting ! for dalliance with women is lawful to me no more,
Since Religion has become a serious matter."

Wadd was a god worshipped by the pagan Arabs. Derenbourg's text has *rabbí*, *i.e.*, Allah, but see Nöldeke's remarks in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. xli (1887), p. 708.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

wandering life brought him into contact with every kind of culture then existing in Arabia. Although he was not an avowed Christian, his poetry shows to what an extent he was influenced by the Bishops of Najrán, with whom he was intimately connected, and by the Christian merchants of Ḥíra who sold him their wine. He did not rise above the pagan level of morality.

It is related that he set out to visit Muḥammad for the purpose of reciting to him an ode which he had composed in his honour. When the Quraysh heard of this, they feared lest their adversary's reputation should be increased by the panegyric of a bard so famous and popular. Accordingly, they intercepted him on his way, and asked whither he was bound. "To your kinsman," said he, "that I may accept Islam." "He will forbid and make unlawful to thee certain practices of which thou art fond." "What are these?" said A'shá. "Fornication," said Abú Sufyán. "I have not abandoned it," he replied, "but it has abandoned me. What else?" "Gambling." "Perhaps I shall obtain from him something to compensate me for the loss of gambling. What else?" "Usury." "I have never borrowed nor lent. What else?" "Wine." "Oh, in that case I will drink the water I have left stored at al-Mihrás." Seeing that A'shá was not to be deterred, Abú Sufyán offered him a hundred camels on condition that he should return to his home in Yamáma and await the issue of the struggle between Muḥammad and the Quraysh. "I agree," said A'shá. "O ye Quraysh," cried Abú Sufyán, "this is A'shá, and by God, if he becomes a follower of Muḥammad, he will inflame the Arabs against you by his poetry. Collect, therefore, a hundred camels for him." [1]

A'shá excels in the description of wine and wine-parties. One who visited Manfúḥa in Yamáma, where the poet was buried, relates that revellers used to meet at his grave and pour out beside it the last drops that remained in their cups. As an example of his style in this *genre* I translate a few lines from the most celebrated of his poems, which is included by some critics among the *Mu'allaqát*:—

[1] *Aghání*, viii, 85, last line–86, l. 10.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Many a time I hastened early to the tavern—while there ran
At my heels a ready cook, a nimble, active serving-man—
'Midst a gallant troop, like Indian scimitars, of mettle high;
Well they know that every mortal, shod and bare alike, must die.
Propped at ease I greet them gaily, them with myrtle-boughs I greet,
Pass among them wine that gushes from the jar's mouth bitter-sweet.
Emptying goblet after goblet—but the source may no man drain—
Never cease they from carousing save to cry, 'Fill up again!'
Briskly runs the page to serve them: on his ears hang pearls: below,
Tight the girdle draws his doublet as he bustles to and fro.
'Twas the harp, thou mightest fancy, waked the lute's responsive note,
When the loose-robed chantress touched it and sang shrill with quavering throat.
Here and there among the party damsels fair superbly glide:
Each her long white skirt lets trail and swings a wine-skin at her side."[1]

'Alqama.

Very little is known of the life of 'Alqama b. 'Abada, who was surnamed *al-Faḥl* (the Stallion). His most famous poem is that which he addressed to the Ghassánid Ḥárith al-A'raj after the Battle of Ḥalíma, imploring him to set free some prisoners of Tamím—the poet's tribe—among whom was his own brother or nephew, Shás. The following lines have almost become proverbial:—

"Of women do ye ask me? I can spy
Their ailments with a shrewd physician's eye.
The man whose head is grey or small his herds
No favour wins of them but mocking words.
Are riches known, to riches they aspire,
And youthful bloom is still their heart's desire."[2]

---

[1] Lyall, *Ten Ancient Arabic Poems*, p. 146 seq., vv. 25–31.
[2] Ahlwardt, *The Divans*, p. 106, vv. 8–10.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

In view of these slighting verses it is proper to observe that the poetry of Arabian women of the Pre-islamic period is distinctly masculine in character. Their songs are seldom of Love, but often of Death. Elegy (*ritha* or *marthiya*) was regarded as their special province. The oldest form of elegy appears in the verses chanted on the death of Ta'abbaṭa Sharr[an] by his sister :—

Elegiac poetry.

> "O the good knight ye left low at Rakhmán,
> Thábit son of Jábir son of Sufyán !
> He filled the cup for friends and ever slew his man." [1]

"As a rule the Arabian dirge is very simple. The poetess begins with a description of her grief, of the tears that she cannot quench, and then she shows how worthy to be deeply mourned was he whom death has taken away. He is described as a pattern of the two principal Arabian virtues, bravery and liberality, and the question is anxiously asked, 'Who will now make high resolves, overthrow the enemy, and in time of want feed the poor and entertain the stranger ?' If the hero of the dirge died a violent death we find in addition a burning lust of revenge, a thirst for the slayer's blood, expressed with an intensity of feeling of which only women are capable."[2]

Among Arabian women who have excelled in poetry the place of honour is due to Khansá—her real name was Tumáḍir—who flourished in the last years before Islam. By far the most famous of her elegies are those in which she bewailed her valiant brothers, Mu'áwiya and Ṣakhr, both of whom were struck down by sword or spear. It is impossible to translate the poignant and vivid emotion, the energy of passion and noble simplicity of style which distinguish the poetry of Khansá, but here are a few verses :—

Khansá.

[1] *Ḥamása*, p. 382, l. 17.
[2] Nöldeke, *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber*, p. 152.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Death's messenger cried aloud the loss of the generous one,
So loud cried he, by my life, that far he was heard and wide.
Then rose I, and scarce my soul could follow to meet the news,
For anguish and sore dismay and horror that Ṣakhr had died.
In my misery and despair I seemed as a drunken man,
Upstanding awhile—then soon his tottering limbs subside."[1]

Yudhakkiruní ṭulú'u 'l-shamsi Ṣakhr[an]
wa-adhkuruhú likulli ghurúbi shamsi.

"Sunrise awakes in me the sad remembrance
Of Ṣakhr, and I recall him at every sunset."

The last poets born in the Age of Paganism.

To the poets who have been enumerated many might be added—*e.g.*, Ḥassán b. Thábit, who was 'retained' by the Prophet and did useful work on his behalf; Ka'b b. Zuhayr, author of the famous panegyric on Muḥammad beginning "*Bánat Su'ád*" (Su'ád has departed); Mutammim b. Nuwayra, who, like Khansá, mourned the loss of a brother; Abú Miḥjan, the singer of wine, whose devotion to the forbidden beverage was punished by the Caliph 'Umar with imprisonment and exile; and al-Ḥuṭay'a (the Dwarf), who was unrivalled in satire. All these belonged to the class of *Mukhaḍramún*, *i.e.*, they were born in the Pagan Age but died, if not Moslems, at any rate after the proclamation of Islam.

Collections of ancient poetry.

The grammarians of Baṣra and Kúfa, by whom the remains of ancient Arabian poetry were rescued from oblivion, arranged and collected their material according to various principles. Either the poems of an individual or those of a number of individuals belonging to the same tribe or class were brought together—such a collection was called *Díwán*, plural *Dawáwín*; or, again, the compiler edited a certain number of *qaṣídas* chosen for their fame or

[1] Nöldeke, *ibid.*, p. 175.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

excellence or on other grounds, or he formed an anthology of shorter pieces or fragments, which were arranged under different heads according to their subject-matter.

Díwáns.

Among *Díwáns* mention may be made of *The Díwáns of the Six Poets*, viz. Nábigha, 'Antara, Ṭarafa, Zuhayr, 'Alqama, and Imru'u 'l-Qays, edited with a full commentary by the Spanish philologist al-A'lam (†1083 A.D.) and published in 1870 by Ahlwardt; and of *The Poems of the Hudhaylites* (*Ash'áru 'l-Hudhaliyyín*) collected by al-Sukkarí († 888 A.D.), which have been published by Kosegarten and Wellhausen.

The chief Anthologies, taken in the order of their composition, are :—

Anthologies. 1. The *Mu'allaqát.*

1. *The Mu'allaqát*, which is the title given to a collection of seven odes by Imru'u 'l-Qays, Ṭarafa, Zuhayr, Labíd, 'Antara, 'Amr b. Kulthúm, and Ḥárith b. Ḥilliza; to these two odes by Nábigha and A'shá are sometimes added. The compiler was probably Ḥammád al-Ráwiya, a famous rhapsodist of Persian descent, who flourished under the Umayyads and died in the second half of the eighth century of our era. As the *Mu'allaqát* have been discussed above, we may pass on directly to a much larger, though less celebrated, collection dating from the same period, viz. :—

2. The *Mufaḍḍaliyyát.*

2. The *Mufaḍḍaliyyát*,[1] by which title it is generally known after its compiler, Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbí († *circa* 786 A.D.), who made it at the instance of the Caliph Manṣúr for the instruction of his son and successor, Mahdí. It comprises 128 odes and is extant in two recensions, that of Anbárí († 916 A.D.), which derives from Ibnu 'l-A'rábí, the stepson of Mufaḍḍal, and that of Marzúqí (†1030 A.D.). About a third of the *Mufaḍḍaliyyát* was pub-

[1] The original title is *al-Mukhtárát* (The Selected Odes) or *al-Ikhtiyárát* (The Selections).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

lished in 1885 by Thorbecke, and Sir Charles Lyall is now preparing a complete edition.[1]

All students of Arabian poetry are familiar with—

3. The *Ḥamása* of Abú Tammám Ḥabíb b. Aws, himself a distinguished poet, who flourished under the Caliphs Ma'mún and Mu'taṣim, and died about 850 A.D. Towards the end of his life he visited 'Abdulláh b. Ṭáhir, the powerful governor of Khurásán, who was virtually an independent sovereign. It was on this journey, as Ibn Khallikán relates, that Abú Tammám composed the *Ḥamása*; for on arriving at Hamadhán (Ecbatana) the winter had set in, and as the cold was excessively severe in that country, the snow blocked up the road and obliged him to stop and await the thaw. During his stay he resided with one of the most eminent men of the place, who possessed a library in which were some collections of poems composed by the Arabs of the desert and other authors. Having then sufficient leisure, he perused those works and selected from them the passages out of which he formed his *Ḥamása*.[2] The work is divided into ten sections of unequal length, the first, from which it received its name, occupying (together with the commentary) 360 pages in Freytag's edition, while the seventh and eighth require only thirteen pages between them. These sections or chapters bear the following titles:—

3. The *Ḥamása* of Abú Tammám.

I. The Chapter of Fortitude (*Bábu 'l-Ḥamása*).
II. The Chapter of Dirges (*Bábu 'l-Maráthí*).
III. The Chapter of Good Manners (*Bábu 'l-Adab*).
IV. The Chapter of Love-songs (*Bábu 'l-Nasíb*).
V. The Chapter of Satire (*Bábu 'l-Hijá*).
VI. The Chapter of Guests (Hospitality) and Panegyric (*Bábu 'l-Aḍyáf wa'-l-Madíḥ*).

---

[1] *A Projected Edition of the Mufaḍḍaliyát*, by Sir Charles Lyall. *J.R.A.S.* for 1904, p. 315 sqq.

[2] Ibn Khallikán, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 350 = De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 51.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

VII. The Chapter of Descriptions (*Bábu 'l-Ṣifát*).
VIII. The Chapter of Travel and Repose (*Bábu 'l-Sayr wa-'l-Nu'ás*).
IX. The Chapter of Facetiæ (*Bábu 'l-Mulaḥ*).
X. The Chapter of Vituperation of Women (*Bábu Madhammati 'l-Nisá*).

The contents of the *Ḥamása* include short poems complete in themselves as well as passages extracted from longer poems; of the poets represented, some of whom belong to the Pre-islamic and others to the early Islamic period, comparatively few are celebrated, while many are anonymous or only known by the verses attached to their names. If the high level of excellence attained by these obscure singers shows, on the one hand, that a natural genius for poetry was widely diffused and that the art was successfully cultivated among all ranks of Arabian society, we must not forget how much is due to the fine taste of Abú Tammám, who, as the commentator Tibrízí has remarked, "is a better poet in his *Ḥamása* than in his poetry."

4. The *Ḥamása* of Buḥturí († 897 A.D.), a younger contemporary of Abú Tammám, is inferior to its model.[1] However convenient from a practical standpoint, the division into a great number of sections, each illustrating a narrowly defined topic, seriously impairs the artistic value of the work; moreover, Buḥturí seems to have had a less catholic appreciation of the beauties of poetry—he admired, it is said, only what was in harmony with his own style and ideas.

4. The *Ḥamása* of Buḥturí.

5. The *Jamharatu Ash'ári 'l-'Arab*, a collection of forty-nine odes, was put together probably about 1000 A.D. by Abú Zayd Muḥammad al-Qurashí, of whom we find no mention elsewhere.

5. The *Jamhara*.

[1] See Nöldeke, *Beiträge*, p. 183 sqq. There would seem to be comparatively few poems of Pre-islamic date in Buḥturí's anthology.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Apart from the *Díwáns* and anthologies, numerous Pre-islamic verses are cited in biographical, philological, and other works, *e.g.*, the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání* by Abu 'l-Faraj of Iṣfahán († 967 A.D.), the *'Iqd al-Faríd* by Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi of Cordova († 940 A.D.), the *Kámil* of Mubarrad († 898 A.D.), and the *Khizánatu 'l-Adab* of 'Abdu 'l-Qádir of Baghdád († 1682 A.D.).

Prose sources.

We have seen that the oldest existing poems date from the beginning of the fifth century of our era, whereas the art of writing did not come into general use among the Arabs until some two hundred years afterwards. Pre-islamic poetry, therefore, was preserved by oral tradition alone, and the question arises, How was this possible? What guarantee have we that songs living on men's lips for so long a period have retained their original form, even approximately? No doubt many verses, *e.g.*, those which glorified the poet's tribe or satirised their enemies, were constantly being recited by his kin, and in this way short occasional poems or fragments of longer ones might be perpetuated. Of whole *qaṣídas* like the *Mu'allaqát*, however, none or very few would have reached us if their survival had depended solely on their popularity. What actually saved them in the first place was an institution resembling that of the Rhapsodists in Greece. Every professed poet had his *Ráwí* (reciter), who accompanied him everywhere, committed his poems to memory, and handed them down, as well as the circumstances connected with them, to others. The characters of poet and *ráwí* were often combined; thus Zuhayr was the *ráwí* of his step-father, Aws b. Ḥajar, while his own *ráwí* was al-Ḥuṭay'a. If the tradition of poetry was at first a labour of love, it afterwards became a lucrative business, and the *Ráwís*, instead of being attached to individual poets, began to form an independent class, carrying in their memories a prodigious

The tradition of Pre-islamic poetry.

The Ráwís.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

stock of ancient verse and miscellaneous learning. It is related, for example, that Ḥammád once said to the Caliph Walíd b. Yazíd: "I can recite to you, for each letter of the alphabet, one hundred long poems rhyming in that letter, without taking into count the short pieces, and all that composed exclusively by poets who lived before the promulgation of Islamism." He commenced and continued until the Caliph, having grown fatigued, withdrew, after leaving a person in his place to verify the assertion and hear him to the last. In that sitting he recited two thousand nine hundred *qaṣídas* by poets who flourished before Muḥammad. Walíd, on being informed of the fact, ordered him a present of one hundred thousand dirhems.[1] Thus, towards the end of the first century after the Flight, *i.e.*, about 700 A.D., when the custom of *writing* poetry began, there was much of Pre-islamic origin still in circulation, although it is probable that far more had already been irretrievably lost. Numbers of *Ráwís* perished in the wars, or passed away in the course of nature, without leaving any one to continue their tradition. New times had brought new interests and other ways of life. The great majority of Moslems had no sympathy whatever with the ancient poetry, which represented in their eyes the unregenerate spirit of heathendom. They wanted nothing beyond the Koran and the Ḥadíth. But for reasons which will be stated in another chapter the language of the Koran and the Ḥadíth was rapidly becoming obsolete as a spoken idiom outside of the Arabian peninsula: the 'perspicuous Arabic' on which Muḥammad prided himself had ceased to be fully intelligible to the Moslems settled in 'Iráq and Khurásán, in Syria, and in Egypt. It was essential that the Sacred Text should be explained, and this necessity gave birth to the sciences of Grammar and Lexi-

[1] Ibn Khallikán, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 204 = De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 470.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

cography. The Philologists, or, as they have been aptly designated, the Humanists of Baṣra and Kúfa, where these studies were prosecuted with peculiar zeal, naturally found their best material in the Pre-islamic poems—a well of Arabic undefiled. At first the ancient poetry merely formed a basis for philological research, but in process of time a literary enthusiasm was awakened. The surviving *Ráwís* were eagerly sought out and induced to yield up their stores, the compositions of famous poets were collected, arranged, and committed to writing, and as the demand increased, so did the supply.[1]

The Humanists.

In these circumstances a certain amount of error was inevitable. Apart from unconscious failings of memory, there can be no doubt that in many cases the *Ráwís* acted with intent to deceive. The temptation to father their own verses, or centos which they pieced together from sources known only to themselves, upon some poet of antiquity was all the stronger because they ran little risk of detection. In knowledge of poetry and in poetical talent they were generally far more than a match for the philologists, who seldom possessed any critical ability, but readily took whatever came to hand. The stories which are told of Ḥammád al-Ráwiya, clearly show how unscrupulous he was in his methods, and we have no reason to suppose that he was an exception to the rule. His contemporary, Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbí, is reported to have said that the corruption which poetry suffered through Ḥammád could never be repaired, "for," he added, "Ḥammád is a man skilled in the language and poesy of the Arabs and in the styles and ideas of the poets, and he is always making verses in imitation of some

Corrupt tradition of the old poetry.

Ḥammád al-Ráwiya.

[1] Many interesting details concerning the tradition of Pre-islamic poetry by the *Ráwís* and the Philologists will be found in Ahlwardt's *Bemerkungen ueber die Aechtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte* (Greifswald, 1872), which has supplied materials for the present sketch.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

one and introducing them into genuine compositions by the same author, so that the copy passes everywhere for part of the original, and cannot be distinguished from it except by critical scholars—and where are such to be found?"[1] This art of forgery was brought to perfection by Khalaf al-Aḥmar († about 800 A.D.), who learned it in the school of Ḥammád. If he really composed the famous *Lámiyya* ascribed to Shanfará, his own poetical endowments must have been of the highest order. In his old age he repented and confessed that he was the author of several poems which the scholars of Baṣra and Kúfa had accepted as genuine, but they laughed him to scorn, saying, "What you said then seems to us more trustworthy than your present assertion."

Khalaf al-Aḥmar.

Besides the corruptions due to the *Ráwís*, others have been accumulated by the philologists themselves. As the Koran and the Ḥadíth were, of course, spoken and afterwards written in the dialect of Quraysh, to whom Muḥammad belonged, this dialect was regarded as the classical standard;[2] consequently the variations therefrom which occurred in the ancient poems were, for the most part, 'emended' and harmonised with it. Many changes were made under the influence of Islam, *e.g.*, 'Allah' was probably often substituted for the pagan goddess 'al-Lát.' Moreover, the structure of the *qaṣída*, its disconnectedness and want of logical cohesion, favoured the omission and transposition of whole passages or single verses. All these modes of depravation might be illustrated in detail, but from what has been said the reader can judge for himself how far the poems, as they now stand, are likely to have retained the form in which they were first uttered to the wild Arabs of the Pre-islamic Age.

Other causes of corruption.

[1] *Aghání*, v, 172, l. 16 sqq.

[2] This view, however, is in accordance neither with the historical facts nor with the public opinion of the Pre-islamic Arabs (see Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen*, p. 47).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Religion had so little influence on the lives of the Pre-islamic Arabs that we cannot expect to find much trace of it in their poetry. They believed vaguely in a supreme God, Allah, and more definitely in his three daughters—al-Lát, Manát, and al-'Uzzá—who were venerated all over Arabia and whose intercession was graciously accepted by Allah. There were also numerous idols enjoying high favour while they continued to bring good luck to their worshippers. Of real piety the ordinary Bedouin knew nothing. He felt no call to pray to his gods, although he often found them convenient to swear by. He might invoke Allah in the hour of need, as a drowning man will clutch at a straw; but his faith in superstitious ceremonies was stronger. He did not take his religion too seriously. Its practical advantages he was quick to appreciate. Not to mention baser pleasures, it gave him rest and security during the four sacred months, in which war was forbidden, while the institution of the Meccan Pilgrimage enabled him to take part in a national fête.

Religion.

Commerce went hand in hand with religion. Great fairs were held, the most famous being that of 'Ukáẓ, which lasted for twenty days. These fairs were in some sort the centre of old Arabian social, political, and literary life. It was the only occasion on which free and fearless intercourse was possible between the members of different clans.[1]

The Fair of 'Ukáẓ.

Plenty of excitement was provided by poetical and oratorical displays—not by athletic sports, as in ancient Greece and modern England. Here rival poets declaimed their verses and submitted them to the judgment of an acknowledged master. Nowhere else had rising talents such an opportunity of gaining wide reputation: what 'Ukáẓ said to-day all Arabia would repeat to-morrow. At 'Ukáẓ, we are told, the youthful Muḥammad listened, as though spellbound, to

[1] See Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 88 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the persuasive eloquence of Quss b. Sá'ida, Bishop of Najrán; and he may have contrasted the discourse of the Christian preacher with the brilliant odes chanted by heathen bards.

The Bedouin view of life was thoroughly hedonistic. Love, wine, gambling, hunting, the pleasures of song and romance, the brief, pointed, and elegant expression of wit and wisdom—these things he knew to be good. Beyond them he saw only the grave.

> "Roast meat and wine: the swinging ride
> On a camel sure and tried,
> Which her master speeds amain
> O'er low dale and level plain:
> Women marble-white and fair
> Trailing gold-fringed raiment rare:
> Opulence, luxurious ease,
> With the lute's soft melodies—
> Such delights hath our brief span;
> Time is Change, Time's fool is Man.
> Wealth or want, great store or small,
> All is one since Death's are all."[1]

It would be a mistake to suppose that these men always, or even generally, passed their lives in the aimless pursuit of pleasure. Some goal they had—earthly, no doubt—such as the accumulation of wealth or the winning of glory or the fulfilment of blood-revenge. "*God forbid*," says one, "*that I should die while a grievous longing, as it were a mountain, weighs on my breast!*"[2] A deeper chord is touched by Imru'u 'l-Qays: "*If I strove for a bare livelihood, scanty means would suffice me and I would seek no more. But I strive for lasting renown, and 'tis men like me that sometimes attain lasting renown. Never, while life endures, does a man reach the summit of his ambition or cease from toil.*"[3]

[1] *Ḥamása*, 506.
[2] *Ibid.*, 237.
[3] *Díwán* of Imru'u 'l-Qays, ed. by De Slane, p. 22 of the Arabic text, l. 17 sqq. = No. 52, ll. 57–59 (p. 154) in Ahlwardt's *Divans of the Six Poets.*

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

These are noble sentiments nobly expressed. Yet one hears the sigh of weariness, as if the speaker were struggling against the conviction that his cause is already lost, and would welcome the final stroke of destiny. It was a time of wild uproar and confusion. Tribal and family feuds filled the land, as Zuhayr says, with evil fumes. No wonder that earnest and thoughtful minds asked themselves—What worth has our life, what meaning? Whither does it lead? Such questions paganism could not answer, but Arabia in the century before Muḥammad was not wholly abandoned to paganism. Jewish colonists had long been settled in the Ḥijáz. Probably the earliest settlements date from the conquest of Palestine by Titus or Hadrian. In their new home the refugees, through contact with a people nearly akin to themselves, became fully Arabicised, as the few extant specimens of their poetry bear witness. They remained Jews, however, not only in their cultivation of trade and various industries, but also in the most vital particular—their religion. This, and the fact that they lived in isolated communities among the surrounding population, marked them out as the salt of the desert. In the Ḥijáz their spiritual predominance was not seriously challenged. It was otherwise in Yemen. We may leave out of account the legend according to which Judaism was introduced into that country from the Ḥijáz by the Tubba' As'ad Kámil. What is certain is that towards the beginning of the sixth century it was firmly planted there side by side with Christianity, and that in the person of the Ḥimyarite monarch Dhú Nuwás, who adopted the Jewish faith, it won a short-lived but sanguinary triumph over its rival. But in Yemen, except among the highlanders of Najrán, Christianity does not appear to have flourished as it did in the extreme north and north-east, where the Roman and

Judaism and Christianity in Arabia.

With the last line, however, *cf.* the words of Qays b. al-Khaṭím on accomplishing his vengeance: "*When this death comes, there will not be found any need of my soul that I have not satisfied*" (*Ḥamása*, 87).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Persian frontiers were guarded by the Arab levies of Ghassán and Ḥíra. We have seen that the latter city contained a large Christian population who were called distinctively 'Ibád, *i.e.*, Servants (of God). Through them the Aramaic culture of Babylonia was transmitted to all parts of the peninsula. They had learned the art of writing long before it was generally practised in Arabia, as is shown by the story of Ṭarafa and Mutalammis, and they produced the oldest *written* poetry in the Arabic language—a poetry very different in character from that which forms the main subject of this chapter. Unfortunately the bulk of it has perished, since the rhapsodists, to whom we owe the preservation of so much Pre-islamic verse, were devoted to the traditional models and would not burden their memories with anything new-fashioned. The most famous of the 'Ibádí poets is 'Adí b. Zayd, whose adventurous career as a politician has been sketched above. He is not reckoned by Muḥammadan critics among the *Fuḥúl* or poets of the first rank, because he was a townsman (*qarawí*). In this connection the following anecdote is instructive. The poet al-'Ajjáj († about 709 A.D.) said of his contemporaries al-Ṭirimmáḥ and al-Kumayt: "They used to ask me concerning rare expressions in the language of poetry, and I informed them, but afterwards I found the same expressions wrongly applied in their poems, the reason being that they were townsmen who described what they had not seen and misapplied it, whereas I who am a Bedouin describe what I have seen and apply it properly." [1] 'Adí is chiefly remembered for his wine-songs. Oriental Christianity has always been associated with the drinking and selling of wine. Christian ideas were carried into the heart of Arabia by 'Ibádí wine merchants, who are said to have taught their religion to the celebrated A'shá. 'Adí drank and was merry like the rest, but the underlying thought, 'for to-morrow we die,' repeatedly

The 'Ibád of Ḥíra.

'Adí b. Zayd.

[1] *Aghání*, ii, 18, l. 23 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

makes itself heard. He walks beside a cemetery, and the voices of the dead call to him—[1]

"Thou who seest us unto thyself shalt say,
'Soon upon me comes the season of decay.'
Can the solid mountains evermore sustain
Time's vicissitudes and all they bring in train?
Many a traveller lighted near us and abode,
Quaffing wine wherein the purest water flowed—
Strainers on each flagon's mouth to clear the wine,
Noble steeds that paw the earth in trappings fine!
For a while they lived in lap of luxury,
Fearing no misfortune, dallying lazily.
Then, behold, Time swept them all, like chaff, away:
Thus it is men fall to whirling Time a prey.
Thus it is Time keeps the bravest and the best
Night and day still plunged in Pleasure's fatal quest."

It is said that the recitation of these verses induced Nu'mán al-Akbar, one of the mythical pagan kings of Ḥíra, to accept Christianity and become an anchorite. Although the story involves an absurd anachronism, it is *ben trovato* in so far as it records the impression which the graver sort of Christian poetry was likely to make on heathen minds.

The courts of Ḥíra and Ghassán were well known to the wandering minstrels of the time before Muḥammad, who flocked thither in eager search of patronage and remuneration. We may be sure that men like Nábigha, Labíd, and A'shá did not remain unaffected by the culture around them, even if it seldom entered very deeply into their lives. That considerable traces of religious feeling are to be found in Pre-islamic poetry admits of no denial, but the passages in question were formerly explained as due to interpolation. This view no longer prevails. Thanks mainly to the arguments of Von Kremer, Sir Charles Lyall, and Wellhausen, it has come to be recognised (1) that in many cases the above-mentioned religious feeling is not Islamic in tone; (2) that the passages in which it occurs

Pre-islamic poetry not exclusively pagan in sentiment.

[1] *Aghání*, ii, 34, l. 22 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

are not of Islamic origin ; and (3) that it is the natural and necessary result of the widely spread, though on the whole superficial, influence of Judaism, and especially of Christianity.[1] It shows itself not only in frequent allusions, *e.g.*, to the monk in his solitary cell, whose lamp serves to light belated travellers on their way, and in more significant references, such as that of Zuhayr already quoted, to the Heavenly Book in which evil actions are enscrolled for the Day of Reckoning, but also in the tendency to moralise, to look within, to meditate on death, and to value the life of the individual rather than the continued existence of the family. These things are not characteristic of old Arabian poetry, but the fact that they do appear at times is quite in accord with the other facts which have been stated, and justifies the conclusion that during the sixth century religion and culture were imperceptibly extending their sphere of influence in Arabia, leavening the pagan masses, and gradually preparing the way for Islam.

[1] See Von Kremer, *Ueber die Gedichte des Labyd* in *S.B.W.A.*, *Phil.-Hist. Klasse* (Vienna, 1881), vol. 98, p. 555 sqq. Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, pp. 92 and 119. Wellhausen, *Reste Arabischen Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 224 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER IV

THE PROPHET AND THE KORAN

WITH the appearance of Muḥammad the almost impenetrable veil thrown over the preceding age is suddenly lifted and we find ourselves on the solid ground of historical tradition. In order that the reasons for this change may be understood, it is necessary to give some account of the principal sources from which our knowledge of the Prophet's life and teaching is derived.

Sources of information: I. The Koran.

There is first, of course, the Koran,[1] consisting "exclusively of the revelations or commands which Muḥammad professed, from time to time, to receive through Gabriel as a message direct from God; and which, under an alleged Divine direction, he delivered to those about him. At the time of pretended inspiration, or shortly after, each passage was recited by Muḥammad before the Companions or followers who happened to be present, and was generally committed to writing by some one amongst them upon palm-leaves, leather, stones, or such other rude material as conveniently came to hand. These Divine messages continued throughout the three-and-twenty years of his prophetical life, so that the last portion did not appear till the year of his death. The canon was then closed; but the contents were

[1] I prefer to retain the customary spelling instead of Qur'án, as it is correctly transliterated by scholars. Arabic words naturalised in English, like Koran, Caliph, Vizier, &c., require no apology.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

never, during the Prophet's lifetime, systematically arranged, or even collected together."[1] They were preserved, however, in fragmentary copies and, especially, by oral recitation until the sanguinary wars which followed Muḥammad's death had greatly diminished the number of those who could repeat them by heart.

How it was preserved.

Accordingly, after the battle of Yamáma (633 A.D.) 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb came to Abú Bakr, who was then Caliph, and said: "I fear that slaughter may wax hot among the Reciters on other battle-fields, and that much of the Koran may be lost; so in my opinion it should be collected without delay." Abú Bakr agreed, and entrusted the task to Zayd b. Thábit, one of the Prophet's amanuenses, who collected the fragments with great difficulty "from bits of parchment, thin white stones, leafless palm-branches, and the bosoms of men." The manuscript thus compiled was deposited with Abú Bakr during the remainder of his life, then with 'Umar, on whose death it passed to his daughter Ḥafṣa. Afterwards, in the Caliphate of 'Uthmán, Ḥudhayfa b. al-Yamán, observing that the Koran as read in Syria was seriously at variance with the text current in 'Iráq, warned the Caliph to interfere, lest the Sacred Book of the Moslems should become a subject of dispute, like the Jewish and Christian scriptures. In the year 651 A.D. 'Uthmán ordered Zayd b. Thábit to prepare a Revised Version with the assistance of three Qurayshites, saying to the latter, "If ye differ from Zayd regarding any word of the Koran, write it in the dialect of Quraysh; for it was revealed in their dialect."[2] This has ever since remained the final and standard recension of the Koran. "Transcripts were multiplied and forwarded to the chief cities in the empire, and all previously existing copies were, by the Caliph's com-

[1] Muir's *Life of Mahomet*, Introduction, p. 2 seq. I may as well say at once that I entirely disagree with the view suggested in this passage that Muḥammad did not believe himself to be inspired.

[2] The above details are taken from the *Fihrist*, ed. by G. Fluegel, p. 24, l. 14 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

mand, committed to the flames." [1] In the text as it has come down to us the various readings are few and unimportant, and its genuineness is above suspicion. We shall see, moreover, that the Koran is an exceedingly human document, reflecting every phase of Muḥammad's personality and standing in close relation to the outward events of his life, so that here we have materials of unique and incontestable authority for tracing the origin and early development of Islam—such materials as do not exist in the case of Buddhism or Christianity or any other ancient religion. Unfortunately the arrangement of the Koran can only be described as chaotic. No chronological sequence is observed in the order of the Súras (chapters), which is determined simply by their length, the longest being placed first.[2] Again, the chapters themselves are sometimes made up of disconnected fragments having nothing in common except the rhyme; whence it is often impossible to discover the original context of the words actually spoken by the Prophet, the occasion on which they were revealed, or the period to which they belong. In these circumstances the Koran must be supplemented by reference to our second main source of information, namely, Tradition.

Value of the Koran as an authority.

Already in the last years of Muḥammad's life (writes Dr. Sprenger) it was a pious custom that when two Moslems met, one should ask for news (*ḥadíth*) and the other should relate a saying or anecdote of the Prophet. After his death this custom continued, and the name *Ḥadíth* was still applied to sayings and stories which were no longer new.[3] In the course of time an elaborate system of Tradition was built up, as the Koran—originally the sole criterion by which Moslems were guided alike in the

2. Tradition (Ḥadíth).

[1] Muir, *op. cit.*, Introduction, p. 14.

[2] With the exception of the Opening Súra (*al-Fátiḥa*), which is a short prayer.

[3] Sprenger, *Ueber das Traditionswesen bei den Arabern*, *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. x, p. 2.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

greatest and smallest matters of public and private interest—was found insufficient for the complicated needs of a rapidly extending empire. Appeal was made to the sayings and practice (*sunna*) of Muḥammad, which now acquired "the force of law and some of the authority of inspiration." The Prophet had no Boswell, but almost as soon as he began to preach he was a marked man whose *obiter dicta* could not fail to be treasured by his Companions, and whose actions were attentively watched. Thus, during the first century of Islam there was a multitude of living witnesses from whom traditions were collected, committed to memory, and orally handed down. Every tradition consists of two parts: the text (*matn*) and the authority (*sanad*, or *isnád*), *e.g.*, the relater says, "I was told by *A*, who was informed by *B*, who had it from *C*, that the Prophet (God bless him!) and Abú Bakr and 'Umar used to open prayer with the words 'Praise to God, the Lord of all creatures.'" Written records and compilations were comparatively rare in the early period. Ibn Isḥáq († 768 A.D.) composed the oldest extant Biography of the Prophet, which we do not possess, however, in its original shape but only in the recension of Ibn Hishám († 833 A.D.). Two important and excellent works of the same kind are the *Kitábu 'l-Maghází* ('Book of the Wars') by Wáqidí († 822 A.D.) and the *Kitábu 'l-Ṭabaqát al-Kabír* ('The Great Book of the Classes,' *i.e.*, the different classes of Muḥammad's Companions and those who came after them) by Ibn Sa'd († 844 A.D.). Of miscellaneous traditions intended to serve the Faithful as a model and rule of life in every particular, and arranged in chapters according to the subject-matter, the most ancient and authoritative collections are those of Bukhárí († 870 A.D.) and Muslim († 874 A.D.), both of which bear the same title, viz., *al-Ṣaḥíḥ*, 'The Genuine.' It only remains to speak of Commentaries on the Koran. Some passages were explained by Muḥammad himself, but the real founder of

Biographies of Muḥammad.

General collections.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Koranic Exegesis was 'Abdulláh b. 'Abbás, the Prophet's cousin. Although the writings of the early interpreters have entirely perished, the gist of their researches is embodied in the great commentary of Ṭabarí († 922 A.D.), a man of encyclopædic learning who absorbed the whole mass of tradition existing in his time. Subsequent commentaries are largely based on this colossal work, which has recently been published at Cairo in thirty volumes. That of Zamakhsharí († 1143 A.D.), which is entitled the *Kashsháf*, and that of Bayḍáwí († 1286 A.D.) are the best known and most highly esteemed in the Muḥammadan East. A work of wider scope is the *Itqán* of Suyúṭí († 1505 A.D.), which takes a general survey of the Koranic sciences, and may be regarded as an introduction to the critical study of the Koran.

Commentaries on the Koran.

While every impartial student will admit the justice of Ibn Qutayba's claim that no religion has such historical attestations as Islam—*laysa li-ummat*^in^ *mina 'l-umami asnád*^un^ *ka-asnádihim* [1]—he must at the same time cordially assent to the observation made by another Muḥammadan: "In nothing do we see pious men more given to falsehood than in Tradition" (*lam nara 'l-ṣáliḥína fí shay'*^in^ *akdhaba minhum fí 'l-ḥadíth*).[2] Of this severe judgment the reader will find ample confirmation in the Second Part of Goldziher's *Muhammedanische Studien*.[3] During the first century of Islam the forging of Traditions became a recognised political and religious weapon, of which all parties availed themselves. Even men of the strictest piety practised this species of fraud (*tadlís*), and maintained that the end justified the means. Their point of view is well expressed in the following words which are supposed to have been spoken by the Prophet: "You must compare the sayings attributed

Character of Moslem tradition.

[1] Quoted by Sprenger, *loc. cit.*, p. 1.

[2] Quoted by Nöldeke in the Introduction to his *Geschichte des Qoráns*, p. 22.

[3] See especially pp. 28–130.

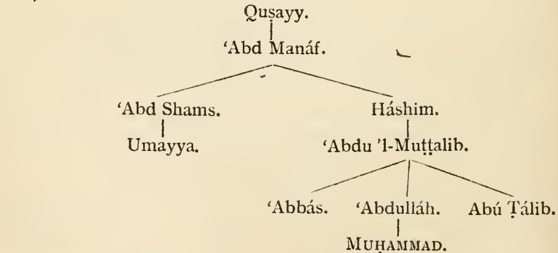
Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

to me with the Koran; what agrees therewith is from me, whether I actually said it or no;" and again, "Whatever good saying has been said, I myself have said it." [1] As the result of such principles every new doctrine took the form of an Apostolic *Ḥadíth*; every sect and every system defended itself by an appeal to the authority of Muḥammad. We may see how enormous was the number of false Traditions in circulation from the fact that when Bukhárí († 870 A.D.) drew up his collection entitled 'The Genuine' (*al-Ṣaḥíḥ*), he limited it to some 7,000, which he picked out of 600,000.

The credibility of Tradition, so far as it concerns the life of the Prophet, cannot be discussed in this place.[2] The oldest and best biography, that of Ibn Isḥáq, undoubtedly contains a great deal of fabulous matter, but his narrative appears to be honest and fairly authentic on the whole.

Birth of Muḥammad.

If we accept the traditional chronology, Muḥammad, son of 'Abdulláh and Ámina, of the tribe of Quraysh, was born at Mecca on the 12th of Rabí' al-Awwal, in the Year of the Elephant (570–571 A.D.). His descent from Quṣayy is shown by the following table:—



[1] *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 48 seq.

[2] The reader may consult Muir's Introduction to his *Life of Mahomet*, pp. 28–87.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Shortly after his birth he was handed over to a Bedouin nurse—Ḥalíma, a woman of the Banú Sa'd—so that until he was five years old he breathed the pure air and learned to speak the unadulterated language of the desert. One marvellous event which is said to have happened to him at this time may perhaps be founded on fact :—

His childhood.

"He and his foster-brother" (so Ḥalíma relates) "were among the cattle behind our encampment when my son came running to us and cried, 'My brother, the Qurayshite! two men clad in white took him and laid him on his side and cleft his belly; and they were stirring their hands in it.' When my husband and I went out to him we found him standing with his face turned pale, and on our asking, 'What ails thee, child?' he answered, 'Two men wearing white garments came to me and laid me on my side and cleft my belly and groped for something, I know not what.' We brought him back to our tent, and my husband said to me, 'O Ḥalíma, I fear this lad has been smitten (*uṣíba*); so take him home to his family before it becomes evident.' When we restored him to his mother she said, 'What has brought thee, nurse? Thou wert so fond of him and anxious that he should stay with thee.' I said, 'God has made him grow up, and I have done my part. I feared that some mischance would befall him, so I brought him back to thee as thou wishest.' 'Thy case is not thus,' said she; 'tell me the truth,' and she gave me no peace until I told her. Then she said, 'Art thou afraid that he is possessed by the Devil?' I said, 'Yes.' 'Nay, by God,' she replied, 'the Devil cannot reach him; my son hath a high destiny.'"[1]

Muḥammad and the two angels.

Other versions of the story are more explicit. The angels, it is said, drew forth Muḥammad's heart, cleansed it, and removed the black clot—*i.e.*, the taint of original sin.[2] If these inventions have any basis at all beyond the desire to glorify the future Prophet, we must suppose that they refer

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 105, l. 9 sqq.

[2] This legend seems to have arisen out of a literal interpretation of Koran, xciv, 1, "*Did we not open thy breast?*"—*i.e.*, give thee comfort or enlightenment.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

to some kind of epileptic fit. At a later period he was subject to such attacks, which, according to the unanimous voice of Tradition, often coincided with the revelations sent down from heaven.

'Abdulláh had died before the birth of his son, and when, in his sixth year, Muḥammad lost his mother also, the charge of the orphan was undertaken first by his grandfather, the aged 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib, and then by his uncle, Abú Ṭálib, a poor but honourable man, who nobly fulfilled the duties of a guardian to the last hour of his life. Muḥammad's small patrimony was soon spent, and he was reduced to herding sheep—a despised employment which usually fell to the lot of women or slaves. In his twelfth year he accompanied Abú Ṭálib on a trading expedition to Syria, in the course of which he is said to have encountered a Christian monk called Baḥírá, who discovered the Seal of Prophecy between the boy's shoulders, and hailed him as the promised apostle. Such anticipations deserve no credit whatever. The truth is that until Muḥammad assumed the prophetic rôle he was merely an obscure Qurayshite; and scarcely anything related of him anterior to that event can be deemed historical except his marriage to Khadíja, an elderly widow of considerable fortune, which took place when he was about twenty-five years of age.

His meeting with the monk Baḥírá.

During the next fifteen years of his life Muḥammad was externally a prosperous citizen, only distinguished from those around him by an habitual expression of thoughtful melancholy. What was passing in his mind may be conjectured with some probability from his first utterances when he came forward as a preacher. It is certain, and he himself has acknowledged, that he formerly shared the idolatry of his countrymen. "*Did not He find thee astray and lead thee aright?*" (Kor. xciii, 7). When and how did the process of conversion begin? These questions cannot be answered, but it is natural to suppose that the all-important result, on which

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Muḥammad's biographers concentrate their attention, was preceded by a long period of ferment and immaturity. The idea of monotheism was represented in Arabia by the Jews, who were particularly numerous in the Ḥijáz, and by several Christian sects of an ascetic character—*e.g.*, the Ṣábians[1] and the Rakúsians. Furthermore, "Islamic tradition knows of a number of religious thinkers before Muḥammad who are described as Ḥanífs,"[2] and of whom the best known are Waraqa b. Nawfal of Quraysh; Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl, also of Quraysh; and Umayya b. Abi 'l-Ṣalt of Thaqíf. They formed no sect, as Sprenger imagined; and more recent research has demonstrated the baselessness of the same scholar's theory that there was in Pre-islamic times a widely-spread religious movement which Muḥammad organised, directed, and employed for his own ends. His Arabian precursors, if they may be so called, were merely a few isolated individuals. We are told by Ibn Isḥáq that Waraqa and Zayd, together with two other Qurayshites, rejected idolatry and left their homes in order to seek the true religion of Abraham, but whereas Waraqa is said to have become a Christian, Zayd remained a pious dissenter unattached either to Christianity or to Judaism; he abstained from idol-worship, from eating that which had died of itself, from blood, and from the flesh of animals offered in sacrifice to idols; he condemned the barbarous custom of burying female infants alive, and said,

The Ḥanífs.

[1] This name, which signifies 'Baptists,' was applied by the heathen Arabs to Muḥammad and his followers, probably in consequence of the ceremonial ablutions which are incumbent upon every Moslem before the five daily prayers (see Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heid.*, p. 237).

[2] Sir Charles Lyall, *The Words 'Ḥaníf' and 'Muslim,' J.R.A.S.* for 1903, p. 772. The original meaning of *ḥaníf* is no longer traceable, but it may be connected with the Hebrew *ḥánéf*, 'profane.' In the Koran it generally refers to the religion of Abraham, and sometimes appears to be nearly synonymous with *Muslim*. Further information concerning the Ḥanífs will be found in Sir Charles Lyall's article cited above; Sprenger, *Das Leben und die Lehre des Moḥammed*, vol. i, pp. 45–134; Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heid.*, p. 238 sqq.; Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, pp. 181–192.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"I worship the Lord of Abraham."[1] As regards Umayya b. Abi 'l-Ṣalt, according to the notice of him in the *Aghání*, he had inspected and read the Holy Scriptures; he wore sackcloth as a mark of devotion, held wine to be unlawful, was inclined to disbelieve in idols, and earnestly sought the true religion. It is said that he hoped to be sent as a prophet to the Arabs, and therefore when Muḥammad appeared he envied and bitterly opposed him.[2] Umayya's verses, some of which have been translated in a former chapter,[3] are chiefly on religious topics, and show many points of resemblance with the doctrines set forth in the early Súras of the Koran. With one exception, all the Ḥanífs whose names are recorded belonged to the Ḥijáz and the west of the Arabian peninsula. No doubt Muḥammad, with whom most of them were contemporary, came under their influence, and he may have received his first stimulus from this quarter.[4] While they, however, were concerned only about their own salvation, Muḥammad, starting from the same position, advanced far beyond it. His greatness lies not so much in the sublime ideas by which he was animated as in the tremendous force and enthusiasm of his appeal to the universal conscience of mankind.

In his fortieth year, it is said, Muḥammad began to dream dreams and see visions, and desire solitude above all things else. He withdrew to a cave on Mount Ḥirá, near Mecca, and engaged in religious austerities (*taḥannuth*). One night in the month of Ramaḍán[5] the Angel[6] appeared to him and said, "Read!" (*iqra'*). He

Muḥammad's vision.

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 143, l. 6 sqq.

[2] *Aghání*, iii, 187, l. 17 sqq.

[3] See p. 69 *supra*.

[4] Tradition associates him especially with Waraqa, who was a cousin of his first wife, Khadíja, and is said to have hailed him as a prophet while Muḥammad himself was still hesitating (Ibn Hishám, p. 153, l. 14 sqq.).

[5] This is the celebrated 'Night of Power' (*Laylatu 'l-Qadr*) mentioned in the Koran, xcvii, 1.

[6] The Holy Ghost (*Rúḥu'l-Quds*), for whom in the Medína Súras Gabriel (Jibríl) is substituted.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

answered, "I am no reader" (*má ana bi-qárí'in*).[1] Then the Angel seized him with a strong grasp, saying, "Read!" and, as Muḥammad still refused to obey, gripped him once more and spoke as follows:—

THE SÚRA OF COAGULATED BLOOD (XCVI).

(1) Read in the name of thy Lord[2] who created,
(2) Who created Man of blood coagulated.
(3) Read! Thy Lord is the most beneficent,
(4) Who taught by the Pen,[3]
(5) Taught that which they knew not unto men.

On hearing these words Muḥammad returned, trembling, to Khadíja and cried, "Wrap me up! wrap me up!" and remained covered until the terror passed away from him.[4] Another tradition relating to the same event makes it clear

[1] But another version (Ibn Hishám, p. 152, l. 9 sqq.) represents Muḥammad as replying to the Angel, "What am I to read?" (*má aqra'u* or *má dhá aqra'u*). Professor Bevan has pointed out to me that the tradition in this form bears a curious resemblance, which can hardly be accidental, to the words of Isaiah xl. 6: "The voice said, Cry. And he said, What shall I cry?" The question whether the Prophet could read and write is discussed by Nöldeke (*Geschichte des Qoráns*, p. 7 sqq.), who leaves it undecided. According to Nöldeke (*loc. cit.*, p. 10), the epithet *ummí*, which is applied to Muḥammad in the Koran, and is commonly rendered by 'illiterate,' does not signify that he was ignorant of reading and writing, but only that he was unacquainted with the ancient Scriptures; *cf.* 'Gentile.' However this may be, it appears that he wished to pass for illiterate, with the object of confirming the belief in his inspiration: "*Thou*" (Muḥammad) "*didst not use to read any book before this*' (the Koran) "*nor to write it with thy right hand; else the liars would have doubted* (Koran, xxix, 47).

[2] The meaning of these words (*iqra' bismi rabbika*) is disputed. Others translate, "Preach in the name of thy Lord" (Nöldeke), or "Proclaim the name of thy Lord" (Hirschfeld). I see no sufficient grounds for abandoning the traditional interpretation supported by verses 4 and 5. Muḥammad dreamed that he was commanded to read the Word of God inscribed in the Heavenly Book which is the source of all Revelation.

[3] Others render, "who taught (the use of) the Pen."

[4] This account of Muḥammad's earliest vision (Bukhárí, ed. by Krehl, vol. iii, p. 380, l. 2 sqq.) is derived from 'Á'isha, his favourite wife, whom he married after the death of Khadíja.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

that the revelation occurred in a dream.[1] "I awoke," said the Prophet, "and methought it was written in my heart." If we take into account the notions prevalent among the Arabs of that time on the subject of inspiration,[2] it will not appear surprising that Muḥammad at first believed himself to be possessed, like a poet or soothsayer, by one of the spirits called collectively *Jinn*. Such was his anguish of mind that he even meditated suicide, but Khadíja comforted and reassured him, and finally he gained the unalterable conviction that he was not a prey to demoniacal influences, but a prophet divinely inspired. For some time he received no further revelation.[3] Then suddenly, as he afterwards related, he saw the Angel seated on a throne between earth and heaven. Awe-stricken, he ran into his house and bade them wrap his limbs in a warm garment (*dithár*). While he lay thus the following verses were revealed :—

THE SÚRA OF THE ENWRAPPED (LXXIV).

(1) O thou who enwrapped dost lie !
(2) Arise and prophesy,[4]
(3) And thy Lord magnify,
(4) And thy raiment purify,
(5) And the abomination fly ![5]

Muḥammad no longer doubted that he had a divinely ordained mission to preach in public. His feelings of relief and thankfulness are expressed in several Súras of this period, *e.g.*—

THE SÚRA OF THE MORNING (XCIII).

(1) By the Morning bright
(2) And the softly falling Night,
(3) Thy Lord hath not forsaken thee, neither art thou hateful in His sight.

---

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 152, l. 9 sqq.
[2] See p. 72 *supra*.
[3] This interval is known as the Fatra.
[4] Literally, 'warn.'
[5] 'The abomination' (*al-rujz*) probably refers to idolatry.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

(4) Verily, the Beginning is hard unto thee, but the End shall be light.[1]
(5) Thou shalt be satisfied, the Lord shall thee requite.
(6) Did not He shelter thee when He found thee in orphan's plight?
(7) Did not He find thee astray and lead thee aright?
(8) Did not He find thee poor and make thee rich by His might?
(9) Wherefore, the orphan betray not,
(10) And the beggar turn away not,
(11) And tell of the bounty of thy Lord.

According to his biographers, an interval of three years elapsed between the sending of Muḥammad and his appearance as a public preacher of the faith that was in him. Naturally, he would first turn to his own family and friends, but it is difficult to accept the statement that he made no proselytes openly during so long a period. The contrary is asserted in an ancient tradition related by al-Zuhrí († 742 A.D.), where we read that the Prophet summoned the people to embrace Islam[2] both in private and public; and that those who responded to his appeal were, for the most part, young men belonging to the poorer class.[3] He found, however, some influential adherents. Besides Khadíja, who was the first to believe, there were his cousin 'Alí, his adopted son, Zayd b. Ḥáritha, and, most important of all, Abú Bakr b. Abí Quḥáfa, a leading merchant of the Quraysh, universally respected and beloved for his integrity, wisdom, and kindly disposition. At the outset Muḥammad seems to have avoided everything calculated to offend the heathens, confining himself to moral and religious generalities,

The first Moslems.

[1] Literally, "The Last State shall be better for thee than the First," referring either to Muḥammad's recompense in the next world or to the ultimate triumph of his cause in this world.

[2] *Islám* is a verbal noun formed from *Aslama*, which means 'to surrender' and, in a religious sense, 'to surrender one's self to the will of God.' The participle, *Muslim* (Moslem), denotes one who thus surrenders himself.

[3] Sprenger, *Leben des Mohammad*, vol. i, p. 356.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

so that many believed, and the Meccan aristocrats themselves regarded him with good-humoured toleration as a harmless oracle-monger. "Look!" they said as he passed by, "there goes the man of the Banú 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib who tells of heaven." But no sooner did he begin to emphasise the Unity of God, to fulminate against idolatry, and to preach the Resurrection of the dead, than his followers melted away in face of the bitter antagonism which these doctrines excited amongst the Quraysh, who saw in the Ka'ba and its venerable cult the mainspring of their commercial prosperity, and were irritated by the Prophet's declaration that their ancestors were burning in hell-fire. The authority of Abú Ṭálib secured the personal safety of Muḥammad; of the little band who remained faithful some were protected by the strong family feeling characteristic of old Arabian society, but many were poor and friendless; and these, especially the slaves, whom the levelling ideas of Islam had attracted in large numbers, were subjected to cruel persecution.[1] Nevertheless Muḥammad continued to preach. "I will not forsake this cause" (thus he is said to have answered Abú Ṭálib, who informed him of the threatening attitude of the Quraysh and begged him not to lay on him a greater burden than he could bear) "until God shall make it manifest or until I shall perish therein—not though they should set the sun on my right hand and the moon on my left!"[2] But progress

Hostility of the Quraysh.

[1] It must be remembered that this branch of Muḥammadan tradition derives from the pietists of the first century after the Flight, who were profoundly dissatisfied with the reigning dynasty (the Umayyads), and revenged themselves by painting the behaviour of the Meccan ancestors of the Umayyads towards Muḥammad in the blackest colours possible. The facts tell another story. It is significant that hardly any case of real persecution is mentioned in the Koran. Muḥammad was allowed to remain at Mecca and to carry on, during many years, a religious propaganda which his fellow-citizens, with few exceptions, regarded as detestable and dangerous. We may well wonder at the moderation of the Quraysh, which, however, was not so much deliberate policy as the result of their indifference to religion and of Muḥammad's failure to make appreciable headway in Mecca.

[2] Ibn Hishám, p. 168, l. 9. sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

was slow and painful : the Meccans stood obstinately aloof, deriding both his prophetic authority and the Divine chastisement with which he sought to terrify them. Moreover, they used every kind of pressure short of actual violence in order to seduce his followers, so that many recanted, and in the fifth year of his mission he saw himself driven to the necessity of commanding a general emigration to the Christian kingdom of Abyssinia, where the Moslems would be received with open arms [1] and would be withdrawn from temptation.[2] About a hundred men and women went into exile, leaving their Prophet with a small party of staunch and devoted comrades to persevere in a struggle that was daily becoming more difficult. In a moment of weakness Muḥammad resolved to attempt a compromise with his countrymen. One day, it is said, the chief men of Mecca, assembled in a group beside the Ka'ba, discussed as was their wont the affairs of the city, when Muḥammad appeared and, seating himself by them in a friendly manner, began to recite in their hearing the 53rd Súra of the Koran. When he came to the verses (19–20)—

Emigration to Abyssinia.

Temporary reconciliation with the Quraysh.

"Do ye see Al-Lát and Al-'Uzzá, and Manát, the third and last?"

Satan prompted him to add :—

> "These are the most exalted Cranes (or Swans),
> And verily their intercession is to be hoped for."

The Quraysh were surprised and delighted with this acknowledgment of their deities ; and as Muḥammad wound up the Súra with the closing words—

> "Wherefore bow down before God and serve Him,"

---

[1] At this time Muḥammad believed the doctrines of Islam and Christianity to be essentially the same.

[2] Ṭabarí, i, 1180, 8 sqq. *Cf.* Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, p. 267 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the whole assembly prostrated themselves with one accord on the ground and worshipped.[1] But scarcely had Muḥammad returned to his house when he repented of the sin into which he had fallen. He cancelled the idolatrous verses and revealed in their place those which now stand in the Koran—

> "Shall yours be the male and his the female?[2]
> This were then an unjust division!
> They are naught but names which ye and your fathers have named."

Muḥammad's concession to the idolaters.

We can easily comprehend why Ibn Hishám omits all mention of this episode from his Biography, and why the fact itself is denied by many Moslem theologians.[3] The Prophet's friends were scandalised, his enemies laughed him to scorn. It was probably no sudden lapse, as tradition represents, but a calculated endeavour to come to terms with the Quraysh; and so far from being immediately annulled, the reconciliation seems to have lasted long enough for the news of it to reach the emigrants in Abyssinia and induce some of them to return to Mecca. While putting the best face on the matter, Muḥammad felt keenly both his own disgrace and the public discredit. It speaks well for his sincerity that, as soon as he perceived any compromise with idolatry to be impossible—to be, in fact, a surrender of the great principle by which he was inspired—he frankly confessed his error and delusion.

[1] Muir, *Life of Mahomet*, vol. ii, p. 151.

[2] We have seen (p. 91 *supra*) that the heathen Arabs disliked female offspring, yet they called their three principal deities the daughters of Allah.

[3] It is related by Ibn Isḥáq (Ṭabarí, i, 1192, 4 sqq.). In his learned work, *Annali dell' Islam*, of which the first volume appeared in 1905, Prince Caetani impugns the authenticity of the tradition and criticises the narrative in detail (p. 279 sqq.), but his arguments do not touch the main question. As Muir says, "it is hardly possible to conceive how the tale, if not founded in truth, could ever have been invented."

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Henceforth he "wages mortal strife with images in every shape"—there is no god but Allah.

The further course of events which culminated in Muḥammad's Flight to Medína may be sketched in a few words. Persecution now waxed hotter than ever, as the Prophet, rising from his temporary vacillation like a giant refreshed, threw his whole force into the denunciation of idolatry. The conversion of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb, the future Caliph, a man of 'blood and iron,' gave the signal for open revolt. "The Moslems no longer concealed their worship within their own dwellings, but with conscious strength and defiant attitude assembled in companies about the Ka'ba, performed their rites of prayer and compassed the Holy House. Their courage rose. Dread and uneasiness seized the Quraysh." The latter retaliated by cutting off all relations with the Háshimites, who were pledged to defend their kinsman, whether they recognised him as a prophet or no. This ban or boycott secluded them in an outlying quarter of the city, where for more than two years they endured the utmost privations, but it only cemented their loyalty to Muḥammad, and ultimately dissensions among the Quraysh themselves caused it to be removed. Shortly afterwards the Prophet suffered a double bereavement—the death of his wife, Khadíja, was followed by that of the noble Abú Ṭálib, who, though he never accepted Islam, stood firm to the last in defence of his brother's son. Left alone to protect himself, Muḥammad realised that he must take some decisive step. The situation was critical. Events had shown that he had nothing to hope and everything to fear from the Meccan aristocracy. He had warned them again and again of the wrath to come, yet they gave no heed. He was now convinced that they would not and could not believe, since God in His inscrutable wisdom had predestined them to eternal damnation. Consequently he resolved on a bold and, according to Arab ways of thinking, abominable expedient,

Death of Khadíja and Abú Ṭálib.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

namely, to abandon his fellow-tribesmen and seek aid from strangers.[1] Having vainly appealed to the inhabitants of Ṭá'if, he turned to Medína, where, among a population largely composed of Jews, the revolutionary ideas of Islam might more readily take root and flourish than in the Holy City of Arabian heathendom. This time he was not disappointed. A strong party in Medína hailed him as the true Prophet, eagerly embraced his creed, and swore to defend him at all hazards. In the spring of the year 622 A.D. the Moslems of Mecca quietly left their homes and journeyed northward. A few months later (September, 622) Muḥammad himself, eluding the vigilance of the Quraysh, entered Medína in triumph amidst the crowds and acclamations due to a conqueror.

The *Hijra* or Flight to Medína (622 A.D.).

This is the celebrated Flight or Hegira (properly *Hijra*) which marks the end of the Barbaric Age (*al-Jáhiliyya*) and the beginning of the Muḥammadan Era. It also marks a new epoch in the Prophet's history; but before attempting to indicate the nature of the change it will be convenient, in order that we may form a juster conception of his character, to give some account of his early teaching and preaching as set forth in that portion of the Koran which was revealed at Mecca.

[1] The Meccan view of Muḥammad's action may be gathered from the words uttered by Abú Jahl on the field of Badr—"O God, bring woe upon him who more than any of us hath severed the ties of kinship and dealt dishonourably!" (Ṭabarí, i, 1322, l. 8 seq.). Alluding to the Moslems who abandoned their native city and fled with the Prophet to Medína, a Meccan poet exclaims (Ibn Hishám, p. 519, ll. 3–5):—

They (the Quraysh slain at Badr) *fell in honour. They did not sell their kinsmen for strangers living in a far land and of remote lineage;*
Unlike you, who have made friends of Ghassán (the people of Medína), *taking them instead of us—O, what a shameful deed!*
'Tis an impiety and a manifest crime and a cutting of all ties of blood: your iniquity therein is discerned by men of judgment and understanding.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Koran (Qur'án) is derived from the Arabic root *qara'a*, 'to read,' and means 'reading aloud' or 'chanting.' This term may be applied either to a single Revelation or to several recited together or, in its usual acceptation, to the whole body of Revelations which are thought by Moslems to be, actually and literally, the Word of God; so that in quoting from the Koran they say *qála 'lláhu*, *i.e.*, 'God said.' Each Revelation forms a separate *Súra* (chapter)[1] composed of verses of varying length which have no metre but are generally rhymed. Thus, as regards its external features, the style of the Koran is modelled upon the *Saj'*,[2] or rhymed prose, of the pagan soothsayers, but with such freedom that it may fairly be described as original. Since it was not in Muḥammad's power to create a form that should be absolutely new, his choice lay between *Saj'* and poetry, the only forms of elevated style then known to the Arabs. He himself declared that he was no poet,[3] and this is true in the sense that he may have lacked the technical accomplishment of verse-making. It must, however, be borne in mind that his disavowal does not refer primarily to the poetic art, but rather to the person and character of the poets themselves. He, the divinely inspired Prophet, could have nothing to do with men who owed their inspiration to demons and gloried in the ideals of paganism which he was striving to overthrow. "*And the poets do those follow who go astray! Dost thou not see that they wander distraught in every vale? and that they say that which they do not?*" (Kor. xxvi, 224–226). Muḥammad was not of these; although he was not so unlike them as he pretended. His kinship with the pagan *Shá'ir* is clearly shown, for example, in the 113th and 114th Súras, which are charms against magic and *diablerie*, as well as in the solemn imprecation calling down destruction upon the head of his uncle, 'Abdu 'l-'Uzzá, nicknamed Abú Lahab (Father of Flame).

The Koran.

Was Muḥammad poet?

[1] *Súra* is properly a row of stones or bricks in a wall.
[2] See p. 74 *supra*. [3] Koran, lxix, 41.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

THE SÚRA OF ABÚ LAHAB (CXI).

(1) Perish the hands of Abú Lahab and perish he!
(2) His wealth shall not avail him nor all he hath gotten in fee.
(3) Burned in blazing fire he shall be!
(4) And his wife, the faggot-bearer, also she:
(5) Upon her neck a cord of fibres of the palm-tree.

If, then, we must allow that Muḥammad's contemporaries had some justification for bestowing upon him the title of poet against which he protested so vehemently, still less can his plea be accepted by the modern critic, whose verdict will be that the Koran is not poetical as a whole; that it contains many pages of rhetoric and much undeniable prose; but that, although Muḥammad needed "heaven-sent moments for this skill," in the early Meccan Súras frequently, and fitfully elsewhere, his genius proclaims itself by grand lyrical outbursts which could never have been the work of a mere rhetorician.

The Meccan Súras.

"Muhammad's single aim in the Meccan Súras," says Nöldeke, "is to convert the people, by means of persuasion, from their false gods to the One God. To whatever point the discourse is directed, this always remains the ground-thought; but instead of seeking to convince the reason of his hearers by logical proofs, he employs the arts of rhetoric to work upon their minds through the imagination. Thus he glorifies God, describes His working in Nature and History, and ridicules on the other hand the impotence of the idols. Especially important are the descriptions of the everlasting bliss of the pious and the torments of the wicked: these, particularly the latter, must be regarded as one of the mightiest factors in the propagation of Islam, through the impression which they make on the imagination of simple men who have not been hardened, from their youth up, by similar theological ideas. The Prophet often attacks his heathen adversaries personally and threatens them with eternal punishment; but while he is living among heathens alone, he seldom assails the Jews who stand much nearer to him, and the Christians scarcely ever."[1]

[1] Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qorâns*, p. 56.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft

The preposterous arrangement of the Koran, to which I have already adverted, is mainly responsible for the opinion almost unanimously held by European readers that it is obscure, tiresome, uninteresting; a farrago of long-winded narratives and prosaic exhortations, quite unworthy to be named in the same breath with the Prophetical Books of the Old Testament. One may, indeed, peruse the greater part of the volume, beginning with the first chapter, and find but a few passages of genuine enthusiasm to relieve the prevailing dulness. It is in the short Súras placed at the end of the Koran that we must look for evidence of Muḥammad's prophetic gift. These are the earliest of all; in these the flame of inspiration burns purely and its natural force is not abated. The following versions, like those which have preceded, imitate the original form as closely, I think, as is possible in English. They cannot, of course, do more than faintly suggest the striking effect of the sonorous Arabic when read aloud. The Koran was designed for oral recitation, and it must be *heard* in order to be justly appraised.

THE SÚRA OF THE SEVERING (LXXXII).

(1) When the Sky shall be severèd,
(2) And when the Stars shall be shiverèd,
(3) And when the Seas to mingle shall be sufferèd,
(4) And when the Graves shall be uncoverèd—
(5) A soul shall know that which it hath deferred or deliverèd.[1]
(6) O Man, what beguiled thee against thy gracious Master to rebel,
(7) Who created thee and fashioned thee right and thy frame did fairly build?
(8) He composed thee in whatever form He willed.
(9) Nay, but ye disbelieve in the Ordeal![2]
(10) Verily over you are Recorders honourable,
(11) Your deeds inscribing without fail:[3]

---

[1] *I.e.*, what it has done or left undone.

[2] The Last Judgment.

[3] Moslems believe that every man is attended by two Recording Angels who write down his good and evil actions.

12

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

(12) What ye do they know well.
(13) Surely the pious in delight shall dwell,
(14) And surely the wicked shall be in Hell,
(15) Burning there on the Day of Ordeal;
(16) And evermore Hell-fire they shall feel!
(17) What shall make thee to understand what is the Day of Ordeal?
(18) Again, what shall make thee to understand what is the Day of Ordeal?—
(19) A Day when one soul shall not obtain anything for another soul, but the command on that Day shall be with God alone.

THE SÚRA OF THE SIGNS (LXXXV).

(1) By the Heaven in which Signs are set,
(2) By the Day that is promisèd,
(3) By the Witness and the Witnessèd:—
(4) Cursèd be the Fellows of the Pit, they that spread
(5) The fire with fuel fed,
(6) When they sate by its head
(7) And saw how their contrivance against the Believers sped;[1]
(8) And they punished them not save that they believed on God, the Almighty, the Glorified,
(9) To whom is the Kingdom of Heaven and Earth, and He seeth every thing beside.
(10) Verily, for those who afflict believing men and women and repent not, the torment of Gehenna and the torment of burning is prepared.
(11) Verily, for those who believe and work righteousness are Gardens beneath which rivers flow: this is the great Reward.
(12) Stern is the vengeance of thy Lord.
(13) He createth the living and reviveth the dead:
(14) He doth pardon and kindly entreat:
(15) The majestic Throne is His seat:
(16) That he willeth He doeth indeed.
(17) Hath not word come to thee of the multitude
(18) Of Pharaoh, and of Thamúd?[2]

---

[1] This is generally supposed to refer to the persecution of the Christians of Najrán by Dhú Nuwás (see p. 26 *supra*). Geiger takes it as an allusion to the three men who were cast into the fiery furnace (Daniel, ch. iii).

[2] See above, p. 3.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

(19) Nay, the infidels cease not from falsehood,
(20) But God encompasseth them about.
(21) Surely, it is a Sublime Koran that ye read,
(22) On a Table inviolate.[1]

THE SÚRA OF THE SMITING (CI).

(1) The Smiting! What is the Smiting?
(2) And how shalt thou be made to understand what is the Smiting?
(3) The Day when Men shall be as flies scatterèd,
(4) And the Mountains shall be as shreds of wool tatterèd.
(5) One whose Scales are heavy, a pleasing life he shall spend,
(6) But one whose Scales are light, to the Abyss he shall descend.
(7) What that is, how shalt thou be made to comprehend?
(8) Scorching Fire without end!

THE SÚRA OF THE UNBELIEVERS (CIX).

(1) Say: 'O Unbelievers,
(2) I worship not that which ye worship,
(3) And ye worship not that which I worship.
(4) Neither will I worship that which ye worship,
(5) Nor will ye worship that which I worship.
(6) Ye have your religion and I have my religion.'

To summarise the cardinal doctrines preached by Muḥammad during the Meccan period :—

The teaching of Muḥammad at Mecca.

1. There is no god but God.

2. Muḥammad is the Apostle of God, and the Koran is the Word of God revealed to His Apostle.

3. The dead shall be raised to life at the Last Judgment, when every one shall be judged by his actions in the present life.

4. The pious shall enter Paradise and the wicked shall go down to Hell.

Taking these doctrines separately, let us consider a little more in detail how each of them is stated and by what arguments it is enforced. The time had not yet come for drawing

[1] According to Muḥammadan belief, the archetype of the Koran and of all other Revelations is written on the Guarded Table (*al-Lawḥ al-Maḥfúẓ*) in heaven.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the sword : Muḥammad repeats again and again that he is only a warner (*nadhír*) invested with no authority to compel where he cannot persuade.

The Unity of God.

1. The Meccans acknowledged the supreme position of Allah, but in ordinary circumstances neglected him in favour of their idols, so that, as Muḥammad complains, "*When danger befalls you on the sea, the gods whom ye invoke are forgotten except Him alone; yet when He brought you safe to land, ye turned your backs on Him, for Man is ungrateful.*"[1] They were strongly attached to the cult of the Ka'ba, not only by self-interest, but also by the more respectable motives of piety towards their ancestors and pride in their traditions. Muḥammad himself regarded Allah as Lord of the Ka'ba, and called upon the Quraysh to worship him as such (Kor. cvi, 3). When they refused to do so on the ground that they were afraid lest the Arabs should rise against them and drive them forth from the land, he assured them that Allah was the author of all their prosperity (Kor. xxviii, 57). His main argument, however, is drawn from the weakness of the idols, which cannot create even a fly, contrasted with the wondrous manifestations of Divine power and providence in the creation of the heavens and the earth and all living things.[2]

It was probably towards the close of the Meccan period that Muḥammad summarised his Unitarian ideas in the following emphatic formula :—

THE SÚRA OF PURIFICATION (CXII).[3]

(1) Say: 'God is One;
(2) God who liveth on;
(3) Without father and without son;
(4) And like to Him there is none!'

[1] Koran, xvii, 69.

[2] See, for example, the passages translated by Lane in his *Selections from the Kur-án* (London, 1843), pp. 100–113.

[3] *Ikhláṣ* means 'purifying one's self of belief in any god except Allah.'

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Muḥammad, the Apostle of God.

2. We have seen that when Muḥammed first appeared as a prophet he was thought by all except a very few to be *majnún*, *i.e.*, possessed by a *jinní*, or genie, if I may use a word which will send the reader back to his *Arabian Nights*. The heathen Arabs regarded such persons—soothsayers, diviners, and poets—with a certain respect; and if Muḥammad's 'madness' had taken a normal course, his claim to inspiration would have passed unchallenged. What moved the Quraysh to oppose him was not disbelief in his inspiration—it mattered little to them whether he was under the spell of Allah or one of the *Jinn*—but the fact that he preached doctrines which wounded their sentiments, threatened their institutions, and subverted the most cherished traditions of old Arabian life. But in order successfully to resist the propaganda for which he alleged a Divine warrant, they were obliged to meet him on his own ground and to maintain that he was no prophet at all, no Apostle of Allah, as he asserted, but "an insolent liar," "a schooled madman," "an infatuated poet," and so forth; and that his Koran, which he gave out to be the Word of Allah, was merely "old folks' tales" (*asáṭíru 'l-awwalín*), or the invention of a poet or a sorcerer. "Is not he," they cried, "a man like ourselves, who wishes to domineer over us? Let him show us a miracle, that we may believe." Muḥammad could only reiterate his former assertions and warn the infidels that a terrible punishment was in store for them either in this world or the next. Time after time he compares himself to the ancient prophets—Noah, Abraham, Moses, and their successors—who are represented as employing exactly the same arguments and receiving the same answers as Muḥammad; and bids his people hearken to him lest they utterly perish like the ungodly before them. The truth of the Koran is proved, he says, by the Pentateuch and the Gospel, all being Revelations of the One God, and therefore identical in substance. He is no mercenary soothsayer, he seeks no

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

personal advantage: his mission is solely to preach. The demand for a miracle he could not satisfy except by pointing to his visions of the Angel and especially to the Koran itself, every verse of which was a distinct sign or miracle (*áyat*).[1] If he has forged it, why are his adversaries unable to produce anything similar? "*Say: 'If men and genies united to bring the like of this Koran, they could not bring the like although they should back each other up'*" (Kor. xvii, 90).

Resurrection and Retribution.

3. Such notions of a future life as were current in Pre-islamic Arabia never rose beyond vague and barbarous superstition, *e.g.*, the fancy that the dead man's tomb was haunted by his spirit in the shape of a screeching owl.[2] No wonder, then, that the ideas of Resurrection and Retribution, which are enforced by threats and arguments on almost every page of the Koran, appeared to the Meccan idolaters absurdly ridiculous and incredible. "*Does Ibn Kabsha promise us that we shall live?*" said one of their poets. "*How can there be life for the ṣadá and the háma? Dost thou omit to ward me from death, and wilt thou revive me when my bones are rotten?*"[3] God provided His Apostle with a ready answer to these gibes: "*Say: 'He shall revive them who produced them at first, for He knoweth every*

[1] The Prophet's confession of his inability to perform miracles did not deter his followers from inventing them after his death. Thus it was said that he caused the infidels to see "the moon cloven asunder" (Koran, liv, 1), though, as is plain from the context, these words refer to one of the signs of the Day of Judgment.

[2] I take this opportunity of calling the reader's attention to a most interesting article by my friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, entitled *The Beliefs of Early Mohammedans respecting a Future Existence* (*Journal of Theological Studies*, October, 1904, p. 20 sqq.), where the whole subject is fully discussed.

[3] Shaddád b. al-Aswad al-Laythí, quoted in the *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* of Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí (see my article in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1902, pp. 94 and 818); *cf.* Ibn Hishám, p. 530, last line. Ibn (Abí) Kabsha was a nickname derisively applied to Muḥammad. *Ṣadá* and *háma* refer to the death-bird which was popularly supposed to utter its shriek from the skull (*háma*) of the dead, and both words may be rendered by 'soul' or 'wraith.'

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

creation" (Kor. xxxvi, 79). This topic is eloquently illustrated, but Muḥammad's hearers were probably less impressed by the creative power of God as exhibited in Nature and in Man than by the awful examples, to which reference has been made, of His destructive power as manifested in History. To Muḥammad himself, at the outset of his mission, it seemed an appalling certainty that he must one day stand before God and render an account; the overmastering sense of his own responsibility goaded him to preach in the hope of saving his countrymen, and supplied him, weak and timorous as he was, with strength to endure calumny and persecution. As Nöldeke has remarked, the grandest Súras of the whole Koran are those in which Muḥammad describes how all Nature trembles and quakes at the approach of the Last Judgment. "It is as though one actually saw the earth heaving, the mountains crumbling to dust, and the stars hurled hither and thither in wild confusion."[1] Súras lxxxii and ci, which have been translated above, are specimens of the true prophetic style.[2]

The Muḥammadan Paradise.

4. There is nothing spiritual in Muḥammad's pictures of Heaven and Hell. His Paradise is simply a glorified pleasure-garden, where the pious repose in cool shades, quaffing spicy wine and diverting themselves with the Houris (*Ḥúr*), lovely dark-eyed damsels like pearls hidden in their shells.[3] This was admirably calculated to allure his hearers by reminding them of one of their chief enjoyments—the gay drinking parties which occasionally broke the monotony of Arabian life, and which are often described in Pre-islamic poetry; indeed, it is highly probable that Muḥammad drew a good deal of his Paradise from this source. The gross and sensual character of the Muḥammadan Afterworld is commonly thought to betray a particular weak-

[1] Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qorâns*, p. 78.

[2] *Cf.* also Koran, xviii, 45–47; xx, 102 sqq.; xxxix, 67 sqq.; lxix, 13–37.

[3] The famous freethinker, Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí, has cleverly satirised Muḥammadan notions on this subject in his *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* (*J.R.A.S.* for October, 1900, p. 637 sqq.).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

ness of the Prophet or is charged to the Arabs in general, but as Professor Bevan has pointed out, "the real explanation seems to be that at first the idea of a future retribution was absolutely new both to Muḥammad himself and to the public which he addressed. Paradise and Hell had no traditional associations, and the Arabic language furnished no religious terminology for the expression of such ideas; if they were to be made comprehensible at all, it could only be done by means of precise descriptions, of imagery borrowed from earthly affairs." [1]

Prayer.

Muḥammad was no mere visionary. Ritual observances, vigils, and other austerities entered largely into his religion, endowing it with the formal and ascetic character which it retains to the present day. Prayer was introduced soon after the first Revelations: in one of the oldest (Súra lxxxvii, 14–15) we read, "*Prosperous is he who purifies himself* (or *gives alms*) *and repeats the name of his Lord and prays.*" Although the five daily prayers obligatory upon every true believer are nowhere mentioned in the Koran, the opening chapter (*Súratu 'l-Fátiḥa*), which answers to our Lord's Prayer, is constantly recited on these occasions, and is seldom omitted from any act of public or private devotion. Since the *Fátiḥa* probably belongs to the latest Meccan period, it may find a place here.

THE OPENING SÚRA (I).

(1) In the name of God, the Merciful, who forgiveth aye!
(2) Praise to God, the Lord of all that be,
(3) The Merciful, who forgiveth aye,
(4) The King of Judgment Day!
(5) Thee we worship and for Thine aid we pray.
(6) Lead us in the right way,
(7) The way of those to whom thou hast been gracious, against whom thou hast not waxed wroth, and who go not astray!

[1] *Journal of Theological Studies* for October, 1904, p. 22.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

About the same time, shortly before the Flight, Muḥammad dreamed that he was transported from the Ka'ba to the Temple at Jerusalem, and thence up to the seventh heaven. The former part of the vision is indicated in the Koran (xvii, 1): "*Glory to him who took His servant a journey by night from the Sacred Mosque to the Farthest Mosque, the precinct whereof we have blessed, to show him of our signs!*" Tradition has wondrously embellished the *Mi'ráj*, by which name the Ascension of the Prophet is generally known throughout the East; while in Persia and Turkey it has long been a favourite theme for the mystic and the poet. According to the popular belief, which is also held by the majority of Moslem divines, Muḥammad was transported in the body to his journey's end, but he himself never countenanced this literal interpretation, though it seems to have been current in Mecca, and we are told that it caused some of his incredulous followers to abandon their faith.

The Night journey and Ascension of Muḥammad.

Possessed and inspired by the highest idea of which man is capable, fearlessly preaching the truth revealed to him, leading almost alone what long seemed to be a forlorn hope against the impregnable stronghold of superstition, yet facing these tremendous odds with a calm resolution which yielded nothing to ridicule or danger, but defied his enemies to do their worst—Muḥammad in the early part of his career presents a spectacle of grandeur which cannot fail to win our sympathy and admiration. At Medína, whither we must now return, he appears in a far less favourable light: the days of pure religious enthusiasm have passed away for ever, and the Prophet is overshadowed by the Statesman. The Flight was undoubtedly essential to the establishment of Islam. It was necessary that Muḥammad should cut himself off from his own people in order that he might found a community in which not blood but religion formed the sole bond that was recognised. This task he

Muḥammad at Medína.

Univ Calif · Digitized by Microsoft ®

accomplished with consummate sagacity and skill, but the unscrupulous methods in which he indulged have left a dark stain on his reputation. As the supreme head of the Moslem theocracy both in spiritual and temporal matters—for Islam allows no distinction between Church and State—he exercised all the authority of a mediæval Pope, and he did not hesitate to justify by Divine mandate acts of which the heathen Arabs, cruel and treacherous as they were, would have been ashamed to be guilty. We need not inquire how much was due to self-deception and how much to pious fraud. Although his vices, which were those of his age and country, may be condoned or at least palliated, it revolts us to see him introducing God Almighty in the rôle of devil's advocate.

Medína predisposed to welcome Muḥammad as Legislator and Prophet.

The conditions prevailing at Medína were singularly adapted to his design. Ever since the famous battle of Bu'áth (about 615 A.D.), in which the Banú Aws, with the help of their Jewish allies, the Banú Qurayẓa and the Banú Naḍír, inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Banú Khazraj, the city had been divided into two hostile camps; and if peace had hitherto been preserved, it was only because both factions were too exhausted to renew the struggle. Wearied and distracted by earthly calamities, men's minds willingly admit the consolations of religion. We find examples of this tendency at Medína even before the Flight. Abú 'Ámir, whose ascetic life gained for him the title of 'The Monk' (*al-Ráhib*), is numbered among the *Ḥanífs*.[1] He fought in the ranks of the Quraysh at Uḥud, and finally went to Syria, where he died an outlaw. Another Pre-islamic monotheist of Medína, Abú Qays b. Abí Anas, is said to have turned Moslem in his old age.[2]

"The inhabitants of Medína had no material interest in idol-worship and no sanctuary to guard. Through uninterrupted contact with the Jews of the city and neighbourhood, as also with the Christian tribes settled in the extreme north of Arabia on

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 411, l. 6 sqq. [2] *Ibid.*, p. 347.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the confines of the Byzantine Empire, they had learned, as it were instinctively, to despise their inherited belief in idols and to respect the far nobler and purer faith in a single God ; and lastly, they had become accustomed to the idea of a Divine revelation by means of a special scripture of supernatural origin, like the Pentateuch and the Gospel. From a religious standpoint paganism in Medína offered no resistance to Islam : as a faith, it was dead before it was attacked ; none defended it, none mourned its disappearance. The pagan opposition to Muḥammad's work as a reformer was entirely political, and proceeded from those who wished to preserve the anarchy of the old heathen life, and who disliked the dictatorial rule of Muhammad."[1]

Parties in Medína.

There were in Medína four principal parties, consisting of those who either warmly supported or actively opposed the Prophet, or who adopted a relatively neutral attitude, viz., the Refugees (*Muhájirún*), the Helpers (*Anṣár*), the Hypocrites (*Munáfiqún*), and the Jews (*Yahúd*).

The Refugees.

The Refugees were those Moslems who left their homes at Mecca and accompanied the Prophet in his Flight (*Hijra*) —whence their name, *Muhájirún*—to Medína in the year 622. Inasmuch as they had lost everything except the hope of victory and vengeance, he could count upon their fanatical devotion to himself.

The Helpers.

The Helpers were those inhabitants of Medína who had accepted Islam and pledged themselves to protect Muḥammad in case of attack. Together with the Refugees they constituted a formidable and ever-increasing body of true believers, the first champions of the Church militant.

The Hypocrites.

"Many citizens of Medína, however, were not so well disposed towards Muḥammad, and neither acknowledged him as a Prophet nor would submit to him as their Ruler ; but since they durst not come forward against him openly on account of the multitude of his enthusiastic adherents, they met him with a passive resistance which more than once thwarted his plans :

[1] L. Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, p. 389.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

their influence was so great that he, on his part, did not venture to take decisive measures against them, and sometimes even found it necessary to give way." [1]

These are the Hypocrites whom Muḥammad describes in the following verses of the Koran :—

THE SÚRA OF THE HEIFER (II).

(7) And there are those among men who say, 'We believe in God and in the Last Day'; but they do not believe.
(8) They would deceive God and those who do believe; but they deceive only themselves and they do not perceive.
(9) In their hearts is a sickness, and God has made them still more sick, and for them is grievous woe because they lied. [2]

Their leader, 'Abdulláh b. Ubayy, an able man but of weak character, was no match for Muḥammad, whom he and his partisans only irritated, without ever becoming really dangerous.

The Jews.

The Jews, on the other hand, gave the Prophet serious trouble. At first he cherished high hopes that they would accept the new Revelation which he brought to them, and which he maintained to be the original Word of God as it was formerly revealed to Abraham and Moses; but when the Jews, perceiving the absurdity of this idea, plied him with all sorts of questions and made merry over his ignorance, Muḥammad, keenly alive to the damaging effect of the criticism to which he had exposed himself, turned upon his tormentors, and roundly accused them of having falsified and corrupted their Holy Books. Henceforth he pursued them with a deadly hatred against which their political disunion rendered them helpless. A few sought refuge in Islam; the rest were either slaughtered or driven into exile.

It is impossible to detail here the successive steps by which

[1] Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qorâns*, p. 122.
[2] Translated by E. H. Palmer.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Muḥammad in the course of a few years overcame all opposition and established the supremacy of Islam from one end of Arabia to the other. I shall notice the outstanding events very briefly in order to make room for matters which are more nearly connected with the subject of this History.

Beginnings of the Moslem State.

Muḥammad's first care was to reconcile the desperate factions within the city and to introduce law and order among the heterogeneous elements which have been described. "He drew up in writing a charter between the Refugees and the Helpers, in which charter he embodied a covenant with the Jews, confirming them in the exercise of their religion and in the possession of their properties, imposing upon them certain obligations, and granting to them certain rights."[1] This remarkable document is extant in Ibn Hishám's *Biography of Muḥammad*, pp. 341–344. Its contents have been analysed in masterly fashion by Wellhausen,[2] who observes with justice that it was no solemn covenant, accepted and duly ratified by representatives of the parties concerned, but merely a decree of Muḥammad based upon conditions already existing which had developed since his arrival in Medína. At the same time no one can study it without being impressed by the political genius of its author. Ostensibly a cautious and tactful reform, it was in reality a revolution. Muḥammad durst not strike openly at the independence of the tribes, but he destroyed it, in effect, by shifting the centre of power from the tribe to the community; and although the community included Jews and pagans as well as Moslems, he fully recognised, what his opponents failed to foresee, that the Moslems were the active, and must soon be the predominant, partners in the newly founded State.

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 341, l. 5.

[2] *Muḥammad's Gemeindeordnung von Medina* in *Skizzen und Vorarbeiten*, Heft IV, p. 67 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

All was now ripe for the inevitable struggle with the Quraysh, and God revealed to His Apostle several verses of the Koran in which the Faithful are commanded to wage a Holy War against them: "*Permission is given to those who fight because they have been wronged,—and verily God to help them has the might,—who have been driven forth from their homes undeservedly, only for that they said, 'Our Lord is God'*" (xxii, 40–41). "*Kill them wherever ye find them, and drive them out from whence they drive you out*" (ii, 187). "*Fight them that there be no sedition and that the religion may be God's*" (ii, 189). In January, 624 A.D., the Moslems, some three hundred strong, won a glorious victory at Badr over a greatly superior force which had marched out from Mecca to relieve a rich caravan that Muḥammad threatened to cut off. The Quraysh fought bravely, but were borne down by the irresistible onset of men who had learned discipline in the mosque and looked upon death as a sure passport to Paradise. Of the Moslems only fourteen fell; the Quraysh lost forty-nine killed and about the same number of prisoners. But the importance of Muḥammad's success cannot be measured by the material damage which he inflicted. Considering the momentous issues involved, we must allow that Badr, like Marathon, is one of the greatest and most memorable battles in all history. Here, at last, was the miracle which the Prophet's enemies demanded of him: "*Ye have had a sign in the two parties who met; one party fighting in the way of God, the other misbelieving; these saw twice the same number as themselves to the eye-sight, for God aids with His help those whom He pleases. Verily in that is a lesson for those who have perception*" (Kor. iii, 11). And again, "*Ye slew them not, but God slew them*" (Kor. viii, 17). The victory of Badr turned all eyes upon Muḥammad. However little the Arabs cared for his religion, they could not but respect the man who had humbled the lords of Mecca. He was now a power in the land—

Battle of Badr, January, 624 A.D.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"Muḥammad, King of the Ḥijáz."[1] In Medína his cause flourished mightily. The zealots were confirmed in their faith, the waverers convinced, the disaffected overawed. He sustained a serious, though temporary, check in the following year at Uḥud, where a Moslem army was routed by the Quraysh under Abú Sufyán, but the victors were satisfied with having taken vengeance for Badr and made no attempt to follow up their advantage; while Muḥammad, never resting on his laurels, never losing sight of the goal, proceeded with remorseless calculation to crush his adversaries one after the other, until in January, 630 A.D., the Meccans themselves, seeing the futility of further resistance, opened their gates to the Prophet and acknowledged the omnipotence of Allah. The submission of the Holy City left Muḥammad without a rival in Arabia. His work was almost done. Deputations from the Bedouin tribes poured into Medína, offering allegiance to the conqueror of the Quraysh, and reluctantly subscribing to a religion in which they saw nothing so agreeable as the prospect of plundering its enemies.

Battle of Uḥud, 625 A.D.

Submission of Mecca, 630 A.D.

Muḥammad died, after a brief illness, on the 8th of June, 632 A.D. He was succeeded as head of the Moslem community by his old friend and ever-loyal supporter, Abú Bakr, who thus became the first *Khalífa*, or Caliph. It only remains to take up our survey of the Koran, which we have carried down to the close of the Meccan period, and to indicate the character and contents of the Revelation during the subsequent decade.

Death of Muḥammad, 632 A.D.

The Medína Súras faithfully reflect the marvellous change in Muḥammad's fortunes, which began with his flight from Mecca. He was now recognised as the Prophet and Apostle of God, but this recognition made him an earthly potentate and turned his religious activity into secular channels. One

[1] Ibn Hishám, p. 763, l. 12.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

who united in himself the parts of prince, legislator, politician, diplomatist, and general may be excused if he sometimes neglected the Divine injunction to arise and preach, or at any rate interpreted it in a sense very different from that which he formerly attached to it.

The Medína Súras.

The Revelations of this time deal, to a large extent, with matters of legal, social, and political interest; they promulgate religious ordinances—*e.g.*, fasting, alms-giving, and pilgrimage—expound the laws of marriage and divorce, and comment upon the news of the day; often they serve as bulletins or manifestoes in which Muḥammad justifies what he has done, urges the Moslems to fight and rebukes the laggards, moralises on a victory or defeat, proclaims a truce, and says, in short, whatever the occasion seems to require. Instead of the Meccan idolaters, his opponents in Medína—the Jews and Hypocrites—have become the great rocks of offence; the Jews especially are denounced in long passages as a stiff-necked generation who never hearkened to their own prophets of old. However valuable historically, the Medína Súras do not attract the literary reader. In their flat and tedious style they resemble those of the later Meccan period. Now and again the ashes burst into flame, though such moments of splendour are increasingly rare, as in the famous 'Throne-verse' (*Áyatu 'l-Kursí*):—

"God, there is no god but He, the living, the self-subsistent. Slumber takes Him not, nor sleep. His is what is in the heavens and what is in the earth. Who is it that intercedes with Him save by His permission? He knows what is before them and what behind them, and they comprehend not aught of His knowledge but of what He pleases. His throne extends over the heavens and the earth, and it tires Him not to guard them both, for He is high and grand."[1]

The 'Throne-verse.'

The Islam which Muḥammad brought with him to Medína was almost entirely derived by oral tradition from Christianity

[1] Koran, ii, 256, translated by E. H. Palmer.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and Judaism, and just for this reason it made little impression on the heathen Arabs, whose religious ideas were generally of the most primitive kind. Notwithstanding its foreign character and the absence of anything which appealed to Arabian national sentiment, it spread rapidly in Medína, where, as we have seen, the soil was already prepared for it; but one may well doubt whether it could have extended its sway over the peninsula unless the course of events had determined Muḥammad to associate the strange doctrines of Islam with the ancient heathen sanctuary at Mecca, the Ka'ba, which was held in universal veneration by the Arabs and formed the centre of a worship that raised no difficulties in their minds. Before he had lived many months in Medína the Prophet realised that his hope of converting the Jews was doomed to disappointment. Accordingly he instructed his followers that they should no longer turn their faces in prayer towards the Temple at Jerusalem, as they had been accustomed to do since the Flight, but towards the Ka'ba; while, a year or two later, he incorporated in Islam the superstitious ceremonies of the pilgrimage, which were represented as having been originally prescribed to Abraham, the legendary founder of the Ka'ba, whose religion he professed to restore.

The nationalisation of Islam.

These concessions, however, were far from sufficient to reconcile the free-living and free-thinking people of the desert to a religion which restrained their pleasures, forced them to pay taxes and perform prayers, and stamped with the name of barbarism all the virtues they held most dear. The teaching of Islam ran directly counter to the ideals and traditions of heathendom, and, as Goldziher has remarked, its originality lies not in its doctrines, which are Jewish and Christian, but in the fact that it was Muḥammad who first maintained these doctrines with persistent energy against the Arabian view of life.[1] While we must refer the reader to Dr.

[1] *Muhamm. Studien*, Part I, p. 12.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Goldziher's illuminating pages for a full discussion of the conflict between the new Religion (*Dín*) and the old Virtue (*Muruwwa*), it will not be amiss to summarise the chief points at which they clashed with each other.[1] In the first place, the fundamental idea of Islam was foreign and unintelligible to the Bedouins. "It was not the destruction of their idols that they opposed so much as the spirit of devotion which it was sought to implant in them : the determination of their whole lives by the thought of God and of His pre-ordaining and retributive omnipotence, the prayers and fasts, the renouncement of coveted pleasures, and the sacrifice of money and property which was demanded of them in God's name." In spite of the saying, *Lá dína illá bi 'l-muruwwati* ("There is no religion without virtue"), the Bedouin who accepted Islam had to unlearn the greater part of his unwritten moral code. As a pious Moslem he must return good for evil, forgive his enemy, and find balm for his wounded feelings in the assurance of being admitted to Paradise (Kor. iii, 128). Again, the social organisation of the heathen Arabs was based on the tribe, whereas that of Islam rested on the equality and fraternity of all believers. The religious bond cancelled all distinctions of rank and pedigree ; it did away, theoretically, with clannish feuds, contests for honour, pride of race—things that lay at the very root of Arabian chivalry. "*Lo*," cried Muḥammad, "*the noblest of you in the sight of God is he who most doth fear Him*" (Kor. xlix, 13). Against such doctrine the conservative and material instincts of the desert people rose in revolt ; and although they became Moslems *en masse*, the majority of them neither believed in Islam nor knew what it meant. Often their motives were frankly utilitarian : they expected that Islam would bring them luck ; and so long as they were sound in body, and their mares had fine foals, and

Antagonism of Islamic and Arabian ideals.

[1] See Goldziher's introductory chapter entitled *Muruwwa und Dîn* (*ibid.*, pp. 1–39).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

their wives bore well-formed sons, and their wealth and herds multiplied, they said, "We have been blessed ever since we adopted this religion," and were content; but if things went ill they blamed Islam and turned their backs on it.[1] That these men were capable of religious zeal is amply proved by the triumphs which they won a short time afterwards over the disciplined armies of two mighty empires; but what chiefly inspired them, apart from love of booty, was the conviction, born of success, that Allah was fighting on their side.

We have sketched, however barely and imperfectly, the progress of Islam from Muḥammad's first appearance as a preacher to the day of his death. In these twenty years the seeds were sown of almost every development which occurs in the political and intellectual history of the Arabs during the ages to come. More than any man that has ever lived, Muḥammad shaped the destinies of his people; and though they left him far behind as they moved along the path of civilisation, they still looked back to him for guidance and authority at each step. This is not the place to attempt an estimate of his character, which has been so diversely judged. Personally, I feel convinced that he was neither a shameless impostor nor a neurotic degenerate nor a socialistic reformer, but in the beginning, at all events, a sincere religious enthusiast, as truly inspired as any prophet of the Old Testament.

Character of Muḥammad.

"We find in him," writes De Goeje, "that sober understanding which distinguished his fellow-tribesmen: dignity, tact, and equilibrium; qualities which are seldom found in people of morbid constitution: self-control in no small degree. Circumstances changed him from a Prophet to a Legislator and a Ruler, but for himself he sought nothing beyond the acknowledgment that he was Allah's Apostle, since this acknow-

[1] Bayḍáwí on Koran, xxii, 11.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

ledgment includes the whole of Islam. He was excitable, like every true Arab, and in the spiritual struggle which preceded his call this quality was stimulated to an extent that alarmed even himself; but that does not make him a visionary. He defends himself, by the most solemn asseveration, against the charge that what he had seen was an illusion of the senses. Why should not we believe him?"[1]

---

[1] *Die Berufung Mohammed's*, by M. J. de Goeje in *Nöldeke-Festschrift* (Giessen, 1906), vol. i, p. 5.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER V

THE ORTHODOX CALIPHATE AND THE UMAYYAD DYNASTY

The Caliphate—*i.e.*, the period of the Caliphs or Successors of Muḥammad—extends over six centuries and a quarter (632–1258 A.D.), and falls into three clearly-marked divisions of very unequal length and diverse character.

The Orthodox Caliphate (632–661 A.D).

The first division begins with the election of Abú Bakr, the first Caliph, in 632, and comes to an end with the assassination of 'Alí, the Prophet's son-in-law and fourth successor, in 661. These four Caliphs are known as the Orthodox (*al-Ráshidún*), because they trod faithfully in the footsteps of the Prophet and ruled after his example in the holy city of Medína, with the assistance of his leading Companions, who constituted an informal Senate.

The Umayyad Caliphate (661–750 A.D.).

The second division includes the Caliphs of the family of Umayya, from the accession of Mu'áwiya in 661 to the great battle of the Záb in 750, when Marwán II, the last of his line, was defeated by the 'Abbásids, who claimed the Caliphate as next of kin to the Prophet. According to Moslem notions the Umayyads were kings by right, Caliphs only by courtesy. They had, as we shall see, no spiritual title, and little enough religion of any sort. This dynasty, which had been raised and was upheld by the Syrian Arabs, transferred the seat of government from Medína to Damascus.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The third division is by far the longest and most important. Starting in 750 with the accession of Abu 'l-'Abbás al-Saffáḥ, it presents an unbroken series of thirty-seven Caliphs of the same House, and culminates, after the lapse of half a millennium, in the sack of Baghdád, their magnificent capital, by the Mongol Húlágú (January, 1258). The 'Abbásids were no less despotic than the Umayyads, but in a more enlightened fashion; for, while the latter had been purely Arab in feeling, the 'Abbásids owed their throne to the Persian nationalists, and were imbued with Persian ideas, which introduced a new and fruitful element into Moslem civilisation.

The 'Abbásid Caliphate (750–1258 A.D.)

From our special point of view the Orthodox and Umayyad Caliphates, which form the subject of the present chapter, are somewhat barren. The simple life of the pagan Arabs found full expression in their poetry. The many-sided life of the Moslems under 'Abbásid rule may be studied in a copious literature which exhibits all the characteristics of the age; but of contemporary documents illustrating the intellectual history of the early Islamic period comparatively little has been preserved, and that little, being for the most part anti-Islamic in tendency, gives only meagre information concerning what excites interest beyond anything else—the religious movement, the rise of theology, and the origin of those great parties and sects which emerge, at various stages of development, in later literature.

Early Islamic literature.

Since the Moslem Church and State are essentially one, it is impossible to treat of politics apart from religion, nor can religious phenomena be understood without continual reference to political events. The following brief sketch of the Orthodox Caliphate will show how completely this unity was realised, and what far-reaching consequences it had.

Unity of Church and State.

That Muḥammad left no son was perhaps of less moment than his neglect or refusal to nominate a successor. The

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Arabs were unfamiliar with the hereditary descent of kingly power, while the idea had not yet dawned of a Divine right resident in the Prophet's family. It was thoroughly in accord with Arabian practice that the Moslem community should elect its own leader, just as in heathen days the tribe chose its own chief. The likeliest men—all three belonged to Quraysh —were Abú Bakr, whose daughter 'Â'isha had been Muḥammad's favourite wife, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb, and Alí, Abú Ṭálib's son and Fáṭima's husband, who was thus connected with the Prophet by blood as well as by marriage. Abú Bakr was the eldest, he was supported by 'Umar, and on him the choice ultimately fell, though not without an ominous ebullition of party strife. A man of simple tastes and unassuming demeanour, he had earned the name *al-Ṣiddíq*, *i.e.*, the True, by his unquestioning faith in the Prophet; naturally gentle and merciful, he stood firm when the cause of Islam was at stake, and crushed with iron hand the revolt which on the news of Muḥammad's death spread like wildfire through Arabia. False prophets arose, and the Bedouins rallied round them, eager to throw off the burden of tithes and prayers. In the centre of the peninsula, the Banú Ḥanífa were led to battle by Musaylima, who imitated the early style of the Koran with ludicrous effect, if we may judge from the sayings ascribed to him, *e.g.*, "The elephant, what is the elephant, and who shall tell you what is the elephant? He has a poor tail, and a long trunk: and is a trifling part of the creations of thy God." Moslem tradition calls him the Liar (*al-Kadhdháb*), and represents him as an obscene miracle-monger, which can hardly be the whole truth. It is possible that he got some of his doctrines from Christianity, as Professor Margoliouth has suggested,[1] but we know too little about them to arrive at any conclusion. After a desperate struggle Musaylima was defeated

Abú Bakr elected Caliph (June, 632 A.D.).

Musaylima the Liar.

[1] *On the Origin and Import of the Names Muslim and Ḥaníf* (*J.R.A.S.* for 1903, p. 491).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and slain by 'the Sword of Allah,' Khálid b. Walíd. The Moslem arms were everywhere victorious. Arabia bowed in sullen submission.

Islam a world-religion.

Although Muir and other biographers of Muḥammad have argued that Islam was originally designed for the Arabs alone, and made no claim to universal acceptance, their assertion is contradicted by the unequivocal testimony of the Koran itself. In one of the oldest Revelations (lxviii, 51–52), we read: "*It wanteth little but that the unbelievers dash thee to the ground with their looks* (of anger) *when they hear the Warning* (*i.e.*, the Koran); *and they say, 'He is assuredly mad': but it* (the Koran) *is no other than a* WARNING UNTO ALL CREATURES" (*dhikr*^{un} *li 'l-'álamín*).[1] The time had now come when this splendid dream was to be, in large measure, fulfilled. The great wars of conquest were inspired by the Prophet's missionary zeal and justified by his example. Pious duty coincided with reasons of state. "It was certainly good policy to turn the recently subdued tribes of the wilderness towards an external aim in which they might at once satisfy their lust for booty on a grand scale, maintain their warlike feeling, and strengthen themselves in their attachment to the new faith."[2] The story of their achievements cannot be set down here. Suffice it to say that within twelve years after the Prophet's death the Persian Empire had been reduced to a tributary province, and Syria, together with Egypt, torn away from Byzantine rule. It must not be supposed that the followers of Zoroaster and Christ in these countries were forcibly converted to Islam. Thousands embraced it of free will, impelled by various motives which we have no space to enumerate; those who clung to the religion in which they had been brought up

Conquest of Persia and Syria (633–643 A.D.).

Moslem toleration.

[1] See T. W. Arnold's *The Preaching of Islam*, p. 23 seq., where several passages of like import are collected.

[2] Nöldeke, *Sketches from Eastern History*, translated by J. S. Black, p. 73.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

secured protection and toleration by payment of a capitation-tax (*jizya*).[1]

The tide of foreign conquest, which had scarce begun to flow before the death of Abú Bakr, swept with amazing rapidity over Syria and Persia in the Caliphate of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb (634–644), and continued to advance, though with diminished fury, under the Prophet's third successor, 'Uthmán. We may dwell for a little on the noble figure of 'Umar, who was regarded by good Moslems in after times as an embodiment of all the virtues which a Caliph ought to possess. Probably his character has been idealised, but in any case the anecdotes related of him give an admirable picture of the man and his age. Here are a few, taken almost at random from the pages of Ṭabarí.

The Caliph 'Umar (634–644 A.D.).

One said: "I saw 'Umar coming to the Festival. He walked with bare feet, using both hands (for he was ambidextrous) to draw round him a red embroidered cloth. He towered above the people, as though he were on horseback."[2] A client of (the Caliph) 'Uthmán b. 'Affán relates that he mounted behind his patron and they rode together to the enclosure for the beasts which were delivered in payment of the poor-tax. It was an exceedingly hot day and the simoom was blowing fiercely. They saw a man clad only in a loin-cloth and a short cloak (*ridá*), in which he had wrapped his head, driving the camels into the enclosure. 'Uthmán said to his companion, "Who is this, think you?" When they came up to him, behold, it was 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb. "By God," said 'Uthmán, "this is *the strong, the trusty*."[3]—'Umar used to go round the markets and recite the Koran and judge between disputants wherever he found them.—When Ka'bu 'l-Aḥbár, a well-known Rabbin of Medína, asked how he could obtain access to the Commander of the Faithful,[4] he received this answer: "There

His simple manners.

[1] See Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 200 sqq.

[2] Ṭabarí, i, 2729, l. 15 sqq.

[3] *Ibid.*, i, 2736, l. 5 sqq. The words in italics are quoted from Koran, xxviii, 26, where they are applied to Moses.

[4] 'Umar was the first to assume this title (*Amíru 'l-Mu'minín*), by which the Caliphs after him were generally addressed.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

is no door nor curtain to be passed; he performs the rites of prayer, then he takes his seat, and any one that wishes may speak to him."[1] 'Umar said in one of his public orations: "By Him who sent Muḥammad with the truth, were a single camel to die of neglect on the bank of the Euphrates, I should fear lest God should call the family of al-Khaṭṭáb" (meaning himself) "to account therefor."[2]—"If I live," he is reported to have said on another occasion, "please God, I will assuredly spend a whole year in travelling among my subjects, for I know they have wants which are cut short ere they reach my ears: the governors do not bring the wants of the people before me, while the people themselves do not attain to me. So I will journey to Syria and remain there two months, then to Mesopotamia and remain there two months, then to Egypt and remain there two months, then to Baḥrayn and remain there two months, then to Kúfa and remain there two months, then to Baṣra and remain there two months; and by God, it will be a year well spent!"[3]—One night he came to the house of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán b. 'Awf and knocked at the door, which was opened by 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán's wife. "Do not enter," said she, "until I go back and sit in my place;" so he waited. Then she bade him come in, and on his asking, "Have you anything in the house?" she fetched him some food. Meanwhile 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán was standing by, engaged in prayer. "Be quick, man!" cried 'Umar. 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán immediately pronounced the final salaam, and turning to the Caliph said: "O Commander of the Faithful, what has brought you here at this hour?" 'Umar replied: "A party of travellers who alighted in the neighbourhood of the market: I was afraid that the thieves of Medína might fall upon them. Let us go and keep watch." So he set off with 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán, and when they reached the market-place they seated themselves on some high ground and began to converse. Presently they descried, far away, the light of a lamp. "Have not I forbidden lamps after bedtime?"[4] exclaimed the Caliph. They went to the spot and found a company drinking wine. "Begone," said 'Umar to 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán; "I know him." Next morning he sent for the culprit and said, addressing him by name, "Last night you were drinking wine with your friends." "O Commander of the Faithful, how did

His sense of personal responsibility.

The Caliph as a policeman.

[1] Ṭabarí, i, 2738, 7 sqq. [2] *Ibid.*, i, 2739, 4 sqq. [3] *Ibid.*, i, 2737, 4 sqq.

[4] It is explained that 'Umar prohibited lamps because rats used to take the lighted wick and set fire to the house-roofs, which at that time were made of palm-branches.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

you ascertain that?" "I saw it with my own eyes." "Has not God forbidden you to play the spy?" 'Umar made no answer and pardoned his offence.[1]—When 'Umar ascended the pulpit for the purpose of warning the people that they must not do something, he gathered his family and said to them: "I have forbidden the people to do so-and-so. Now, the people look at you as birds look at flesh, and I swear by God that if I find any one of you doing this thing, I will double the penalty against him."[2]—Whenever he appointed a governor he used to draw up in writing a certificate of investiture, which he caused to be witnessed by some of the Refugees or Helpers. It contained the following instructions: That he must not ride on horseback, nor eat white bread, nor wear fine clothes, nor set up a door between himself and those who had aught to ask of him.[3]—It was 'Umar's custom to go forth with his governors, on their appointment, to bid them farewell. "I have not appointed you," he would say, "over the people of Muḥammad (God bless him and grant him peace!) that you may drag them by their hair and scourge their skins, but in order that you may lead them in prayer and judge between them with right and divide (the public money) amongst them with equity. I have not made you lords of their skin and hair. Do not flog the Arabs lest you humiliate them, and do not keep them long on foreign service lest you tempt them to sedition, and do not neglect them lest you render them desperate. Confine yourselves to the Koran, write few Traditions of Muḥammad (God bless him and grant him peace!), and I am your ally." He used to permit retaliation against his governors. On receiving a complaint about any one of them he confronted him with the accuser, and punished him if his guilt were proved.[4]

His strictness towards his own family.

Instructions to his governors.

It was 'Umar who first made a Register (*Díwán*) of the Arabs in Islam and entered them therein according to their tribes and assigned to them their stipends. The following account of its institution is extracted from the charming history entitled *al-Fakhrí*:—

The Register of 'Umar.

In the fifteenth year of the Hijra (636 A.D.) 'Umar, who was then Caliph, seeing that the conquests proceeded without interruption

[1] Ṭabarí, i, 2742, 13 sqq.
[2] *Ibid.*, i, 2745, 15 sqq.
[3] *Ibid.*, i, 2747, 7 sqq.
[4] *Ibid.*, i, 2740, last line and foll.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and that the treasures of the Persian monarchs had been taken as spoil, and that load after load was being accumulated of gold and silver and precious jewels and splendid raiment, resolved to enrich the Moslems by distributing all this wealth amongst them ; but he did not know how he should manage it. Now there was a Persian satrap (*marzubán*) at Medína who, when he saw 'Umar's bewilderment, said to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, the Persian kings have a thing they call a *Díwán*, in which is kept the whole of their revenues and expenditures without exception ; and therein those who receive stipends are arranged in classes, so that no confusion occurs." 'Umar's attention was aroused. He bade the satrap describe it, and on comprehending its nature, he drew up the registers and assigned the stipends, appointing a specified allowance for every Moslem ; and he allotted fixed sums to the wives of the Apostle (on whom be God's blessing and peace !) and to his concubines and next-of-kin, until he exhausted the money in hand. He did not lay up a store in the treasury. Some one came to him and said : "O Commander of the Faithful, you should have left something to provide for contingencies." 'Umar rebuked him, saying, "The devil has put these words into your mouth. May God preserve me from their mischief ! for it were a temptation to my successors. Come what may, I will provide naught except obedience to God and His Apostle. That is our provision, whereby we have gained that which we have gained." Then, in respect of the stipends, he deemed it right that precedence should be according to priority of conversion to Islam and of service rendered to the Apostle on his fields of battle.[1]

The aristocracy of Islam.

Affinity to Muḥammad was also considered. "By God," exclaimed 'Umar, "we have not won superiority in this world, nor do we hope for recompense for our works from God hereafter, save through Muḥammad (God bless him and grant him peace !). He is our title to nobility, his tribe are the noblest of the Arabs, and after them those are the nobler that are nearer to him in blood. Truly, the Arabs are ennobled by God's Apostle. Peradventure some of them have many ancestors in common with him, and we ourselves are only removed by a few forbears from his line of descent, in which we accompany him back to Adam. Notwithstanding this, if the foreigners bring good works and we bring none, by God, they are nearer to Muḥammad on the day of Resurrection than we. Therefore let no man regard affinity, but let him work for that which is in God's

"'Tis only noble to be good."

[1] *Al-Fakhri*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 116, l. 1 to p. 117, l. 3.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

hands to bestow. He that is retarded by his works will not be sped by his lineage."[1]

It may be said of 'Umar, not less appropriately than of Cromwell, that he

> "cast the kingdoms old
> Into another mould;"

and he too justified the poet's maxim—

> "The same arts that did gain
> A power, must it maintain."

Under the system which he organised Arabia, purged of infidels, became a vast recruiting-ground for the standing armies of Islam: the Arabs in the conquered territories formed an exclusive military class, living in great camps and supported by revenues derived from the non-Muḥammadan population. Out of such camps arose two cities destined to make their mark in literary history—Baṣra (Bassora) on the delta of the Tigris and Euphrates, and Kúfa, which was founded about the same time on the western branch of the latter stream, not far from Ḥíra.

Foundation of Baṣra and Kúfa (638 A.D.).

'Umar was murdered by a Persian slave named Fírúz while leading the prayers in the Great Mosque. With his death the military theocracy and the palmy days of the Patriarchal Caliphate draw to a close. The broad lines of his character appear in the anecdotes translated above, though many details might be added to complete the picture. Simple and frugal; doing his duty without fear or favour; energetic even to harshness, yet capable of tenderness towards the weak; a severe judge of others and especially of himself, he was a born ruler and every inch a man. Looking back on

Death of 'Umar (644 A.D.)

[1] Ṭabarí, i, 2751, 9 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the turmoils which followed his death one is inclined to agree with the opinion of a saintly doctor who said, five centuries afterwards, that "the good fortune of Islam was shrouded in the grave-clothes of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb." [1]

When the Meccan aristocrats accepted Islam, they only yielded to the inevitable. They were now to have an opportunity of revenging themselves. 'Uthmán b. 'Affán, who succeeded 'Umar as Caliph, belonged to a distinguished Meccan family, the Umayyads or descendants of Umayya, which had always taken a leading part in the opposition to Muḥammad, though 'Uthmán himself was among the Prophet's first disciples. He was a pious, well-meaning old man—an easy tool in the hands of his ambitious kinsfolk. They soon climbed into all the most lucrative and important offices and lived on the fat of the land, while too often their ungodly behaviour gave point to the question whether these converts of the eleventh hour were not still heathens at heart. Other causes contributed to excite a general discontent. The rapid growth of luxury and immorality in the Holy Cities as well as in the new settlements was an eyesore to devout Moslems. The true Islamic aristocracy, the Companions of the Prophet, headed by 'Alí, Ṭalḥa, and Zubayr, strove to undermine the rival nobility which threatened them with destruction. The factious soldiery were ripe for revolt against Umayyad arrogance and greed. Rebellion broke out, and finally the aged Caliph, after enduring a siege of several weeks, was murdered in his own house. This event marks an epoch in the history of the Arabs. The ensuing civil wars rent the unity of Islam from top to bottom, and the wound has never healed.

'Uthmán elected Caliph (644 A.D.).

General disaffection.

'Uthmán murdered (656 A.D.).

'Alí, the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, who had hitherto

[1] Ibn Khallikán (ed. by Wüstenfeld), No. 68, p. 96, l. 3; De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 152.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

remained in the background, was now made Caliph. Although the suspicion that he was in league with the murderers may be put aside, he showed culpable weakness in leaving 'Uthmán to his fate without an effort to save him. But 'Alí had almost every virtue except those of the ruler: energy, decision, and foresight. He was a gallant warrior, a wise counsellor, a true friend, and a generous foe. He excelled in poetry and in eloquence; his verses and sayings are famous throughout the Muḥammadan East, though few of them can be considered authentic. A fine spirit worthy to be compared with Montrose and Bayard, he had no talent for the stern realities of statecraft, and was overmatched by unscrupulous rivals who knew that "war is a game of deceit." Thus his career was in one sense a failure: his authority as Caliph was never admitted, while he lived, by the whole community. On the other hand, he has exerted, down to the present day, a posthumous influence only second to that of Muḥammad himself. Within a century of his death he came to be regarded as the Prophet's successor *jure divino;* as a blessed martyr, sinless and infallible; and by some even as an incarnation of God. The 'Alí of Shí'ite legend is not an historical figure glorified: rather does he symbolise, in purely mythical fashion, the religious aspirations and political aims of a large section of the Moslem world.

'Alí elected Caliph (656 A.D.).

Character of 'Alí.

His apotheosis.

To return to our narrative. No sooner was 'Alí proclaimed Caliph by the victorious rebels than Mu'áwiya b. Abí Sufyán, the governor of Syria, raised the cry of vengeance for 'Uthmán and refused to take the oath of allegiance. As head of the Umayyad family, Mu'áwiya might justly demand that the murderers of his kinsman should be punished, but the con-

'Alí against Mu'áwiya.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

test between him and 'Alí was virtually for the Caliphate. A great battle was fought at Ṣiffín, a village on the Euphrates. 'Alí had well-nigh gained the day when Mu'áwiya bethought him of a stratagem. He ordered his troops to fix Korans on the points of their lances and to shout, "Here is the Book of God: let it decide between us!" The miserable trick succeeded. In 'Alí's army there were many pious fanatics to whom the proposed arbitration by the Koran appealed with irresistible force. They now sprang forward clamorously, threatening to betray their leader unless he would submit his cause to the Book. Vainly did 'Alí remonstrate with the mutineers, and warn them of the trap into which they were driving him, and this too at the moment when victory was within their grasp. He had no choice but to yield and name as his umpire a man of doubtful loyalty, Abú Músá al-Ash'arí, one of the oldest surviving Companions of the Prophet. Mu'áwiya on his part named 'Amr b. al-'Áṣ, whose cunning had prompted the decisive manœuvre. When the umpires came forth to give judgment, Abú Músá rose and in accordance with what had been arranged at the preliminary conference pronounced that both 'Alí and Mu'áwiya should be deposed and that the people should elect a proper Caliph in their stead. "Lo," said he, laying down his sword, "even thus do I depose 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib." Then 'Amr advanced and spoke as follows: "O people! ye have heard the judgment of my colleague. He has called you to witness that he deposes 'Alí. Now I call you to witness that I confirm Mu'áwiya, even as I make fast this sword of mine," and suiting the action to the word, he returned it to its sheath. It is characteristic of Arabian notions of morality that this impudent fraud was hailed by Mu'áwiya's adherents as a diplomatic triumph which gave him a colourable pretext

Battle of Ṣiffín (657 A.D.).

Arbitration.

The award.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

for assuming the title of Caliph. Both sides prepared to renew the struggle, but in the meanwhile 'Alí found his hands full nearer home. A numerous party among his troops, including the same zealots who had forced arbitration upon him, now cast him off because he had accepted it, fell out from the ranks, and raised the standard of revolt. These 'Outgoers,' or Khárijites, as they were called, maintained their theocratic principles with desperate courage, and though often defeated took the field again and again. 'Alí's plans for recovering Syria were finally abandoned in 660, when he concluded peace with Mu'áwiya, and shortly afterwards he was struck down in the Mosque at Kúfa, which he had made his capital, by Ibn Muljam, a Khárijite conspirator.

The Khárijites revolt against 'Alí.

Alí assassinated (661 A.D.).

With 'Alí's fall our sketch of the Orthodox Caliphate may fitly end. It was necessary to give some account of these years so vital in the history of Islam, even at the risk of wearying the reader, who will perhaps wish that less space were devoted to political affairs.

The Umayyads came into power, but, except in Syria and Egypt, they ruled solely by the sword. As descendants and representatives of the pagan aristocracy, which strove with all its might to defeat Muḥammad, they were usurpers in the eyes of the Moslem community which they claimed to lead as his successors.[1] We shall see, a little further on, how this opposition expressed itself in two great parties: the Shí'ites or followers of 'Alí, and the radical sect of the Khárijites, who have been mentioned above; and how it was gradually reinforced by the non-Arabian Moslems until it overwhelmed

The Umayyad dynasty.

[1] Mu'áwiya himself said: "I am the first of the kings" (Ya'qúbí, ed. by Houtsma, vol. ii, p. 276, l. 14).

14

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the Umayyad Government and set up the 'Abbásids in their place. In estimating the character of the Umayyads one must bear in mind that the epitaph on the fallen dynasty was composed by their enemies, and can no more be considered historically truthful than the lurid picture which Tacitus has drawn of the Emperor Tiberius. Because they kept the revolutionary forces in check with ruthless severity, the Umayyads pass for bloodthirsty tyrants; whereas the best of them at any rate were strong and singularly capable rulers, bad Moslems and good men of the world, seldom cruel, plain livers if not high thinkers; who upon the whole stand as much above the 'Abbásids in morality as below them in culture and intellect. Mu'áwiya's clemency was proverbial, though he too could be stern on occasion. When members of the house of 'Alí came to visit him at Damascus, which was now the capital of the Muḥammadan Empire, he gave them honourable lodging and entertainment and was anxious to do what they asked; but they (relates the historian approvingly) used to address him in the rudest terms and affront him in the vilest manner: sometimes he would answer them with a jest, and another time he would feign not to hear, and he always dismissed them with splendid presents and ample donations.[1] "I do not employ my sword," he said, "when my whip suffices me, nor my whip when my tongue suffices me; and were there but a single hair (of friendship) between me and my subjects, I would not let it be snapped."[2] After the business of the day he sought relaxation in books. "He consecrated a third part of every night to the history of the Arabs and their famous battles; the history of foreign peoples, their kings, and their government; the biographies of monarchs, including their wars

Moslem tradition hostile to the Umayyads.

Mu'áwiya's clemency.

His hours of study.

[1] *Al-Fakhrí*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 145

[2] Ya'qúbí, vol. ii, p. 283, l. 8 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and stratagems and methods of rule; and other matters connected with Ancient History."[1]

Mu'áwiya's chief henchman was Ziyád, the son of Sumayya (Sumayya being the name of his mother), or, as he is generally called, Ziyád ibn Abíhi, *i.e.*, 'Ziyád his father's son,' for none knew who was his sire, though rumour pointed to Abú Sufyán; in which case Ziyád would have been Mu'áwiya's half-brother. Mu'áwiya, instead of disavowing the scandalous imputation, acknowledged him as such, and made him governor of Baṣra, where he ruled the Eastern provinces with a rod of iron.

Ziyád ibn Abíhi.

Mu'áwiya was a crafty diplomatist—he has been well compared to Richelieu—whose profound knowledge of human nature enabled him to gain over men of moderate opinions in all the parties opposed to him. Events were soon to prove the hollowness of this outward reconciliation. Yazíd, who succeeded his father, was the son of Maysún, a Bedouin lady whom Mu'áwiya married before he rose to be Caliph. The luxury of Damascus had no charm for her wild spirit, and she gave utterance to her feeling of homesickness in melancholy verse:—

Yazíd (680–683 A.D.).

"A tent with rustling breezes cool
Delights me more than palace high,
And more the cloak of simple wool
Than robes in which I learned to sigh.

The crust I ate beside my tent
Was more than this fine bread to me;
The wind's voice where the hill-path went
Was more than tambourine can be.

And more than purr of friendly cat
I love the watch-dog's bark to hear;
And more than a barbarian fat
A cousin brave and gaunt is dear."[2]

---

[1] Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. v. p. 77.

[2] Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 25, l. 3 sqq., omitting l. 8.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Mu'áwiya, annoyed by the contemptuous allusion to himself, took the dame at her word. She returned to her own family, and Yazíd grew up as a Bedouin, with the instincts and tastes which belong to the Bedouins—love of pleasure, hatred of piety, and reckless disregard for the laws of religion. The beginning of his reign was marked by an event of which even now few Moslems can speak without a thrill of horror and dismay. The facts are briefly these: In the autumn of the year 680 Ḥusayn, the son of 'Alí, claiming to be the rightful Caliph in virtue of his descent from the Prophet, quitted Mecca with his whole family and a number of devoted friends, and set out for Kúfa, where he expected the population, which was almost entirely Shí'ite, to rally to his cause. It was a foolhardy adventure. The poet Farazdaq, who knew the fickle temper of his fellow-townsmen, told Ḥusayn that although their hearts were with him, their swords would be with the Umayyads; but his warning was given in vain. Meanwhile 'Ubaydulláh b. Ziyád, the governor of Kúfa, having overawed the insurgents in the city and beheaded their leader, Muslim b. 'Aqíl, who was a cousin of Ḥusayn, sent a force of cavalry with orders to bring the arch-rebel to a stand. Retreat was still open to him. But his followers cried out that the blood of Muslim must be avenged, and Ḥusayn could not hesitate. Turning northward along the Euphrates, he encamped at Karbalá with his little band, which, including the women and children, amounted to some two hundred souls. In this hopeless situation he offered terms which might have been accepted if Shamir b. Dhi 'l-Jawshan, a name for ever infamous and accursed, had not persuaded 'Ubaydulláh to insist on unconditional surrender. The demand was refused, and Ḥusayn drew up his comrades—a handful of men and boys—for battle against the host which surrounded them. All the harrowing details invented by grief and passion can scarcely

Ḥusayn marches on Kúfa.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

heighten the tragedy of the closing scene. It would appear that the Umayyad officers themselves shrank from the odium of a general massacre, and hoped to take the Prophet's grandson alive. Shamir, however, had no such scruples. Chafing at delay, he urged his soldiers to the assault. The unequal struggle was soon over. Ḥusayn fell, pierced by an arrow, and his brave followers were cut down beside him to the last man.

Massacre of Ḥusayn and his followers at Karbalá (10th Muḥarram, 61 A.H. = 10th October, 680 A.D.).

Muḥammadan tradition, which with rare exceptions is uniformly hostile to the Umayyad dynasty, regards Ḥusayn as a martyr and Yazíd as his murderer; while modern historians, for the most part, agree with Sir W. Muir, who points out that Ḥusayn, "having yielded himself to a treasonable, though impotent design upon the throne, was committing an offence that endangered society and demanded swift suppression." This was naturally the view of the party in power, and the reader must form his own conclusion as to how far it justifies the action which they took. For Moslems the question is decided by the relation of the Umayyads to Islam. Violators of its laws and spurners of its ideals, they could never be anything but tyrants; and being tyrants, they had no right to slay believers who rose in arms against their usurped authority. The so-called verdict of history, when we come to examine it, is seen to be the verdict of religion, the judgment of theocratic Islam on Arabian Imperialism. On this ground the Umayyads are justly condemned, but it is well to remember that in Moslem eyes the distinction between Church and State does not exist. Yazíd was a bad Churchman: therefore he was a wicked tyrant; the one thing involves the other. From our unprejudiced standpoint, he was an amiable prince who inherited his mother's poetic talent, and infin-

Differing views of Muḥammadan and European writers.

The Umayyads judged by Islam.

Character of Yazíd.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

itely preferred wine, music, and sport to the drudgery of public affairs. The Syrian Arabs, who recognised the Umayyads as legitimate, thought highly of him: "Jucundissimus," says a Christian writer, "et cunctis nationibus regni ejus subditis vir gratissime habitus, qui nullam unquam, ut omnibus moris est, sibi regalis fastigii causa gloriam appetivit, sed communis cum omnibus civiliter vixit."[1] He deplored the fate of the women and children of Ḥusayn's family, treated them with every mark of respect, and sent them to Medína, where their account of the tragedy added fresh fuel to the hatred and indignation with which its authors were generally regarded.

The Umayyads had indeed ample cause to rue the day of Karbalá. It gave the Shí'ite faction a rallying-cry—"Vengeance for Ḥusayn!"—which was taken up on all sides, and especially by the Persian *Mawálí*, or Clients, who longed for deliverance from the Arab yoke. Their amalgamation with the Shí'a—a few years later they flocked in thousands to the standard of Mukhtár—was an event of the utmost historical importance, which will be discussed when we come to speak of the Shí'ites in particular.

The slaughter of Ḥusayn does not complete the tale of Yazíd's enormities. Medína, the Prophet's city, having expelled its Umayyad governor, was sacked by a Syrian army, while Mecca itself, where 'Abdulláh b. Zubayr had set up as rival Caliph, was besieged, and the Ka'ba laid in ruins. These outrages, shocking to Moslem sentiment, kindled a flame of rebellion. Ḥusayn was avenged by Mukhtár, who seized Kúfa and executed some three hundred of the guilty citizens, including the miscreant Shamir. His troops defeated and slew 'Ubaydulláh b. Ziyád, but he himself was slain, not long afterwards, by

Medína and Mecca desecrated (682–3 A.D.).

Rebellion of Mukhtár (685–6 A.D.).

[1] The *Continuatio* of Isidore of Hispalis, § 27, quoted by Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, p. 105.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Mus'ab, the brother of Ibn Zubayr, and seven thousand of his followers were massacred in cold blood. On Yazíd's death (683) the Umayyad Empire threatened to fall to pieces. As a contemporary poet sang—

> "Now loathed of all men is the Fury blind
> Which blazeth as a fire blown by the wind.
> They are split in sects: each province hath its own
> Commander of the Faithful, each its throne."[1]

Fierce dissensions broke out among the Syrian Arabs, the backbone of the dynasty. The great tribal groups of Kalb and Qays, whose coalition had hitherto maintained the Umayyads in power, fought on opposite sides at Marj Ráhiṭ (684), the former for Marwán and the latter for Ibn Zubayr. Marwán's victory secured the allegiance of Syria, but henceforth Qays and Kalb were always at daggers drawn.[2] This was essentially a feud between the Northern and the Southern Arabs—a feud which rapidly extended and developed into a permanent racial enmity. They carried it with them to the farthest ends of the world, so that, for example, after the conquest of Spain precautions had to be taken against civil war by providing that Northerners and Southerners should not settle in the same districts. The literary history of this antagonism has been sketched by Dr. Goldziher with his wonted erudition and acumen.[3] Satire was, of course, the

Civil war renewed.

Rivalry of Northern and Southern Arabs.

[1] *Ḥamása*, 226. The word translated 'throne' is in Arabic *minbar*, *i.e.*, the pulpit from which the Caliph conducted the public prayers and addressed the congregation.

[2] Kalb was properly one of the Northern tribes (see Robertson Smith's *Kinship and Marriage*, 2nd ed., p. 8 seq.—a reference which I owe to Professor Bevan), but there is evidence that the Kalbites were regarded as 'Yemenite' or 'Southern' Arabs at an early period of Islam. *Cf.* Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 83, l. 3 sqq.

[3] *Muhammedanische Studien*, i, 78 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

principal weapon of both sides. Here is a fragment by a Northern poet which belongs to the Umayyad period :—

> "Negroes are better, when they name their sires,
> Than Qaḥṭán's sons,[1] the uncircumcisèd cowards:
> A folk whom thou mayst see, at war's outflame,
> More abject than a shoe to tread in baseness;
> Their women free to every lecher's lust,
> Their clients spoil for cavaliers and footmen." [2]

Thus the Arab nation was again torn asunder by the old tribal pretensions which Muḥammad sought to abolish. That they ultimately proved fatal to the Umayyads is no matter for surprise; the sorely pressed dynasty was already tottering, its enemies were at its gates. By good fortune it produced at this crisis an exceptionally able and vigorous ruler, 'Abdu 'l-Malik b. Marwán, who not only saved his house from destruction, but re-established its supremacy and inaugurated a more brilliant epoch than any that had gone before.

'Abdu 'l-Malik and his successors.

'Abdu 'l-Malik succeeded his father in 685, but required seven years of hard fighting to make good his claim to the Caliphate. When his most formidable rival, Ibn Zubayr, had fallen in battle (692), the eastern provinces were still overrun by rebels, who offered a desperate resistance to the governor of 'Iráq, the iron-handed Ḥajjáj. But enough of bloodshed. Peace also had her victories during the troubled reign of 'Abdu 'l-Malik and the calmer sway of his successors. Four of the next five Caliphs were his own sons—Walíd (705–715), Sulaymán (715–717), Yazíd II (720–724), and Hishám (724–743); the fifth, 'Umar II, was the son of his brother, 'Abdu 'l-'Azíz. For the greater part of this time the Moslem lands enjoyed a well-earned interval of repose and prosperity, which mitigated, though it could not undo, the frightful devastation wrought by

[1] Qaḥṭán is the legendary ancestor of the Southern Arabs.
[2] *Aghání*, xiii, 51, cited by Goldziher, *ibid.*, p. 82.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

twenty years of almost continuous civil war. Many reforms were introduced, some wholly political in character, while others inspired by the same motives have, none the less, a direct bearing on literary history. 'Abdu 'l-Malik organised an excellent postal service, by means of relays of horses, for the conveyance of despatches and travellers; he substituted for the Byzantine and Persian coins, which had hitherto been in general use, new gold and silver pieces, on which he caused sentences from the Koran to be engraved; and he made Arabic, instead of Greek or Persian, the official language of financial administration. Steps were taken, moreover, to improve the extremely defective Arabic script, and in this way to provide a sound basis for the study and interpretation of the Koran as well as for the collection of *ḥadīths* or sayings of the Prophet, which form an indispensable supplement thereto. The Arabic alphabet, as it was then written, consisted entirely of consonants, so that, to give an illustration from English, *bnd* might denote *band*, *bend*, *bind*, or *bond*; *crt* might stand for *cart*, *carat*, *curt*, and so on. To an Arab this ambiguity mattered little; far worse confusion arose from the circumstance that many of the consonants themselves were exactly alike: thus, *e.g.*, it was possible to read the same combination of three letters as *bnt*, *nbt*, *byt*, *tnb*, *ntb*, *nyb*, and in various other ways. Considering the difficulties of the Arabic language, which are so great that a European aided by scientific grammars and unequivocal texts will often find himself puzzled even when he has become tolerably familiar with it, one may imagine that the Koran was virtually a sealed book to all but a few among the crowds of foreigners who accepted Islam after the early conquests. 'Abdu'l-Malik's viceroy in 'Iráq, the famous Ḥajjáj, who began life as a schoolmaster, exerted himself to promote the use of vowel-marks (borrowed from the Syriac) and of the diacritical points placed above or below similar consonants. This extraordinary man

Reforms of 'Abdu 'l-Malik.

The writing of Arabic.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

deserves more than a passing mention. A stern disciplinarian, who could be counted upon to do his duty without any regard to public opinion, he was chosen by 'Abdu 'l-Malik to besiege Mecca, which Ibn Zubayr was holding as anti-Caliph. Ḥajjáj bombarded the city, defeated the Pretender, and sent his head to Damascus. Two years afterwards he became governor of 'Iráq. Entering the Mosque at Kúfa, he mounted the pulpit and introduced himself to the assembled townsmen in these memorable words :—

Ḥajjáj b. Yúsuf († 714 A.D.).

> "I am he who scattereth the darkness and climbeth o'er the summits.
> When I lift the turban from my face, ye will know me.[1]

O people of Kúfa ! I see heads that are ripe for cutting, and I am the man to do it ; and methinks, I see blood between the turbans and beards."[2] The rest of his speech was in keeping with the commencement. He used no idle threats, as the malcontents soon found out. Rebellion, which had been rampant before his arrival, was rapidly extinguished. "He restored order in 'Iráq and subdued its people."[3] For twenty years his despotic rule gave peace and security to the Eastern world. Cruel he may have been, though the tales of his bloodthirstiness are beyond doubt grossly exaggerated, but it should be put to his credit that he established and maintained the settled conditions which afford leisure for the cultivation of learning. Under his protection the Koran and Traditions were diligently studied both in Kúfa and Baṣra, where many Companions of the Prophet had made their home : hence arose in Baṣra the science of Grammar, with which, as we shall see in a subsequent page, the name of that city is peculiarly associated.

His service to literature.

[1] A verse of the poet Suḥaym b. Wathíl.
[2] The *Kámil* of al-Mubarrad, ed. by W. Wright, p. 215, l. 14 sqq.
[3] Ibn Qutayba, *Kitábu 'l-Ma'árif*, p. 202.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Ḥajjáj shared the literary tastes of his sovereign ; he admired the old poets and patronised the new ; he was a master of terse eloquence and plumed himself on his elegant Arabic style. The most hated man of his time, he lives in history as the savage oppressor and butcher of God-fearing Moslems. He served the Umayyads well and faithfully, and when he died in 714 A.D. he left behind him nothing but his Koran, his arms, and a few hundred pieces of silver.

Walíd (705–715 A.D.).

It was a common saying at Damascus that under Walíd people talked of fine buildings, under Sulaymán of cookery and the fair sex, while in the reign of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azíz the Koran and religion formed favourite topics of conversation.[1] Of Walíd's passion for architecture we have a splendid monument in the Great Mosque of Damascus (originally the Cathedral of St. John), which is the principal sight of the city to this day. He spoke Arabic very incorrectly, and though his father rebuked him, observing that "in order to rule the Arabs one must be proficient in their language," he could never learn to express himself with propriety.[2] The unbroken peace which now prevailed within the Empire enabled Walíd to resume the work of conquest. In the East his armies invaded Transoxania, captured Bokhárá and Samarcand, and pushed forward to the Chinese frontier. Another force crossed the Indus and penetrated as far as Múltán, a renowned centre of pilgrimage in the Southern Punjaub, which fell into the hands of the Moslems after a prolonged siege. But the most brilliant advance, and the richest in its results, was that in the extreme West, which decided the fate of Spain. Although the Moslems had obtained a footing in Northern Africa some thirty years before this time, their position was always precarious, until in 709 Músá

Moslem conquests in the East.

[1] *Al-Fakhrí*, p. 173 ; Ibnu 'l-Athír, ed. by Tornberg, v, 5.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 174. *Cf.* Mas'údí, *Murúju l-Dhahab*, v, 412.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

b. Nuṣayr completely subjugated the Berbers, and extended not only the dominion but also the faith of Islam to the Atlantic Ocean. Two years later his freedman Ṭáriq crossed the straits and took possession of the commanding height, called by the ancients Calpe, but henceforth known as Jabal Ṭáriq (Gibraltar). Roderic, the last of the West Gothic dynasty, gathered an army in defence of his kingdom, but there were traitors in the camp, and, though he himself fought valiantly, their defection turned the fortunes of the day. The king fled, and it was never ascertained what became of him. Ṭáriq, meeting with feeble resistance, marched rapidly on Toledo, while Músá, whose jealousy was excited by the triumphal progress of his lieutenant, now joined in the campaign, and, storming city after city, reached the Pyrenees. The conquest of Spain, which is told by Moslem historians with many romantic circumstances, marks the nearest approach that the Arabs ever made to World-Empire. Their advance on French soil was finally hurled back by Charles the Hammer's great victory at Tours (732 A.D.).

Conquest of Spain (711–713 A.D.).

Before taking leave of the Umayyads we must not forget to mention 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azíz, a ruler who stands out in singular contrast with his predecessors, and whose brief reign is regarded by many Moslems as the sole bright spot in a century of godless and blood-stained tyranny. There had been nothing like it since the days of his illustrious namesake and kinsman,[1] 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb, and we shall find nothing like it in the future history of the Caliphate. Plato desired that every king should be a philosopher: according to Muḥammadan theory every Caliph ought to be a saint. 'Umar satisfied these aspirations. When he came to the throne the following dialogue is said to have occurred between him and one of his favourites, Sálim al-Suddí :—

'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azíz (717–720 A.D.).

[1] His mother, Umm 'Áṣim, was a granddaughter of 'Umar I.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

'Umar: "Are you glad on account of my accession, or sorry?"
Sálim: "I am glad for the people's sake, but sorry for yours."
'Umar: "I fear that I have brought perdition upon my soul."
Sálim: "If you are afraid, very good. I only fear that you may cease to be afraid."
'Umar: "Give me a word of counsel."
Sálim: "Our father Adam was driven forth from Paradise because of one sin."[1]

Poets and orators found no favour at his court, which was thronged by divines and men of ascetic life.[2] He warned his governors that they must either deal justly or go. He would not allow political considerations to interfere with his ideal of righteousness, but, as Wellhausen points out, he had practical ends in view: his piety made him anxious for the common weal no less than for his own salvation. Whether he administered the State successfully is a matter of dispute. It has been generally supposed that his financial reforms were Utopian in character and disastrous to the Exchequer.[3] However this may be, he showed wisdom in seeking to bridge the menacing chasm between Islam and the Imperial house. Thus, *e.g.*, he did away with the custom which had long prevailed of cursing 'Alí from the pulpit at Friday prayers. The policy of conciliation was tried too late, and for too short a space, to be effective; but it was not entirely fruitless. When, on the overthrow of the Umayyad dynasty, the tombs of the hated 'tyrants' were defiled and their bodies disinterred, 'Umar's grave alone was respected, and Mas'údí

[1] Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, v, 419 seq.

[2] Ibnu 'l-Athír, ed. by Tornberg, v, 46. *Cf. Aghání*, xx, p. 119, l. 23. 'Umar made an exception, as Professor Bevan reminds me, in favour of the poet Jarír. See Brockelmann's *Gesch. der Arab. Litteratur*, vol. i, p. 57.

[3] The exhaustive researches of Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz* (pp. 169–192) have set this complicated subject in a new light. He contends that 'Umar's reform was not based on purely ideal grounds, but was demanded by the necessities of the case, and that, so far from introducing disorder into the finances, his measures were designed to remedy the confusion which already existed.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

(† 956 A.D.) tells us that in his time it was visited by crowds of pilgrims.

The remaining Umayyads do not call for particular notice. Hishám ranks as a statesman with Mu'áwiya and 'Abdu 'l-Malik: the great 'Abbásid Caliph, Manṣúr, is said to have admired and imitated his methods of government.[1] Walíd II was an incorrigible libertine, whose songs celebrating the forbidden delights of wine have much merit. The eminent poet and freethinker, Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí, quotes these verses by him[2] :—

Hishám and Walíd II.

"The Imám Walíd am I! In all my glory
Of trailing robes I listen to soft lays.
When proudly I sweep on towards her chamber,
I care not who inveighs.

Verses by Walíd II (743-4 A.D.).

There's no true joy but lending ear to music,
Or wine that leaves one sunk in stupor dense.
Houris in Paradise I do not look for:
Does any man of sense?"

Let us now turn from the monarchs to their subjects.

In the first place we shall speak of the political and religious parties, whose opposition to the Umayyad House gradually undermined its influence and in the end brought about its fall. Some account will be given of the ideas for which these parties fought and of the causes of their discontent with the existing *régime*. Secondly, a few words must be said of the theological and more purely religious sects—the Mu'tazilites, Murjites, and Ṣúfís; and, lastly, of the extant literature, which is almost exclusively poetical, and its leading representatives.

Political and religious movements of the period.

[1] Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, v, 479.

[2] The Arabic text and literal translation of these verses will be found in my article on Abu 'l-'Alá's *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* (*J.R.A.S.* for 1902, pp. 829 and 342).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The opposition to the Umayyads was at first mainly a question of politics. Mu'áwiya's accession announced the triumph of Syria over 'Iráq, and Damascus, instead of Kúfa, became the capital of the Empire. As Wellhausen observes, "the most powerful risings against the Umayyads proceeded from 'Iráq, not from any special party, but from the whole mass of the Arabs settled there, who were united in resenting the loss of their independence (*Selbstherrlichkeit*) and in hating those into whose hands it had passed."[1] At the same time these feelings took a religious colour and identified themselves with the cause of Islam. The new government fell lamentably short of the theocratic standard by which it was judged. Therefore it was evil, and (according to the Moslem's conception of duty) every right-thinking man must work for its destruction.

The Arabs of 'Iráq.

Among the myriads striving for this consummation, and so far making common cause with each other, we can distinguish four principal classes.

Parties opposed to the Umayyad government.

(1) The religious Moslems, or Pietists, in general, who formed a wing of the Orthodox Party.[2]

(2) The Khárijites, who may be described as the Puritans and extreme Radicals of theocracy.

(3) The Shí'ites, or partisans of 'Alí and his House.

(4) The Non-Arabian Moslems, who were called *Mawálí* (Clients).

It is clear that the Pietists—including divines learned in the law, reciters of the Koran, Companions of the Prophet and

[1] Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, p. 38.

[2] *I.e.*, the main body of Moslems—*Sunnís*, followers of the *Sunna*, as they were afterwards called—who were neither Shí'ites nor Khárijites, but held (1) that the Caliph must be elected by the Moslem community, and (2) that he must be a member of Quraysh, the Prophet's tribe. All these parties arose out of the struggle between 'Alí and Mu'áwiya, and their original difference turned solely on the question of the Caliphate.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

their descendants—could not but abominate the secular authority which they were now compelled to obey. The conviction that Might, in the shape of the tyrant and his minions, trampled on Right as represented by the Koran and the *Sunna* (custom of Muḥammad) drove many into active rebellion : five thousand are said to have perished in the sack of Medína alone. Others again, like Ḥasan of Baṣra, filled with profound despair, shut their eyes on the world, and gave themselves up to asceticism, a tendency which had important consequences, as we shall see.

The Pietists.

When 'Alí, on the field of Ṣiffín, consented that the claims of Mu'áwiya and himself to the Caliphate should be decided by arbitration, a large section of his army accused him of having betrayed his trust. He, the duly elected Caliph—so they argued—should have maintained the dignity of his high office inviolate at all costs. On the homeward march the malcontents, some twelve thousand in number, broke away and encamped by themselves at Ḥarúrá, a village near Kúfa. Their cry was, "God alone can decide" (*lá ḥukma illá lilláhi*) : in these terms they protested against the arbitration. 'Alí endeavoured to win them back, but without any lasting success. They elected a Caliph from among themselves, and gathered at Nahrawán, four thousand strong. On the appearance of 'Alí with a vastly superior force many of the rebels dispersed, but the remainder—about half—preferred to die for their faith. Nahrawán was to the Khárijites what Karbalá afterwards became to the Shí'ites, who from this day were regarded by the former as their chief enemies. Frequent Khárijite risings took place during the early Umayyad period, but the movement reached its zenith in the years of confusion which followed Yazíd's death. The Azraqites, so called after their leader, Náfi' b. al-Azraq, overran 'Iráq and Southern Persia, while another sect, the Najdites, led by

The Khárijites.

Battle of Nahrawán (658 A.D.).

Khárijite risings.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Najda b. 'Ámir, reduced the greater part of Arabia to submission. The insurgents held their ground for a long time against 'Abdu 'l-Malik, and did not cease from troubling until the rebellion headed by Shabíb was at last stamped out by Ḥajjáj in 697.

Meaning of 'Khárijite.'

It has been suggested that the name *Khárijí* (plural, *Khawárij*) refers to a passage in the Koran (iv, 101) where mention is made of "those who go forth (*yakhruj*) from their homes as emigrants (*muhájir*^{an}) to God and His Messenger"; so that 'Khárijite' means 'one who leaves his home among the unbelievers for God's sake,' and corresponds to the term *Muhájir*, which was applied to the Meccan converts who accompanied the Prophet in his flight to Medína.[1] Another name by which they are often designated is likewise Koranic in origin, viz., *Shurát* (plural of *Shár*^{in}): literally 'Sellers'—that is to say, those who sell their lives and goods in return for Paradise.[2] The Khárijites were mostly drawn from the Bedouin soldiery who settled in Baṣra and Kúfa after the Persian wars. Civil life wrought little change in their unruly temper. Far from acknowledging the peculiar sanctity of a Qurayshite, they desired a chief of their own blood whom they might obey, in Bedouin fashion, as long as he did not abuse or exceed the powers conferred upon him.[3] The mainspring of the movement, however, was pietistic, and can be traced, as Wellhausen has shown, to the Koran-readers who made it a matter of conscience that 'Alí should avow his contrition for the fatal error which their own temporary and deeply regretted infatuation had forced him to commit. They cast off 'Alí for the same

Their political theories.

[1] Brünnow, *Die Charidschiten unter den ersten Omayyaden* (Leiden, 1884), p. 28. It is by no means certain, however, that the Khárijites called themselves by this name. In any case, the term implies *secession* (*khurúj*) from the Moslem community, and may be rendered by 'Seceder' or 'Nonconformist.'

[2] *Cf.* Koran, ix, 112.

[3] Brünnow, *op. cit.*, p. 8.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

reason which led them to strike at 'Uthman: in both cases they were maintaining the cause of God against an unjust Caliph.[1] It is important to remember these facts in view of the cardinal Khárijite doctrines (1) that every free Arab was eligible as Caliph,[2] and (2) that an evil-doing Caliph must be deposed and, if necessary, put to death. Mustawrid b. 'Ullifa, the Khárijite 'Commander of the Faithful,' wrote to Simák b. 'Ubayd, the governor of Ctesiphon, as follows: "We call you to the Book of God Almighty and Glorious, and to the *Sunna* (custom) of the Prophet—on whom be peace!—and to the administration of Abú Bakr and 'Umar—may God be well pleased with them!—and to renounce 'Uthmán and 'Alí because they corrupted the true religion and abandoned the authority of the Book."[3] From this it appears that the Khárijite programme was simply the old Islam of equality and fraternity, which had never been fully realised and was now irretrievably ruined. Theoretically, all devout Moslems shared in the desire for its restoration and condemned the existing Government no less cordially than did the Khárijites. What distinguished the latter party was the remorseless severity with which they carried their principles into action. To them it was absolutely vital that the Imám, or head of the com-

[1] Wellhausen, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien im alten Islam* (*Abhandlungen der Königl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Phil.-Hist. Klasse*, 1901), p. 8 sqq. The writer argues against Brünnow that the oldest Khárijites were not true Bedouins (*A'rábí*), and were, in fact, even further removed than the rest of the military colonists of Kúfa and Başra from their Bedouin traditions. He points out that the extreme piety of the Readers—their constant prayers, vigils, and repetitions of the Koran—exactly agrees with what is related of the Khárijites, and is described in similar language. Moreover, among the oldest Khárijites we find mention made of a company clad in long cloaks (*barânis*, pl. of *burnus*), which were at that time a special mark of asceticism. Finally, the earliest authority (Abú Mikhnaf in Ţabarí, i, 3330, l. 6 sqq.) regards the Khárijites as an offshoot from the Readers, and names individual Readers who afterwards became rabid Khárijites.

[2] Later, when many non-Arab Moslems joined the Khárijite ranks the field of choice was extended so as to include foreigners and even slaves.

[3] Ţabarí, ii, 40, 13 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

munity, should rule in the name and according to the will of God: those who followed any other sealed their doom in the next world: eternal salvation hung upon the choice of a successor to the Prophet. Moslems who refused to execrate 'Uthmán and 'Alí were the worst of infidels; it was the duty of every true believer to take part in the Holy War against such, and to kill them, together with their wives and children. These atrocities recoiled upon the insurgents, who soon found themselves in danger of extermination. Milder counsels began to prevail. Thus the Ibáḍites (followers of 'Abdulláh b. Ibáḍ) held it lawful to live amongst the Moslems and mix with them on terms of mutual tolerance. But compromise was in truth incompatible with the *raison d'être* of the Khárijites, namely, to establish the kingdom of God upon the earth. This meant virtual anarchy: "their unbending logic shattered every constitution which it set up." As 'Alí remarked, "they say, 'No government' (*lá imára*), but there must be a government, good or bad."[1] Nevertheless, it was a noble ideal for which they fought in pure devotion, having, unlike the other political parties, no worldly interests to serve.

Their religion.

The same fierce spirit of fanaticism moulded their religious views, which were gloomy and austere, as befitted the chosen few in an ungodly world. Shahrastání, speaking of the original twelve thousand who rebelled against 'Alí, describes them as 'people of fasting and prayer' (*ahlu ṣiyám^{in} wa-ṣalát^{in}*).[2] The Koran ruled their lives and possessed their imaginations, so that the history of the early Church, the persecutions, martyrdoms, and triumphs of the Faith became a veritable drama which was being enacted by themselves. The fear of hell kindled in them an inquisitorial zeal for righteousness. They scrupulously examined their own belief as well as that of their neighbours, and woe to him that was found wanting! A

[1] Shahrastání, ed. by Cureton, Part I, p. 88, l. 12.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 86, l. 3 from foot.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

single false step involved excommunication from the pale of Islam, and though the slip might be condoned on proof of sincere repentance, any Moslem who had once committed a mortal sin (*kabíra*) was held, by the stricter Khárijites at least, to be inevitably damned with the infidels in everlasting fire.

Much might be written, if space allowed, concerning the wars of the Khárijites, their most famous chiefs, the points on which they quarrelled, and the sects into which they split. Here we can only attempt to illustrate the general character of the movement. We have touched on its political and religious aspects, and shall now conclude with some reference to its literary side. The Khárijites did not produce a Milton or a Bunyan, but as Arabs of Bedouin stock they had a natural gift of song, from which they could not be weaned; although, according to the strict letter of the Koran, poetry is a devilish invention improper for the pious Moslem to meddle with. But these are poems of a different order from the pagan odes, and breathe a stern religious enthusiasm that would have gladdened the Prophet's heart. Take, for example, the following verses, which were made by a Khárijite in prison:—[1]

Khárijite poetry.

"'Tis time, O ye Sellers, for one who hath sold himself
To God, that he should arise and saddle amain.
Fools! in the land of miscreants will ye abide,
To be hunted down, every man of you, and to be slain?
O would that I were among you, armèd in mail,
On the back of my stout-ribbed galloping war-horse again!
And would that I were among you, fighting your foes,
That me, first of all, they might give death's beaker to drain!
It grieves me sore that ye are startled and chased
Like beasts, while I cannot draw on the wretches profane
My sword, nor see them scattered by noble knights
Who never yield an inch of the ground they gain,

[1] Ṭabarí, ii, 36, ll. 7, 8, 11–16.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

But where the struggle is hottest, with keen blades hew
Their strenuous way and deem 'twere base to refrain.
Ay, it grieves me sore that ye are oppressed and wronged,
While I must drag in anguish a captive's chain."

Qaṭarí b. al-Fujá'a, the intrepid Khárijite leader who routed army after army sent against him by Ḥajjáj, sang almost as well as he fought. The verses rendered below are included in the *Ḥamása*[1] and cited by Ibn Khallikán, who declares that they would make a brave man of the greatest coward in the world. "I know of nothing on the subject to be compared with them; they could only have proceeded from a spirit that scorned disgrace and from a truly Arabian sentiment of valour."[2]

Qaṭarí b. al-Fujá'a.

"I say to my soul dismayed—
'Courage! Thou canst not achieve,
With praying, an hour of life
Beyond the appointed term.
Then courage on death's dark field,
Courage! Impossible 'tis
To live for ever and aye.
Life is no hero's robe
Of honour: the dastard vile
Also doffs it at last.'"

The murder of 'Uthmán broke the Moslem community, which had hitherto been undivided, into two *shí'as*, or parties —one for 'Alí and the other for Mu'áwiya. When the latter became Caliph he was no longer a party leader, but head of the State, and his *shí'a* ceased to exist. Henceforth 'the Shí'a' *par excellence* was the party of 'Alí, which regarded the House of the Prophet as the legitimate heirs to the succession. Not content, however, with uphold-

The Shí'ites.

[1] *Ḥamása*, 44.
[2] Ibn Khallikán, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 555, p. 55, l. 4 seq.; De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 523.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

ing 'Alí, as the worthiest of the Prophet's Companions and the duly elected Caliph, against his rival, Mu'áwiya, the bolder spirits took up an idea, which emerged about this time, that the Caliphate belonged to 'Alí and his descendants by Divine right. Such is the distinctive doctrine of the Shí'ites to the present day. It is generally thought to have originated in Persia, where the Sásánian kings used to assume the title of 'god' (Pahlaví *bagh*) and were looked upon as successive incarnations of the Divine majesty.

The theory of Divine Right.

"Although the Shí'ites," says Dozy, "often found themselves under the direction of Arab leaders, who utilised them in order to gain some personal end, they were nevertheless a Persian sect at bottom; and it is precisely here that the difference most clearly showed itself between the Arab race, which loves liberty, and the Persian race, accustomed to slavish submission. For the Persians, the principle of electing the Prophet's successor was something unheard of and incomprehensible. The only principle which they recognised was that of inheritance, and since Muhammad left no sons, they thought that his son-in-law 'Alí should have succeeded him, and that the sovereignty was hereditary in his family. Consequently, all the Caliphs except 'Alí—*i.e.*, Abú Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Uthmán, as well as the Umayyads—were in their eyes usurpers to whom no obedience was due. The hatred which they felt for the Government and for Arab rule confirmed them in this opinion; at the same time they cast covetous looks on the wealth of their masters. Habituated, moreover, to see in their kings the descendants of the inferior divinities, they transferred this idolatrous veneration to 'Alí and his posterity. Absolute obedience to the Imám of 'Alí's House was in their eyes the most important duty; if that were fulfilled all the rest might be interpreted allegorically and violated without scruple. For them the Imám was everything; he was God made man. A servile submission accompanied by immorality was the basis of their system."[1]

Dozy's account of its origin.

[1] Dozy, *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme* (French translation by Victor Chauvin), p. 219 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Now, the Shí'ite theory of Divine Right certainly harmonised with Persian ideas, but was it also of Persian origin? On the contrary, it seems first to have arisen among an obscure Arabian sect, the Saba'ites, whose founder, 'Abdulláh b. Sabá (properly, Saba'), was a native of Ṣan'á in Yemen, and is said to have been a Jew.[1] In 'Uthmán's time he turned Moslem and became, apparently, a travelling missionary. "He went from place to place," says the historian, "seeking to lead the Moslems into error."[2] We hear of him in the Ḥijáz, then in Baṣra and Kúfa, then in Syria. Finally he settled in Egypt, where he preached the doctrine of palingenesis (*raj'a*). "It is strange indeed," he exclaimed, "that any one should believe in the return of Jesus (as Messias), and deny the return of Muḥammad, which God has announced (Kor. xxviii, 85).[3] Furthermore, there are a thousand Prophets, every one of whom has an executor (*waṣí*), and the executor of Muḥammad is 'Alí.[4] Muḥammad is the last of the Prophets, and 'Alí is the last of the executors." Ibn Sabá, therefore, regarded Abú Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Uthmán as usurpers. He set on foot a widespread conspiracy in favour of 'Alí, and carried on a secret correspondence with the disaffected in various provinces of the Empire.[5] According

The Saba'ites.

Doctrine of Ibn Sabá.

[1] Wellhausen thinks that the dogmatics of the Shí'ites are derived from Jewish rather than from Persian sources. See his account of the Saba'ites in his most instructive paper, to which I have already referred, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien im alten Islam* (*Abh. der König. Ges. der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Phil.-Hist. Klasse*, 1901), p. 89 sqq.

[2] Ṭabarí, i, 2942, 2.

[3] "*Verily, He who hath ordained the Koran for thee* (*i.e.*, for Muḥammad) *will bring thee back to a place of return*" (*i.e.*, to Mecca). The ambiguity of the word meaning 'place of return' (*ma'ád*) gave some colour to Ibn Sabá's contention that it alluded to the return of Muḥammad at the end of the world. The descent of Jesus on earth is reckoned by Moslems among the greater signs which will precede the Resurrection.

[4] This is a Jewish idea. 'Alí stands in the same relation to Muḥammad as Aaron to Moses.

[5] Ṭabarí, *loc. cit.*

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

to Shahrastání, he was banished by 'Alí for saying, "Thou art thou" (*anta anta*), *i.e.*, "Thou art God."[1] This refers to the doctrine taught by Ibn Sabá and the extreme Shí'ites (*Ghulát*) who derive from him, that the Divine Spirit which dwells in every prophet and passes successively from one to another was transfused, at Muḥammad's death, into 'Alí, and from 'Alí into his descendants who succeeded him in the Imámate. The Saba'ites also held that the Imám might suffer a temporary occultation (*ghayba*), but that one day he would return and fill the earth with justice. They believed the millennium to be near at hand, so that the number of Imáms was at first limited to four. Thus the poet Kuthayyir († 723 A.D.) says:—

"Four complete are the Imáms of Quraysh, the lords of Right:
'Alí and his three good sons, each of them a shining light.
One was faithful and devout; Karbalá hid one from sight;
One, until with waving flags his horsemen he shall lead to fight,
Dwells on Mount Raḍwá, concealed: honey he drinks and water bright."[2]

The Messianic idea is not peculiar to the Shí'ites, but was brought into Islam at an early period by Jewish and Christian converts, and soon established itself as a part of Muḥammadan belief. Traditions ascribed to the Prophet began to circulate, declaring that the approach of the Last Judgment would be heralded by a time of tumult and confusion, by the return of Jesus, who would slay the Antichrist (*al-Dajjál*), and finally by the coming of the Mahdí, *i.e.*, 'the God-guided one,' who would fill the earth with justice even as it was then filled with violence and iniquity. This expectation of a Deliverer descended from the

The Mahdí, or Messiah.

[1] Shahrastání, ed. by Cureton, p. 132, l. 15.

[2] *Aghání*, viii, 32, l. 17 sqq. The three sons of 'Alí are Ḥasan, Ḥusayn, and Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Prophet runs through the whole history of the Shí'a. As we have seen, their supreme religious chiefs were the Imáms of 'Alí's House, each of whom transmitted his authority to his successor. In the course of time disputes arose as to the succession. One sect acknowledged only seven legitimate Imáms, while another carried the number to twelve. The last Imám of the 'Seveners' (*al-Sab'iyya*), who are commonly called Ismá'ílís, was Muḥammad b. Ismá'íl, and of the 'Twelvers' (*al-Ithná-'ashariyya*) Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan.[1] Both those personages vanished mysteriously about 770 and 870 A.D., and their respective followers, refusing to believe that they were dead, asserted that their Imám had withdrawn himself for a season from mortal sight, but that he would surely return at last as the promised Mahdí. It would take a long while to enumerate all the pretenders and fanatics who have claimed this title.[2] Two of them founded the Fáṭimid and Almohade dynasties, which we shall mention elsewhere, but they generally died on the gibbet or the battle-field. The ideal which they, so to speak, incarnated did not perish with them. Mahdiism, the faith in a divinely appointed revolution which will sweep away the powers of evil and usher in a Golden Age of justice and truth such as the world has never known, is a present and inspiring fact which deserves to be well weighed by those who doubt the possibility of an Islamic Reformation.

The Shí'a began as a political faction, but it could not remain so for any length of time, because in Islam politics always tend to take religious ground, just as the successful religious reformer invariably becomes a ruler. The Saba'ites furnished the Shí'ite movement with a theological basis ; and

[1] Concerning the origin of these sects see Professor Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, p. 295 seq.

[2] See Darmesteter's interesting essay, *Le Mahdi depuis les origines de l'Islam jusqu'à nos jours* (Paris, 1885). The subject is treated more scientifically by Snouck Hurgronje in his paper *Der Mahdi*, reprinted from the *Revue coloniale internationale* (1886).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the massacre of Ḥusayn, followed by Mukhtár's rebellion, supplied the indispensable element of enthusiasm. Within a few years after the death of Ḥusayn his grave at Karbalá was already a place of pilgrimage for the Shí'ites. When the 'Penitents' (*al-Tawwábún*) revolted in 684 they repaired thither and lifted their voices simultaneously in a loud wail, and wept, and prayed God that He would forgive them for having deserted the Prophet's grandson in his hour of need. "O God!" exclaimed their chief, "have mercy on Ḥusayn, the Martyr and the son of a Martyr, the Mahdí and the son of a Mahdí, the Ṣiddíq and the son of a Ṣiddíq![1] O God! we bear witness that we follow their religion and their path, and that we are the foes of their slayers and the friends of those who love them."[2] Here is the germ of the *ta'ziyas*, or Passion Plays, which are acted every year on the 10th of Muḥarram, wherever Shí'ites are to be found.

Shí'ite gatherings at Karbalá.

But the Moses of the Shí'a, the man who showed them the way to victory although he did not lead them to it, is undoubtedly Mukhtár. He came forward in the name of 'Alí's son, Muḥammad, generally known as Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya after his mother. Thus he gained the support of the Arabian Shí'ites, properly so called, who were devoted to 'Alí and his House, and laid no stress upon the circumstance of descent from the Prophet, whereas the Persian adherents of the Shí'a made it a vital matter, and held accordingly that only the sons of 'Alí by his wife Fáṭima were fully qualified Imáms. Raising the cry of vengeance for Ḥusayn, Mukhtár carried this party also along with him. In 686 he found himself master of Kúfa. Neither the result of his triumph nor the rapid overthrow of his power concerns us

Mukhtár.

[1] *Ṣiddíq* means 'veracious.' Professor Bevan remarks that in this root the notion of 'veracity' easily passes into that of 'endurance,' 'fortitude.'

[2] Ṭabarí, ii, 546. These 'Penitents' were free Arabs of Kúfa, a fact which, as Wellhausen has noticed, would seem to indicate that the *ta'ziya* is Semitic in origin.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

here, but something must be said about the aims and character of the movement which he headed.

"More than half the population of Kúfa was composed of *Mawálí* (Clients), who monopolised handicraft, trade, and commerce. They were mostly Persians in race and language; they had come to Kúfa as prisoners of war and had there passed over to Islam: then they were manumitted by their owners and received as clients into the Arab tribes, so that they now occupied an ambiguous position (*Zwitterstellung*), being no longer slaves, but still very dependent on their patrons; needing their protection, bound to their service, and forming their retinue in peace and war. In these *Mawálí*, who were entitled by virtue of Islam to more than the 'dominant Arabism' allowed them, the hope now dawned of freeing themselves from clientship and of rising to full and direct participation in the Moslem state." [1]

The *Mawálí* of Kúfa.

Mukhtár, though himself an Arab of noble family, trusted the *Mawálí* and treated them as equals, a proceeding which was bitterly resented by the privileged class. "You have taken away our clients who are the booty which God bestowed upon us together with this country. We emancipated them, hoping to receive the Divine recompense and reward, but you would not rest until you made them sharers in our booty." [2] Mukhtár was only giving the *Mawálí* their due—they were Moslems and had the right, as such, to a share in the revenues. To the haughty Arabs, however, it appeared a monstrous thing that the despised foreigners should be placed on the same level with themselves. Thus Mukhtár was thrown into the arms of the *Mawálí*, and the movement now became not so much anti-Umayyad as anti-Arabian. Here is the turning-point in the history of the Shí'a. Its ranks were swelled by thousands of Persians imbued with the extreme doctrines of the Saba'ites which have been

Mukhtár and the *Mawálí*.

Persian influence on the Shí'a.

[1] Wellhausen, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien*, p. 79.
[2] Ṭabarí, ii, 650, l. 7 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

sketched above, and animated by the intense hatred of a downtrodden people towards their conquerors and oppressors. Consequently the Shí'a assumed a religious and enthusiastic character, and struck out a new path which led it farther and farther from the orthodox creed. The doctrine of 'Interpretation' (*Ta'wíl*) opened the door to all sorts of extravagant ideas. One of the principal Shí'ite sects, the Háshimiyya, held that "there is an esoteric side to everything external, a spirit to every form, a hidden meaning (*ta'wíl*) to every revelation, and to every similitude in this world a corresponding reality in the other world; that 'Alí united in his own person the knowledge of all mysteries and communicated it to his son Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya, who passed it on to his son Abú Háshim; and that the possessor of this universal knowledge is the true Imám."[1] So, without ceasing to be Moslems in name, the Shí'ites transmuted Islam into whatever shape they pleased by virtue of a mystical interpretation based on the infallible authority of the House of Muḥammad, and out of the ruins of a political party there gradually arose a great religious organisation in which men of the most diverse opinions could work together for deliverance from the Umayyad yoke. The first step towards this development was made by Mukhtár, a versatile genius who seems to have combined the parts of political adventurer, social reformer, prophet, and charlatan. He was crushed and his Persian allies were decimated, but the seed which he had sown bore an abundant harvest when, sixty years later, Abú Muslim unfurled the black standard of the 'Abbásids in Khurásán.

Concerning the origin of the oldest theological sects in Islam, the Murjites and the Mu'tazilites, we possess too little contemporary evidence to make a positive statement. It is probable that the latter at any rate arose, as Von Kremer has suggested, under the influence of Greek theologians,

[1] Shahrastání, Haarbrücker's translation, Part I, p. 169.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

especially John of Damascus and his pupil, Theodore Abucara (Abú Qurra), the Bishop of Ḥarrán.[1] Christians were freely admitted to the Umayyad court. The Christian al-Akhṭal was poet-laureate, while many of his co-religionists held high offices in the Government. Moslems and Christians exchanged ideas in friendly discussion or controversially. Armed with the hair-splitting weapons of Byzantine theology, which they soon learned to use only too well, the Arabs proceeded to try their edge on the dogmas of Islam.

The oldest theological sects.

The leading article of the Murjite creed was this, that no one who professed to believe in the One God could be declared an infidel, whatever sins he might commit, until God Himself had given judgment against him.[2] The Murjites were so called because they deferred (*arja'a* = to defer) their decision in such cases and left the sinner's fate in suspense, so long as it was doubtful.[3] This principle they applied in different ways. For example, they refused to condemn 'Alí and 'Uthmán outright, as the Khárijites did. "Both 'Alí and 'Uthmán," they said, "were servants of God, and by God alone must they be judged; it is not for us to pronounce either of them an infidel, notwithstanding that they rent the Moslem people asunder."[4] On the other hand, the Murjites equally rejected the pretensions

The Murjites.

[1] Von Kremer, *Culturgeschicht. Streifzüge*, p. 2 sqq.

[2] The best account of the early Murjites that has hitherto appeared is contained in a paper by Van Vloten, entitled *Irdjâ* (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 45, p. 161 sqq.). The reader may also consult Shahrastání, Haarbrücker's trans., Part I, p. 156 sqq.; Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part II, p. 89 sqq.; Van Vloten, *La domination Arabe*, p. 31 seq.

[3] Van Vloten thinks that in the name 'Murjite' (*murji'*) there is an allusion to Koran, ix, 107: "*And others are remanded* (*murjawna*) *until God shall decree; whether He shall punish them or take pity on them—for God is knowing and wise.*"

[4] *Cf.* the poem of Thábit Quṭna (*Z.D.M.G.*, *loc. cit.*, p. 162), which states the whole Murjite doctrine in popular form. The author, who was himself a Murjite, lived in Khurásán during the latter half of the first century A.H.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

made by the Shí'ites on behalf of 'Alí and by the Umayyads on behalf of Mu'áwiya. For the most part they maintained a neutral attitude towards the Umayyad Government: they were passive resisters, content, as Wellhausen puts it, "to stand up for the impersonal Law." Sometimes, however, they turned the principle of toleration against their rulers. Thus Ḥárith b. Surayj and other Arabian Murjites joined the oppressed *Mawálí* of Khurásán to whom the Government denied those rights which they had acquired by conversion.[1] According to the Murjite view, these Persians, having professed Islam, should no longer be treated as tax-paying infidels. The Murjites brought the same tolerant spirit into religion. They set faith above works, emphasised the love and goodness of God, and held that no Moslem would be damned everlastingly. Some, like Jahm b. Ṣafwán, went so far as to declare that faith (*ímán*) was merely an inward conviction: a man might openly profess Christianity or Judaism or any form of unbelief without ceasing to be a good Moslem, provided only that he acknowledged Allah with his heart.[2] The moderate school found their most illustrious representative in Abú Ḥanífa († 767 A.D.), and through this great divine—whose followers to-day are counted by millions—their liberal doctrines were diffused and perpetuated.

During the Umayyad period Baṣra was the intellectual capital of Islam, and in that city we find the first traces of a sect which maintained the principle that thought must be free in the search for truth. The origin of the Mu'tazilites (*al-Mu'tazila*), as they are generally called, takes us back to the famous divine and ascetic, Ḥasan of Baṣra († 728 A.D.). One day he was asked to give his opinion on a point regarding which the Murjites and the Khárijites held opposite views, namely, whether those who had committed

The Mu'tazilites.

[1] Van Vloten, *La domination Arabe*, p. 29 sqq.

[2] Ibn Ḥazm, cited in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 45, p. 169, n. 7. Jahm († about 747 A.D.) was a Persian, as might be inferred from the boldness of his speculations.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

a great sin should be deemed believers or unbelievers. While Ḥasan was considering the question, one of his pupils, Wáṣil b. 'Aṭá (according to another tradition, 'Amr b. 'Ubayd) replied that such persons were neither believers nor unbelievers, but should be ranked in an intermediate state. He then turned aside and began to explain the grounds of his assertion to a group which gathered about him in a different part of the mosque. Ḥasan said: "Wáṣil has separated himself from us" (*i'tazala 'anná*); and on this account the followers of Wáṣil were named 'Mu'tazilites,' *i.e.*, Schismatics. Although the story may not be literally true, it is probably safe to assume that the new sect originated in Baṣra among the pupils of Ḥasan,[1] who was the life and soul of the religious movement of the first century A.H. The Mu'tazilite heresy, in its earliest form, is connected with the doctrine of Predestination. On this subject the Koran speaks with two voices. Muḥammad was anything but a logically exact and consistent thinker. He was guided by the impulse of the moment, and neither he nor his hearers perceived, as later Moslems did, that the language of the Koran is often contradictory. Thus in the present instance texts which imply the moral responsibility of man for his actions—*e.g.*, "*Every soul is in pledge* (with God) *for what it hath wrought*"[2]; "*Whoso does good benefits himself, and whoso does evil does it against himself*"[3]—stand side by side with others which declare that God leads men aright or astray, as He pleases; that the hearts of the wicked are sealed and their ears made deaf to the truth; and that they are certainly doomed to perdition. This fatalistic view prevailed in the first century of Islam, and the dogma of Predestination was almost universally accepted. Ibn Qutayba,

[1] Ḥasan himself inclined for a time to the doctrine of free-will, but afterwards gave it up (Ibn Qutayba, *Kitábu 'l-Ma'árif*, p. 225). He is said to have held that everything happens by fate, except sin (*Al-Mu'tazilah*, ed. by T. W. Arnold, p. 12, l. 3 from foot). See, however, Shahrastání, Haarbrücker's trans., Part I, p. 46.

[2] Koran, lxxiv, 41.

[3] *Ibid.*, xli, 46.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

however, mentions the names of twenty-seven persons who held the opinion that men's actions are free.[1] Two among them, Ma'bad al-Juhaní and Abú Marwán Ghaylán, who were put to death by 'Abdu 'l-Malik and his son Hishám, do not appear to have been condemned as heretics, but rather as enemies of the Umayyad Government.[2] The real founder of the Mu'tazilites was Wáṣil b. 'Aṭá († 748 A.D.),[3] who added a second cardinal doctrine to that of free-will. He denied the existence of the Divine attributes—Power, Wisdom, Life, &c.—on the ground that such qualities, if conceived as eternal, would destroy the Unity of God. Hence the Mu'tazilites called themselves 'the partisans of Unity and Justice' (*Ahlu 'l-tawḥíd wa-'l-'adl*): of Unity for the reason which has been explained, and of Justice, because they held that God was not the author of evil and that He would not punish His creatures except for actions within their control. The further development of these Rationalistic ideas belongs to the 'Abbásid period and will be discussed in a subsequent chapter.

Growth of asceticism.

The founder of Islam had too much human nature and common sense to demand of his countrymen such mortifying austerities as were practised by the Jewish Essenes and the Christian monks. His religion was not without ascetic features, *e.g.*, the Fast of Ramaḍán, the prohibition of wine, and the ordinance of the pilgrimage, but these can scarcely be called unreasonable. On the other hand Muḥammad condemned celibacy not only by his personal

[1] *Kitábu 'l-Ma'árif*, p. 301. Those who held the doctrine of free-will were called the Qadarites (*al-Qadariyya*), from *qadar* (power), which may denote (1) the power of God to determine human actions, and (2) the power of man to determine his own actions. Their opponents asserted that men act under compulsion (*jabr*); hence they were called the Jabarites (*al-Jabariyya*).

[2] As regards Ghaylán see *Al-Mu'tazilah*, ed. by T. W. Arnold, p. 15, l. 16 sqq.

[3] Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. iii, p. 642; Shahrastání, trans. by Haarbrücker, Part I, p. 44.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

example but also by precept. "There is no monkery in Islam," he is reported to have said, and there was in fact nothing of the kind for more than a century after his death. During this time, however, asceticism made great strides. It was the inevitable outcome of the Muhammadan conception of Allah, in which the attributes of mercy and love are overshadowed by those of majesty, awe, and vengeance. The terrors of Judgment Day so powerfully described in the Koran were realised with an intensity of conviction which it is difficult for us to imagine. As Goldziher has observed, an exaggerated consciousness of sin and the dread of Divine punishment gave the first impulse to Moslem asceticism. Thus we read that Tamím al-Dárí, one of the Prophet's Companions, who was formerly a Christian, passed the whole night until daybreak, repeating a single verse of the Koran (xlv, 20)—"*Do those who work evil think that We shall make them even as those who believe and do good, so that their life and death shall be equal? Ill do they judge!*"[1] Abu 'l-Dardá, another of the Companions, used to say: "If ye knew what ye shall see after death, ye would not eat food nor drink water from appetite, and I wish that I were a tree which is lopped and then devoured."[2] There were many who shared these views, and their determination to renounce the world and to live solely for God was strengthened by their disgust with a tyrannical and impious Government, and by the almost uninterrupted spectacle of bloodshed, rapine, and civil war. Ḥasan of Baṣra (†728)—we have already met him in connection with the Mu'tazilites—is an outstanding figure in this early ascetic movement, which proceeded on orthodox lines.[3] Fear of God seized on him so mightily that, in the words of his biographer, "it seemed

Ḥasan of Baṣra.

[1] Sha'rání, *Lawáqiḥu 'l-Anwár* (Cairo, 1299 A.H.), p. 31. [2] *Ibid.*

[3] See Von Kremer, *Herrschende Ideen*, p. 52 sqq.; Goldziher, *Materialien zur Entwickelungsgesch. des Súfismus* (*Vienna Oriental Journal*, vol. 13, p. 35 sqq.).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

as though Hell-fire had been created for him alone."[1] All who looked on his face thought that he must have been recently overtaken by some great calamity.[2] One day a friend saw him weeping and asked him the cause. "I weep," he replied, "for fear that I have done something unwittingly and unintentionally, or committed some fault, or spoken some word which is unpleasing to God: then He may have said, 'Begone, for now thou hast no more honour in My court, and henceforth I will not receive anything from thee.'"[3] Al-Mubarrad relates that two monks, coming from Syria, entered Baṣra and looked at Ḥasan, whereupon one said to the other, "Let us turn aside to visit this man, whose way of life appears like that of the Messiah." So they went, and they found him supporting his chin on the palm of his hand, while he was saying—"How I marvel at those who have been ordered to lay in a stock of provisions and have been summoned to set out on a journey, and yet the foremost of them stays for the hindermost! Would that I knew what they are waiting for!"[4] The following utterances are characteristic:—

> "God hath made fasting a hippodrome (place or time of training) for His servants, that they may race towards obedience to Him.[5] Some come in first and win the prize, while others are left behind and return disappointed; and by my life, if the lid were removed, the well-doer would be diverted by his well-doing, and the evil-doer by his evil-doing, from wearing new garments or from anointing his hair."[6]

---

[1] Sha'rání, *Lawáqiḥ*, p. 38.

[2] Qushayrí's *Risála* (1287 A.H.), p. 77, l. 10.

[3] *Tadhkiratu 'l-Awliyá* of Farídu'ddín 'Aṭṭár, Part I, p. 37, l. 8 of my edition.

[4] *Kámil* (ed. by Wright), p. 57, l. 16.

[5] The point of this metaphor lies in the fact that Arab horses were put on short commons during the period of training, which usually began forty days before the race.

[6] *Kámil*, p. 57, last line.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

"You meet one of them with white skin and delicate complexion, speeding along the path of vanity: he shaketh his hips and clappeth his sides and saith, 'Here am I, recognise me!' Yes, we recognise thee, and thou art hateful to God and hateful to good men."[1]

"The bounties of God are too numerous to be acknowledged unless with His help, and the sins of Man are too numerous for him to escape therefrom unless God pardon them."[2]

"The wonder is not how the lost were lost, but how the saved were saved."[3]

"Cleanse ye these hearts (by meditation and remembrance of God), for they are quick to rust; and restrain ye these souls, for they desire eagerly, and if ye restrain them not, they will drag you to an evil end."[4]

Ḥasan of Baṣra not a genuine Ṣúfí.

The Ṣúfís, concerning whom we shall say a few words presently, claim Ḥasan as one of themselves, and with justice in so far as he attached importance to spiritual righteousness, and was not satisfied with merely external acts of devotion. "A grain of genuine piety," he declared, "is better than a thousandfold weight of fasting and prayer."[5] But although some of his sayings which are recorded in the later biographies lend colour to the fiction that he was a full-blown Ṣúfí, there can be no doubt that his mysticism—if it deserves that name—was of the most moderate type, entirely lacking the glow and exaltation which we find in the saintly woman, Rábi'a al-'Adawiyya, with whom legend associates him.[6]

The origin of the name 'Ṣúfí' is explained by the Ṣúfís themselves in many different ways, but of the derivations

[1] *Kámil*, p. 58, l. 14.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 67, l. 9.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 91, l. 14.
[4] *Ibid.*, p. 120, l. 4.
[5] Qushayrí's *Risála*, p. 63, last line.
[6] It is noteworthy that Qushayrí († 1073 A.D.), one of the oldest authorities on Ṣúfiism, does not include Ḥasan among the Ṣúfí Shaykhs whose biographies are given in the *Risála* (pp. 8–35), and hardly mentions him above half a dozen times in the course of his work. The sayings of Ḥasan which he cites are of the same character as those preserved in the *Kámil*.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

which have been proposed only three possess any claim to consideration, viz., those which connect it with σοφός (wise) or with *ṣafá* (purity) or with *ṣúf* (wool).[1] The first two are inadmissible on linguistic grounds, into which we need not enter, though it may be remarked that the derivation from *ṣafá* is consecrated by the authority of the Ṣúfí Saints, and is generally accepted in the East.[2] The reason for this preference appears in such definitions as "The Ṣúfí is he who keeps his heart pure (*ṣáfí*) with God,"[3] "Ṣúfiism is 'the being chosen for purity' (*iṣṭifá*): whoever is thus chosen and made pure from all except God is the true Ṣúfí."[4] Understood in this sense, the word had a lofty significance which commended it to the elect. Nevertheless it can be tracked to a quite humble source. Woollen garments were frequently worn by men of ascetic life in the early times of Islam in order (as Ibn Khaldún says) that they might distinguish themselves from those who affected a more luxurious fashion of dress. Hence the name 'Súfí,' which denotes in the first instance an ascetic clad in wool (*ṣúf*), just as the Capuchins owed their designation to the hood (*cappuccio*) which they wore. According to Qushayrí, the term came into common use before the end of the second century of the Hijra (=815 A.D.). By this time, however, the ascetic movement in Islam had to some extent assumed a new character, and the meaning of 'Ṣúfí,' if the word already existed, must have undergone a corresponding change. It seems to me not unlikely that the epithet in question marks the point of

The derivation of 'Ṣúfí.'

[1] See Nöldeke's article, '*Ṣūfī*,' in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 48, p. 45.

[2] An allusion to *ṣafá* occurs in thirteen out of the seventy definitions of Ṣúfí and Ṣúfiism (*Taṣawwuf*) which are contained in the *Tadhkiratu 'l-Awliyá*, or 'Memoirs of the Saints,' of the well-known Persian mystic, Farídu'ddín 'Aṭṭár († *circa* 1230 A.D.), whereas *ṣúf* is mentioned only twice.

[3] Said by Bishr al-Ḥáfí (the bare-footed), who died in 841–842 A.D.

[4] Said by Junayd of Baghdád († 909–910 A.D.), one of the most celebrated Ṣúfí Shaykhs.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

departure from orthodox asceticism and that, as Jámí states, it was first applied to Abú Háshim of Kúfa (*ob.* before 800 A.D.), who, in defiance of the Prophet's injunction, founded a monastery (*Khánaqáh*) for Ṣúfís at Ramla in Palestine. Be that as it may, the distinction between asceticism (*zuhd*) and Ṣúfiism—a distinction which answers, broadly speaking, to the *via purgativa* and the *via illuminativa* of Western mediæval mysticism—begins to show itself before the close of the Umayyad period, and rapidly develops in the early 'Abbásid age under the influence of foreign ideas and, in particular, of Greek philosophy. Leaving this later development to be discussed in a subsequent chapter, we shall now briefly consider the origin of Ṣúfiism properly so called and the first manifestation of the peculiar tendencies on which it is based.

The beginnings of Ṣúfiism.

As regards its origin, we cannot do better than quote the observations with which Ibn Khaldún († 1406 A.D.) introduces the chapter on Ṣúfiism in the Prolegomena to his great historical work :—

Ibn Khaldún's account of the origin of Ṣúfiism.

"This is one of the religious sciences which were born in Islam. The way of the Ṣúfís was regarded by the ancient Moslems and their illustrious men—the Companions of the Prophet (*al-Ṣaḥába*), the Successors (*al-Tábi'ún*), and the generation which came after them—as the way of Truth and Salvation. To be assiduous in piety, to give up all else for God's sake, to turn away from worldly gauds and vanities, to renounce pleasure, wealth, and power, which are the general objects of human ambition, to abandon society and to lead in seclusion a life devoted solely to the service of God—these were the fundamental principles of Ṣúfiism which prevailed among the Companions and the Moslems of old time. When, however, in the second generation and afterwards worldly tastes became widely spread, and men no longer shrank from such contamination, those who made piety their aim were distinguished by the title of *Ṣúfís* or *Mutaṣawwifa* (aspirants to Ṣúfiism).[1]

[1] Ibn Khaldún's *Muqaddima* (Beyrout, 1900), p. 467 = vol. iii, p. 85 seq. of the French translation by De Slane. The same things are said at greater

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

From this it is clear that Ṣúfiism, if not originally identical with the ascetic revolt of which, as we have seen, Ḥasan of Baṣra was the most conspicuous representative, at any rate arose out of that movement. It was not a speculative system, like the Mu'tazilite heresy, but a practical religion and rule of life. "We derived Ṣúfiism," said Junayd, "from fasting and taking leave of the world and breaking familiar ties and renouncing what men deem good; not from disputation" (*qíl wa-qál*).[1] The oldest Ṣúfís were ascetics and hermits, but they were also something more. They brought out the spiritual and mystical element in Islam, or brought it in, if they did not find it there already.

The earliest form of Ṣúfiism.

"Ṣúfiism," says Suhrawardí,[2] "is neither 'poverty' (*faqr*) nor asceticism (*zuhd*), but a term which comprehends the ideas of both, together with something besides. Without these superadded qualities a man is not a Ṣúfí, though he may be an ascetic (*záhid*) or a fakír (*faqír*). It is said that, notwithstanding the excellence of 'poverty,' the end thereof is only the beginning of Ṣúfiism." A little further on he explains the difference thus:—

The difference between asceticism and Ṣúfiism.

"The fakír holds fast to his 'poverty' and is profoundly convinced of its superior merit. He prefers it to riches because he longs for the Divine recompense of which his faith assures him . . . and whenever he contemplates the everlasting reward, he abstains from the fleeting joys of this world and embraces poverty and indigence and fears that if he should cease to be 'poor' he will lose both the merit and the prize. Now this is absolutely unsound according to the doctrine of the Ṣúfís, because he hopes for recompense and renounces the world on that account, whereas the Ṣúfí does not renounce it for the sake of promised rewards but, on the contrary,

---

length by Suhrawardí in his *'Awárifu 'l-Ma'árif* (printed on the margin of Ghazálí's *Iḥyá*, Cairo, 1289 A.H.), vol. i, p. 172 *et seqq*. *Cf.* also the passage from Qushayrí translated by Professor E. G. Browne on pp. 297–298 of vol. i. of his *Literary History of Persia*.

[1] Suhrawardí, *loc. cit.*, p. 136 seq. [2] *Loc. cit.*, p. 145.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

for the sake of present 'states,' for he is the 'son of his time.' . . .[1] The theory that 'poverty' is the foundation of Ṣúfiism signifies that the diverse stages of Ṣúfiism are reached by the road of 'poverty'; it does not imply that the Ṣúfí is essentially a fakír."

The keynote of Ṣúfiism is disinterested, selfless devotion, in a word, Love. Though not wholly strange, this idea was very far from being familiar to pious Muḥammadans, who were more deeply impressed by the power and vengeance of God than by His goodness and mercy. The Koran generally represents Allah as a stern, unapproachable despot, requiring utter submission to His arbitrary will, but infinitely unconcerned with human feelings and aspirations. Such a Being could not satisfy the religious instinct, and the whole history of Ṣúfiism is a protest against the unnatural divorce between God and Man which this conception involves. Accordingly, I do not think that we need look beyond Islam for the origin of the Ṣúfí doctrines, although it would be a mistake not to recognise the part which Christian influence may have had in shaping their early development. The pantheistic tendency with which they gradually became imbued, and which in the course of time completely transformed them, was more or less latent during the Umayyad period and for nearly a century after the accession of the House of 'Abbás. The early Ṣúfís are still on orthodox ground: their relation to Islam is not unlike that of the mediæval Spanish mystics to the Roman Catholic Church. They attach extraordinary value to certain points in Muḥammad's teaching and emphasise them so as to leave the others almost a dead letter. They do not indulge in extravagant speculation, but confine themselves to matters bearing on practical theology. Self-abandonment, rigorous self-mortification, fervid piety, and quietism carried to the verge of apathy form the main features of their creed.

The early Ṣúfís.

[1] *I.e.*, he yields himself unreservedly to the spiritual 'states' (*aḥwál*) which pass over him, according as God wills.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

A full and vivid picture of early Ṣúfiism might be drawn from the numerous biographies in Arabic and Persian, which supply abundant details concerning the manner of life of these Muḥammadan Saints, and faithfully record their austerities, visions, miracles, and sayings. Here we have only space to add a few lines about the most important members of the group—Ibráhím b. Adham, Abú 'Alí Shaqíq, Fuḍayl b. 'Iyáḍ, and Rábi'a—all of whom died between the middle and end of the second century after the Flight (767–815 A.D.). Ibráhím belonged to the royal family of Balkh. Forty scimitars of gold and forty maces of gold were borne in front of him and behind. One day, while hunting, he heard a voice which cried, "Awake! wert thou created for this?" He exchanged his splendid robes for the humble garb and felt cap of a shepherd, bade farewell to his kingdom, and lived for nine years in a cave near Naysábúr.[1] His customary prayer was, "O God, uplift me from the shame of disobedience to the glory of submission unto Thee!"

Ibráhím b. Adham.

"O God!" he said, "Thou knowest that the Eight Paradises are little beside the honour which Thou hast done unto me, and beside Thy love, and beside Thy giving me intimacy with the praise of Thy name, and beside the peace of mind which Thou hast given me when I meditate on Thy majesty." And again: "You will not attain to righteousness until you traverse six passes (*'aqabát*): the first is that you shut the door of pleasure and open the door of hardship; the second, that you shut the door of eminence and open the door of abasement; the third, that you shut the door of ease and open the door of affliction; the fourth, that you shut the door of sleep and open the door of wakefulness; the fifth, that you shut the door of riches and open the door of poverty; and the sixth, that you shut the door of expectation and open the door of making yourself ready for death."

[1] Possibly Ibráhím was one of the *Shikaftiyya* or 'Cave-dwellers' of Khurásán (*shikaft* means 'cave' in Persian), whom the people of Syria called *al-Jú'iyya*, *i.e.*, 'the Fasters.' See Suhrawardí, *loc. cit.*, p. 171.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Shaqíq, also of Balkh, laid particular stress on the duty of leaving one's self entirely in God's hands (*tawakkul*), a term which is practically synonymous with passivity; *e.g.*, the *mutawakkil* must make no effort to obtain even the barest livelihood, he must not ask for anything, nor engage in any trade: his business is with God alone. One of Shaqíq's sayings was, "Nine-tenths of devotion consist in flight from mankind, the remaining tenth in silence." Similarly, Fuḍayl b. 'Iyáḍ, a converted captain of banditti, declared that "to abstain for men's sake from doing anything is hypocrisy, while to do anything for men's sake is idolatry." It may be noticed as an argument against the Indian origin of Ṣúfiism that although the three Ṣúfís who have been mentioned were natives of Khurásán or Transoxania, and therefore presumably in touch with Buddhistic ideas, no trace can be found in their sayings of the doctrine of self-annihilation (*faná*), which plays a great part in subsequent Ṣúfiism, and which Von Kremer and others have identified with *Nirvána*. We now come to a more interesting personality, in whom the ascetic and quietistic type of Ṣúfiism is transfigured by emotion and begins clearly to reveal its pantheistic sympathies. Every one knows that women have borne a distinguished part in the annals of European mysticism: St. Teresa, Madame Guyon, Catharine of Siena, and Juliana of Norwich, to mention but a few names at random. And notwithstanding the intellectual death to which the majority of Moslem women are condemned by their Prophet's ordinance, the Ṣúfís, like the Roman Catholics, can boast a goodly number of female saints. The oldest of these, and by far the most renowned, is Rábi'a, who belonged to the tribe of 'Adí, whence she is generally called Rábi'a al-'Adawiyya. She was a native of Baṣra and died at Jerusalem, probably towards the end of the

Shaqíq of Balkh.

Fuḍayl b. 'Iyáḍ.

Rábi'a al-'Adawiyya.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

second century of Islam: her tomb was an object of pilgrimage in the Middle Ages, as we learn from Ibn Khallikán († 1282 A.D.). Although the sayings and verses attributed to her by Ṣúfí writers may be of doubtful authenticity, there is every reason to suppose that they fairly represent the actual character of her devotion, which resembled that of all feminine mystics in being inspired by tender and ardent feeling. She was asked: "Do you love God Almighty?" "Yes." "Do you hate the Devil?" "My love of God," she replied, "leaves me no leisure to hate the Devil. I saw the Prophet in a dream. He said, 'O Rábi'a, do you love me?' I said, 'O Apostle of God, who does not love thee?—but love of God hath so absorbed me that neither love nor hate of any other thing remains in my heart.'" Rábi'a is said to have spoken the following verses:—

"Two ways I love Thee: selfishly,
And next, as worthy is of Thee.
'Tis selfish love that I do naught
Save think on Thee with every thought;
'Tis purest love when Thou dost raise
The veil to my adoring gaze.
Not mine the praise in that or this,
Thine is the praise in both, I wis."[1]

Whether genuine or not, these lines, with their mixture of devotion and speculation—the author distinguishes the illuminative from the contemplative life and manifestly regards the latter as the more excellent way—serve to mark the end of orthodox Ṣúfiism and the rise of a new theosophical system which, under the same name and still professing to be in full accord with the Koran and the *Sunna*, was really founded upon pantheistic ideas of extraneous origin—ideas irreconcilable with any revealed

[1] Ghazálí, *Iḥyá* (Cairo, 1289 A.H.), vol. iv, p. 298.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

religion, and directly opposed to the severe and majestic simplicity of the Muḥammadan articles of faith.

The opening century of Islam was not favourable to literature. At first conquest, expansion, and organisation, then civil strife absorbed the nation's energies; then, under the Umayyads, the old pagan spirit asserted itself once more. Consequently the literature of this period consists almost exclusively of poetry, which bears few marks of Islamic influence. I need scarcely refer to the view which long prevailed in Europe that Muḥammad corrupted the taste of his countrymen by setting up the Koran as an incomparable model of poetic style, and by condemning the admired productions of the heathen bards and the art of poetry itself; nor remind my readers that in the first place the Koran is not poetical in form (so that it could not serve as a model of this kind), and secondly, according to Muḥammadan belief, is the actual Word of God, therefore *sui generis* and beyond imitation. Again, the poets whom the Prophet condemned were his most dangerous opponents: he hated them not as poets but as propagators and defenders of false ideals, and because they ridiculed his teaching, while on the contrary he honoured and rewarded those who employed their talents in the right way. If the nomad minstrels and cavaliers who lived, as they sang, the free life of the desert were never equalled by the brilliant laureates of imperial Damascus and Baghdád, the causes of the decline cannot be traced to Muḥammad's personal attitude, but are due to various circumstances for which he is only responsible in so far as he founded a religious and political system that revolutionised Arabian society. The poets of the period with which we are now dealing follow slavishly in the footsteps of the ancients, as though Islam had never been. Instead of celebrating the splendid victories

Umayyad literature.

The decline of Arabian poetry not due to Muḥammad.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

and heroic deeds of Moslem warriors, the bard living in a great city still weeps over the relics of his beloved's encampment in the wilderness, still rides away through the sandy waste on the peerless camel, whose fine points he particularly describes; and if he should happen to be addressing the Caliph, it is ten to one that he will credit that august personage with all the virtues of a Bedouin Shaykh. "Fortunately the imitation of the antique *qaṣída*, at any rate with the greatest Umayyad poets, is to some extent only accessory to another form of art that excites our historical interest in a high degree: namely, the occasional poems (very numerous in almost all these writers), which are suggested by the mood of the moment and can shed a vivid light on contemporary history." [1]

The Umayyad poets.

The conquests made by the successors of the Prophet brought enormous wealth into Mecca and Medína, and when the Umayyad aristocracy gained the upper hand in 'Uthmán's Caliphate, these towns developed a voluptuous and dissolute life which broke through every restriction that Islam had imposed. The increase of luxury produced a corresponding refinement of the poetic art. Although music was not unknown to the pagan Arabs, it had hitherto been cultivated chiefly by foreigners, especially Greek and Persian singing-girls. But in the first century after the Flight we hear of several Arab singers,[2] natives of Mecca and Medína, who set favourite passages to music: henceforth the words and the melody are inseparably united, as we learn from the *Kitábu 'l-Aghání* or 'Book of Songs,' where hundreds of examples are to be found. Amidst the gay throng of pleasure-seekers women naturally played a prominent part, and love, which had

Music and song in the Holy Cities.

[1] Brockelmann, *Gesch. d. Arab. Litteratur*, vol. i, p. 45.
[2] *E.g.*, Ma'bad, Gharíḍ, Ibn Surayj, Ṭuways, and Ibn 'Á'isha.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

hitherto formed in most cases merely the conventional prelude to an ode, now began to be sung for its own sake. In this Peninsular school, as it may be named in contrast with the bold and masculine strain of the great Provincial poets whom we are about to mention, the palm unquestionably belongs to 'Umar b. Abí Rabí'a († 719 A.D.), the son of a rich Meccan merchant. He passed the best part of his life in the pursuit of noble dames, who alone inspired him to sing. His poetry was so seductive that it was regarded by devout Moslems as "the greatest crime ever committed against God," and so charming withal that 'Abdulláh b. 'Abbás, the Prophet's cousin and a famous authority on the Koran and the Traditions, could not refrain from getting by heart some erotic verses which 'Umar recited to him.[1] The Arabs said, with truth, that the tribe of Quraysh had won distinction in every field save poetry, but we must allow that 'Umar b. Abí Rabí'a is a clear exception to this rule. His diction, like that of Catullus, has all the unaffected ease of refined conversation. Here are a few lines :—

'Umar b. Abí Rabí'a.

> "Blame me no more, O comrades ! but to-day
> Quietly with me beside the howdahs stay.
> Blame not my love for Zaynab, for to her
> And hers my heart is pledged a prisoner.
> Ah, can I ever think of how we met
> Once at al-Khayf, and feel no fond regret ?
> My song of other women was but jest :
> She reigns alone, eclipsing all the rest.
> Hers is my love sincere, 'tis she the flame
> Of passion kindles—so, a truce to blame !"[2]

We have no space to dwell on the minor poets of the same school, al-'Arjí (a kinsman of the Umayyads), al-Aḥwaṣ, and many others. It has been pointed out by Dr. C. Brockelmann

[1] *Kámil* of Mubarrad, p. 570 sqq.
[2] *Aghání*, i, 43, l. 15 sqq. ; Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 17, last line and foll.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

that the love-poetry of this epoch is largely of popular origin; *e.g.*, the songs attributed to Jamíl, in which Buthayna is addressed, and to Majnún—the hero of countless Persian and Turkish romances which celebrate his love for Laylá—are true folk-songs such as occur in the *Arabian Nights*, and may be heard in the streets of Beyrout or on the banks of the Tigris at the present day. Many of them are extremely beautiful. I take the following verses from a poem which is said to have been composed by Jamíl:—

Love-ballads.

"Oh, might it flower anew, that youthful prime,
And restore to us, Buthayna, the bygone time!
And might we again be blest as we wont to be,
When thy folk were nigh and grudged what thou gavest me!

Shall I ever meet Buthayna alone again,
Each of us full of love as a cloud of rain?
Fast in her net was I when a lad, and till
This day my love is growing and waxing still.

I have spent my lifetime, waiting for her to speak,
And the bloom of youth is faded from off my cheek;
But I will not suffer that she my suit deny,
My love remains undying, though all things die!"[1]

The names of al-Akhṭal, al-Farazdaq, and Jarír stand out pre-eminently in the list of Umayyad poets. They were men of a very different stamp from the languishing Minnesingers and carpet-knights who, like Jamíl, refused to battle except on the field of love. It is noteworthy that all three were born and bred in Mesopotamia. The motherland was exhausted; her ambitious and enterprising youth poured into the provinces, which now become the main centres of intellectual activity.

Poetry in the provinces.

Farazdaq and Jarír are intimately connected by a peculiar rivalry—"*Arcades ambo—id est*, blackguards both." For many years they engaged in a public scolding-match (*muháját*), and

[1] Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 9, l. 11 sqq., omitting l. 13.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

as neither had any scruples on the score of decency, the foulest abuse was bandied to and fro between them—abuse, however, which is redeemed from vulgarity by its literary excellence, and by the marvellous skill which the satirists display in manipulating all the vituperative resources of the Arabic language. Soon these 'Flytings' (*Naqá'iḍ*) were recited everywhere, and each poet had thousands of enthusiastic partisans who maintained that he was superior to his rival.[1] One day Muhallab b. Abí Ṣufra, the governor of Khurásán, who was marching against the Azáriqa, a sect of the Khárijites, heard a great clamour and tumult in the camp. On inquiring its cause, he found that the soldiers had been fiercely disputing as to the comparative merits of Jarír and Farazdaq, and desired to submit the question to his decision. "Would you expose me," said Muhallab, "to be torn in pieces by these two dogs? I will not decide between them, but I will point out to you those who care not a whit for either of them. Go to the Azáriqa! They are Arabs who understand poetry and judge it aright." Next day, when the armies faced each other, an Azraqite named 'Abída b. Hilál stepped forth from the ranks and offered single combat. One of Muhallab's men accepted the challenge, but before fighting he begged his adversary to inform him which was the better poet—Farazdaq or Jarír? "God confound you!" cried 'Abída, "do you ask me about poetry instead of studying the Koran and the Sacred Law?" Then he quoted a verse by Jarír and gave judgment in his favour.[2] This incident affords a striking proof that the taste for poetry, far from being confined to literary circles, was diffused throughout the whole nation, and was cultivated

The *Naqá'iḍ* of Jarír and Farazdaq.

General interest in poetry.

[1] An edition of the *Naqá'iḍ* by Professor A. A. Bevan is now being published at Leyden.

[2] *Aghání*, vii, 55, l. 12 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

even amidst the fatigues and dangers of war. Parallel instances occur in the history of the Athenians, the most gifted people of the West, and possibly elsewhere, but imagine British soldiers discussing Tennyson and Browning over the camp-fires!

Akhṭal joined in the fray. His sympathies were with Farazdaq, and the *naqáʼiḍ* which he and Jarír composed against each other have come down to us. All these poets, like their Post-islamic brethren generally, were professional encomiasts, greedy, venal, and ready to revile any one who would not purchase their praise. Some further account of them may be interesting to the reader, especially as the anecdotes related by their biographers throw many curious sidelights on the manners of the time.

The oldest of the trio, Akhṭal (Ghiyáth b. Ghawth) of Taghlib, was a Christian, like most of his tribe—they had long been settled in Mesopotamia—and remained in that faith to the end of his life, though the Caliph ʻAbdu ʼl-Malik is said to have offered him a pension and 10,000 dirhems in cash if he would turn Moslem. His religion, however, was less a matter of principle than of convenience, and to him the supreme virtue of Christianity lay in the licence which it gave him to drink wine as often as he pleased. The stories told of him suggest grovelling devoutness combined with very easy morals, a phenomenon familiar to the student of mediæval Catholicism. It is related by one who was touring in Syria that he found Akhṭal confined in a church at Damascus, and pleaded his cause with the priest. The latter stopped beside Akhṭal and raising the staff on which he leaned—for he was an aged man—exclaimed: "O enemy of God, will you again defame people and satirise them and caluminate chaste women?" while the poet humbled himself and promised never to repeat the offence. When asked how it was that he, who was honoured by the Caliph and feared by all, behaved so

Akhṭal.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

submissively to this priest, he answered, "It is religion, it is religion."[1] On another occasion, seeing the Bishop pass, he cried to his wife who was then pregnant, "Run after him and touch his robe." The poor woman only succeeded in touching the tail of the Bishop's ass, but Akhṭal consoled her with the remark, "He and the tail of his ass, there's no difference!"[2] It is characteristic of the anti-Islamic spirit which appears so strongly in the Umayyads that their chosen laureate and champion should have been a Christian who was in truth a lineal descendant of the pagan bards. Pious Moslems might well be scandalised when he burst unannounced into the Caliph's presence, sumptuously attired in silk and wearing a cross of gold which was suspended from his neck by a golden chain, while drops of wine trickled from his beard,[3] but their protests went unheeded at the court of Damascus, where nobody cared whether the author of a fine verse was a Moslem or a Christian, and where a poet was doubly welcome whose religion enabled him to serve his masters without any regard to Muḥammadan sentiment; so that, for example, when Yazíd I wished to take revenge on the people of Medína because one of their poets had addressed amatory verses to his sister, he turned to Akhṭal, who branded the *Anṣár*, the men who had brought about the triumph of Islam, in the famous lines—

> "Quraysh have borne away all the honour and glory,
> And baseness alone is beneath the turbans of the Anṣár."[4]

We must remember that the poets were leaders of public opinion; their utterances took the place of political pamphlets or of party oratory for or against the Government of the day.

[1] *Aghání*, vii, 182, l. 25 sqq.
[2] *Ibid.*, vii, 183, l. 6 sqq.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 178, l. 1 seq.
[4] *Ibid.*, xiii, 148, l. 23.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

On hearing Akhṭal's ode in praise of the Umayyad dynasty,[1] 'Abdu 'l-Malik ordered one of his clients to conduct the author through the streets of Damascus and to cry out, "Here is the poet of the Commander of the Faithful! Here is the best poet of the Arabs!"[2] No wonder that he was a favourite at court and such an eminent personage that the great tribe of Bakr used to invite him to act as arbitrator whenever any controversy arose among them.[3] Despite the luxury in which he lived, his wild Bedouin nature pined for freedom, and he frequently left the capital to visit his home in the desert, where he not only married and divorced several wives, but also threw himself with ardour into the feuds of his clan. We have already noticed the part which he played in the literary duel between Jarír and Farazdaq. From his deathbed he sent a final injunction to Farazdaq not to spare their common enemy.

Akhṭal is commended by Arabian critics for the number and excellence of his long poems, as well as for the purity, polish, and correctness of his style. Abú 'Ubayda put him first among the poets of Islam, while the celebrated collector of Pre-islamic poetry, Abú 'Amr b. al-'Alá, declared that if Akhṭal had lived a single day in the Pagan Age he would not have preferred any one to him. His supremacy in panegyric was acknowledged by Farazdaq, and he himself claims to have surpassed all competitors in three styles, viz., panegyric, satire, and erotic poetry; but there is more justification for the boast that his satires might be recited *virginibus*—he does not add *puerisque*—without causing a blush.[4]

Hammám b. Ghálib, generally known as Farazdaq, belonged to the tribe of Tamím, and was born at Baṣra towards the end of 'Umar's Caliphate. His grandfather, Ṣa'ṣa'a, won renown

[1] *Encomium Omayadarum*, ed. by Houtsma (Leyden, 1878).
[2] *Aghání*, vii, 172, l. 27 sqq. [3] *Ibid.*, p. 179, l. 25 sqq.
[4] *Ibid.*, p. 178, l. 26 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

in Pre-islamic times by ransoming the lives of female infants whom their parents had condemned to die (on account of which he received the title, *Muḥiyyu 'l-Maw'údát*, 'He who brings the buried girls to life'), and his father was likewise imbued with the old Bedouin traditions of liberality and honour, which were rapidly growing obsolete among the demoralised populace of 'Iráq. Farazdaq was a *mauvais sujet* of the type represented by François Villon, reckless, dissolute, and thoroughly unprincipled: apart from his gift of vituperation, we find nothing in him to admire save his respect for his father's memory and his constant devotion to the House of 'Alí, a devotion which he scorned to conceal; so that he was cast into prison by the Caliph Hishám for reciting in his presence a glowing panegyric on 'Alí's grandson, Zaynu 'l-'Ábidín. The tragic fate of Ḥusayn at Karbalá affected him deeply, and he called on his compatriots to acquit themselves like men—

Farazdaq.

"If ye avenge not him, the son of the best of you,
Then fling, fling the sword away and naught but the spindle ply."[1]

While still a young man, he was expelled from his native city in consequence of the lampoons which he directed against a noble family of Baṣra, the Banú Nahshal. Thereupon he fled to Medína, where he plunged into gallantry and dissipation until a shameless description of one of his intrigues again drew upon him the sentence of banishment. His poems contain many references to his cousin Nawár, whom, by means of a discreditable trick, he forced to marry him when she was on the point of giving her hand to another. The pair were ever quarrelling, and at last Farazdaq consented to an irrevocable divorce, which was witnessed by Ḥasan of Baṣra, the famous theologian. No sooner was

[1] *Aghání*, xix, 34, l. 18.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

the act complete than Farazdaq began to wish it undone, and he spoke the following verses :—[1]

> "I feel repentance like al-Kusa'í,[2]
> Now that Nawár has been divorced by me.
> She was my Paradise which I have lost,
> Like Adam when the Lord's command he crossed.
> I am one who wilfully puts out his eyes,
> Then dark to him the shining day doth rise!"

'The repentance of Farazdaq,' signifying bitter regret or disappointment, passed into a proverb. He died a few months before Jarír in 728 A.D., a year also made notable by the deaths of two illustrious divines, Ḥasan of Baṣra and Ibn Sírín.

Jarír.

Jarír b. 'Aṭiyya belonged to Kulayb, a branch of the same tribe, Tamím, which produced Farazdaq. He was the court-poet of Ḥajjáj, the dreaded governor of 'Iráq, and eulogised his patron in such extravagant terms as to arouse the jealousy of the Caliph 'Abdu 'l-Malik, who consequently received him, on his appearance at Damascus, with marked coldness and hauteur. But when, after several repulses, he at length obtained permission to recite a poem which he had composed in honour of the prince, and came to the verse—

> "Are not ye the best of those who on camel ride,
> More open-handed than all in the world beside?"—

the Caliph sat up erect on his throne and exclaimed : "Let

[1] *Kámil* of Mubarrad, p. 70, l. 17 sqq.

[2] Al-Kusa'í broke an excellent bow which he had made for himself. See *The Assemblies of Ḥaríri*, trans. by Chenery, p. 351. Professor Bevan remarks that this half-verse is an almost verbal citation from a verse ascribed to 'Adí b. Maríná of Ḥíra, an enemy of 'Adí b. Zayd the poet (*Aghání*, ii, 24, l. 5).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

us be praised like this or in silence!"[1] Jarír's fame as a satirist stood so high that to be worsted by him was reckoned a greater distinction than to vanquish any one else. The blind poet, Bashshár b. Burd († 783 A.D.), said: "I satirised Jarír, but he considered me too young for him to notice. Had he answered me, I should have been the finest poet in the world."[2] The following anecdote shows that vituperation launched by a master like Jarír was a deadly and far-reaching weapon which degraded its victim in the eyes of his contemporaries, however he might deserve their esteem, and covered his family and tribe with lasting disgrace.

There was a poet of repute, well known by the name of Rá'i 'l-ibil (Camel-herd), who loudly published his opinion that Farazdaq was superior to Jarír, although the latter had lauded his tribe, the Banú Numayr, whereas Farazdaq had made verses against them. One day Jarír met him and expostulated with him but got no reply. Rá'i was riding a mule and was accompanied by his son, Jandal, who said to his father: "Why do you halt before this dog of the Banú Kulayb, as though you had anything to hope or fear from him?" At the same time he gave the mule a lash with his whip. The animal started violently and kicked Jarír, who was standing by, so that his cap fell to the ground. Rá'i took no heed and went on his way. Jarír picked up the cap, brushed it, and replaced it on his head. Then he exclaimed in verse:—

> "*O Jandal! what will say Numayr of you*
> *When my dishonouring shaft has pierced thy sire?*"

He returned home full of indignation, and after the evening prayer, having called for a jar of date-wine and a lamp, he set about his work. An old woman in the house heard him muttering, and mounted the stairs to see what ailed him. She found him crawling naked on his bed, by reason of that which was within him; so she ran down, crying "He is mad," and described what she had seen to the people of the house. "Get thee gone," they said, "we know

---

[1] Ibn Khallikán (ed. by Wüstenfeld), No. 129; De Slane's translation vol. i, p. 298.

[2] *Aghání*, iii, 23, l. 13.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

what he is at." By daybreak Jarír had composed a satire of eighty verses against the Banú Numayr. When he finished the poem, he shouted triumphantly, "*Allah Akbar!*" and rode away to the place where he expected to find Rá'i 'l-ibil and Farazdaq and their friends. He did not salute Rá'í but immediately began to recite. While he was speaking Farazdaq and Rá'í bowed their heads, and the rest of the company sat listening in silent mortification. When Jarír uttered the final words—

> "*Cast down thine eyes for shame! for thou art of Numayr—no peer of Ka'b nor yet Kiláb*"—

Rá'í rose and hastened to his lodging as fast as his mule could carry him. "Saddle! Saddle!" he cried to his comrades; "you cannot stay here longer, Jarír has disgraced you all." They left Baṣra without delay to rejoin their tribe, who bitterly reproached Rá'í for the ignominy which he had brought upon Numayr; and hundreds of years afterwards his name was still a byword among his people.[1]

Dhu 'l-Rumma.

Next, but next at a long interval, to the three great poets of this epoch comes Dhu 'l-Rumma (Ghaylán b. 'Uqba), who imitated the odes of the desert Arabs with tiresome and ridiculous fidelity. The philologists of the following age delighted in his antique and difficult style, and praised him far above his merits. It was said that poetry began with Imru'u 'l-Qays and ended with Dhu 'l-Rumma; which is true in the sense that he is the last important representative of the pure Bedouin school.

Prose writers of the Umayyad period.

Concerning the prose writers of the period we can make only a few general observations, inasmuch as their works have almost entirely perished.[2] In this branch of literature the same secular, non-Muḥammadan spirit prevailed which has been mentioned as characteristic of the poets who flourished under the Umayyad dynasty, and of the dynasty itself. Historical studies

[1] *Aghání*, vii, 49, l. 8 sqq.

[2] The following account is mainly derived from Goldziher's *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 203 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

were encouraged and promoted by the court of Damascus. We have referred elsewhere to 'Abíd b. Sharya, a native of Yemen, whose business it was to dress up the old legends and purvey them in a readable form to the public. Another Yemenite of Persian descent, Wahb b. Munabbih, is responsible for a great deal of the fabulous lore belonging to the domain of *Awá'il* (Origins) which Moslem chroniclers commonly prefix to their historical works. There seems to have been an eager demand for narratives of the Early Wars of Islam (*maghází*). It is related that the Caliph 'Abdu 'l-Malik, seeing one of these books in the hands of his son, ordered it to be burnt, and enjoined him to study the Koran instead. This anecdote shows on the part of 'Abdu 'l-Malik a pious feeling with which he is seldom credited,[1] but it shows also that histories of a legendary and popular character preceded those which were based, like the *Maghází* of Músá b. 'Uqba († 758 A.D.) and Ibn Isḥáq's *Biography of the Prophet*, upon religious tradition. No work of the former class has been preserved. The strong theological influence which asserted itself in the second century of the Hijra was unfavourable to the development of an Arabian prose literature on national lines. In the meantime, however, learned doctors of divinity began to collect and write down the *Ḥadíths*. We have a solitary relic of this sort in the *Kitábu 'l-Zuhd* (Book of Asceticism) by Asad b. Músá († 749 A.D.). The most renowned traditionist of the Umayyad age is Muḥammad b. Muslim b. Shiháb al-Zuhrí († 742 A.D.), who distinguished himself by accepting judicial office under the tyrants; an act of complaisance to which his more stiff-necked and conscientious brethren declined to stoop.

It was the lust of conquest even more than missionary zeal that caused the Arabs to invade Syria and Persia and to settle

[1] Cf. Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, p. 230.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

on foreign soil, where they lived as soldiers at the expense of the native population whom they inevitably regarded as an inferior race. If the latter thought to win respect by embracing the religion of their conquerors, they found themselves sadly mistaken.

The non-Arabian Moslems.

The new converts were attached as clients (*Mawálí*, sing. *Mawlá*) to an Arab tribe: they could not become Moslems on any other footing. Far from obtaining the equal rights which they coveted, and which, according to the principles of Islam, they should have enjoyed, the *Mawálí* were treated by their aristocratic patrons with contempt, and had to submit to every kind of social degradation, while instead of being exempted from the capitation-tax paid by non-Moslems, they still remained liable to the ever-increasing exactions of Government officials. And these 'Clients,' be it remembered, were not ignorant serfs, but men whose culture was acknowledged by the Arabs themselves—men who formed the backbone of the influential learned class and ardently prosecuted those studies, Divinity and Jurisprudence, which were then held in highest esteem. Here was a situation full of danger. Against Shíʿites and Khárijites the Umayyads might claim with some show of reason to represent the cause of law and order, if not of Islam; against the bitter cry of the oppressed *Mawálí* they had no argument save the sword.

We have referred above to the universal belief of Moslems in a Messiah and to the extraordinary influence of that belief on their religious and political history. No wonder that in this unhappy epoch thousands of people, utterly disgusted with life as they found it, should have indulged in visions of 'a good time coming,' which was expected to coincide with the end of the first century of the Hijra. Mysterious predictions, dark sayings attributed to Muḥammad himself, prophecies of war and deliverance floated to and fro. Men pored over apocry-

Presages of the Revolution.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

phal books, and asked whether the days of confusion and slaughter (*al-harj*), which, it is known, shall herald the appearance of the Mahdí, had not actually begun.

The final struggle was short and decisive. When it closed, the Umayyads and with them the dominion of the Arabs had passed away. Alike in politics and literature, the Persian race asserted its supremacy. We shall now relate the story of this Revolution as briefly as possible, leaving the results to be considered in a new chapter.

The 'Abbásids.

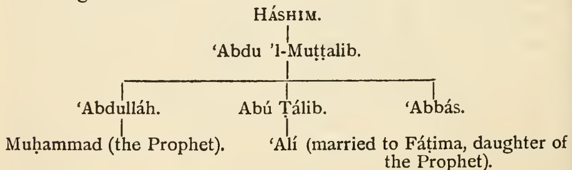
While the Shí'ite missionaries (*du'át*, sing. *dá'í*) were actively engaged in canvassing for their party, which, as we have seen, recognised in 'Alí and his descendants the only legitimate successors to Muḥammad, another branch of the Prophet's family—the 'Abbásids—had entered the field with the secret intention of turning the labours of the 'Alids to their own advantage. From their ancestor, 'Abbás, the Prophet's uncle, they inherited those qualities of caution, duplicity, and worldly wisdom which ensure success in political intrigue. 'Abdulláh, the son of 'Abbás, devoted his talents to theology and interpretation of the Koran. He "passes for one of the strongest pillars of religious tradition; but, in the eyes of unprejudiced European research, he is only a crafty liar." His descendants "lived in deep retirement in Ḥumayma, a little place to the south of the Dead Sea, seemingly far withdrawn from the world, but which, on account of its proximity to the route by which Syrian pilgrims went to Mecca, afforded opportunities for communication with the remotest lands of Islam. From this centre they carried on the propaganda in their own behalf with the utmost skill. They had genius enough to see that the best soil for their efforts was the distant Khurásán —that is, the extensive north-eastern provinces of the old Persian Empire."[1] These countries were inhabited by a

'Abbásid propaganda in Khurásán.

[1] Nöldeke, *Sketches from Eastern History*, tr. by J. S. Black, p. 108 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

brave and high-spirited people who in consequence of their intolerable sufferings under the Umayyad tyranny, the devastation of their homes and the almost servile condition to which they had been reduced, were eager to join in any desperate enterprise that gave them hope of relief. Moreover, the Arabs in Khurásán were already to a large extent Persianised: they had Persian wives, wore trousers, drank wine, and kept the festivals of Nawrúz and Mihrgán; while the Persian language was generally understood and even spoken among them.[1] Many interesting details as to the methods of the 'Abbásid emissaries will be found in Van Vloten's admirable work.[2] Starting from Kúfa, the residence of the Grand Master who directed the whole agitation, they went to and fro in the guise of merchants or pilgrims, cunningly adapting their doctrine to the intelligence of those whom they sought to enlist. Like the Shí'ites, they canvassed for 'the House of the Prophet,' an ambiguous expression which might equally well be applied to the descendants of 'Alí or of 'Abbás, as is shown by the following table:—



It was, of course, absolutely essential to the 'Abbásids that they should be able to count on the support of the powerful Shí'ite organisation, which, ever since the abortive rebellion headed by Mukhtár (see p. 218 *supra*) had drawn vast numbers of Persian *Mawálí* into its ranks. Now, of the two main parties of the Shí'a,

The Shí'ites join hands with the 'Abbásids.

[1] Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich*, p. 307.

[2] *Recherches sur la domination Arabe*, p. 46 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

viz., the Háshimites or followers of Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya, and the Imámites, who pinned their faith to the descendants of the Prophet through his daughter Fáṭima, the former had virtually identified themselves with the 'Abbásids, inasmuch as the Imám Abú Háshim, who died in 716 A.D., bequeathed his hereditary rights to Muḥammad b. 'Alí, the head of the House of 'Abbás. It only remained to hoodwink the Imámites. Accordingly the 'Abbásid emissaries were instructed to carry on their propaganda in the name of Háshim, the common ancestor of 'Abbás and 'Alí. By means of this ruse they obtained a free hand in Khurásán, and made such progress that the governor of that province, Naṣr b. Sayyár, wrote to the Umayyad Caliph, Marwán, asking for reinforcements, and informing him that two hundred thousand men had sworn allegiance to Abú Muslim, the principal 'Abbásid agent. At the foot of his letter he added these lines:—

> "I see the coal's red glow beneath the embers,
> And 'tis about to blaze!
> The rubbing of two sticks enkindles fire,
> And out of words come frays.
> 'Oh! is Umayya's House awake or sleeping?'
> I cry in sore amaze."[1]

We have other verses by this gallant and loyal officer in which he implores the Arab troops stationed in Khurásán, who were paralysed by tribal dissensions, to turn their swords against "a mixed rabble without religion or nobility":—

> "'Death to the Arabs'—that is all their creed."[2]

These warnings, however, were of no avail, and on June 9th, A.D. 747, Abú Muslim displayed the black banner

[1] Dínawarí, ed. by Guirgass, p. 356.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 360, l. 15. The whole poem has been translated by Professor Browne in his *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 242.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

of the 'Abbásids at Siqadanj, near Merv, which city he occupied a few months later. The triumphant advance of the armies of the Revolution towards Damascus recalls the celebrated campaign of Cæsar, when after crossing the Rubicon he marched on Rome. Nor is Abú Muslim, though a freedman of obscure parentage—he was certainly no Arab—unworthy to be compared with the great patrician. "He united," says Nöldeke, "with an agitator's adroitness and perfect unscrupulosity in the choice of means the energy and clear outlook of a general and statesman, and even of a monarch."[1] Grim, ruthless, disdaining the pleasures of ordinary men, he possessed the faculty in which Cæsar excelled of inspiring blind obedience and enthusiastic devotion. To complete the parallel, we may mention here that Abú Muslim was treacherously murdered by Manṣúr, the second Caliph of the House which he had raised to the throne, from motives exactly resembling those which Shakespeare has put in the mouth of Brutus—

Declaration of war.

Abú Muslim.

> "So Cæsar may:
> Then, lest he may, prevent. And since the quarrel
> Will bear no colour for the thing he is,
> Fashion it thus: that what he is, augmented,
> Would run to these and these extremities;
> And therefore think him as a serpent's egg
> Which, hatched, would as his kind grow mischievous,
> And kill him in the shell."

The downfall of the Umayyads was hastened by the perfidy and selfishness of the Arabs on whom they relied: the old feud between Muḍar and Yemen broke out afresh, and while the Northern group remained loyal to the dynasty, those of Yemenite stock more or less openly threw in their lot with the Revolution. We need not attempt to trace the course

[1] *Sketches from Eastern History*, p. 111.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

of the unequal contest. Everywhere the Arabs, disheartened and divided, fell an easy prey to their adversaries, and all was lost when Marwán, the last Umayyad Caliph, sustained a crushing defeat on the River Záb in Babylonia (January, A.D. 750). Meanwhile Abu 'l-'Abbás, the head of the rival House, had already received homage as Caliph (November, 749 A.D.). In the inaugural address which he delivered in the great Mosque of Kúfa, he called himself *al-Saffáḥ*, *i.e.*, 'the Blood-shedder,' [1] and this title has deservedly stuck to him, though it might have been assumed with no less justice by his brother Manṣúr and other members of his family. All Umayyads were remorselessly hunted down and massacred in cold blood—even those who surrendered only on the strength of the most solemn pledges that they had nothing to fear. A small remnant made their escape, or managed to find shelter until the storm of fury and vengeance, which spared neither the dead nor the living,[2] had blown over. One stripling, named 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán, fled to North Africa, and after meeting with many perilous adventures founded a new Umayyad dynasty in Spain.

Accession of Abu 'l-'Abbás al-Saffáḥ.

[1] Professor Bevan, to whose kindness I owe the following observations, points out that this translation of *al-Saffáḥ*, although it has been generally adopted by European scholars, is very doubtful. According to Professor De Goeje, *al-Saffáḥ* means 'the munificent' (literally, 'pouring out' gifts, &c.). In any case it is important to notice that the name was given to certain Pre-islamic chieftains. Thus Salama b. Khálid, who commanded the Banú Taghlib at the first battle of al-Kuláb (Ibnu 'l-Athír, ed. by Tornberg, vol. i, p. 406, last line), is said to have been called *al-Saffáḥ* because he 'emptied out' the skin bottles (*mazád*) of his army before a battle (Ibn Durayd, ed. by Wüstenfeld, p. 203, l. 16); and we find mention of a poet named al-Saffáḥ b. 'Abd Manát (*ibid.*, p. 277, penult. line).

[2] See p. 205.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER VI

THE CALIPHS OF BAGHDÁD

THE annals of the 'Abbásid dynasty from the accession of Saffáḥ (A.D. 749) to the death of Musta'ṣim, and the destruction of Baghdád by the Mongols (A.D. 1258) make a round sum of five centuries. I propose to sketch the history of this long period in three chapters, of which the first will offer a general view of the more important literary and political developments so far as is possible in the limited space at my command; the second will be devoted to the great poets, scholars, historians, philosophers, and scientists who flourished in this, the Golden Age of Muḥammadan literature; while in the third some account will be given of the chief religious movements and of the trend of religious thought.

The empire founded by the Caliph 'Umar and administered by the Umayyads was essentially, as the reader will have gathered, a military organisation for the benefit of the paramount race. In theory, no doubt, all Moslems were equal, but in fact the Arabs alone ruled—a privilege which national pride conspired with personal interest to maintain. We have seen how the Persian Moslems asserted their right to a share in the government. The Revolution which enthroned the 'Abbásids marks the beginning of a Moslem, as opposed to an Arabian, Empire. The new dynasty, owing its rise to the people of Persia, and especially of Khurásán, could exist only by

Political results of the Revolution.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

establishing a balance of power between Persians and Arabs. That this policy was not permanently successful will surprise no one who considers the widely diverse characteristics of the two races, but for the next fifty years the rivals worked together in tolerable harmony, thanks to the genius of Manṣúr and the conciliatory influence of the Barmecides, by whose overthrow the alliance was virtually dissolved. In the ensuing civil war between the sons of Hárún al-Rashíd the Arabs fought on the side of Amín while the Persians supported Ma'mún, and henceforth each race began to follow an independent path. The process of separation, however, was very gradual, and long before it was completed the religious and intellectual life of both nationalities had become inseparably mingled in the full stream of Moslem civilisation.

The choice of a new capital.

The centre of this civilisation was the province of 'Iráq (Babylonia), with its renowned metropolis, Baghdád, 'the City of Peace' (*Madínatu 'l-Salám*). Only here could the 'Abbásids feel themselves at home. "Damascus, peopled by the dependants of the Omayyads, was out of the question. On the one hand it was too far from Persia, whence the power of the Abbasids was chiefly derived; on the other hand it was dangerously near the Greek frontier, and from here, during the troublous reigns of the last Omayyads, hostile incursions on the part of the Christians had begun to avenge former defeats. It was also beginning to be evident that the conquests of Islam would, in the future, lie to the eastward towards Central Asia, rather than to the westward at the further expense of the Byzantines. Damascus, on the highland of Syria, lay, so to speak, dominating the Mediterranean and looking westward, but the new capital that was to supplant it must face east, be near Persia, and for the needs of commerce have water communication with the sea. Hence everything pointed to a

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

site on either the Euphrates or the Tigris, and the Abbasids were not slow to make their choice."[1] After carefully examining various sites, the Caliph Manṣúr fixed on a little Persian village, on the west bank of the Tigris, called Baghdád, which, being interpreted, means 'given (or 'founded') by God'; and in A.D. 762 the walls of the new city began to rise. Manṣúr laid the first brick with his own hand, and the work was pushed forward with astonishing rapidity under his personal direction by masons, architects, and surveyors, whom he gathered out of different countries, so that 'the Round City,' as he planned it, was actually finished within the short space of four years.

Foundation of Baghdád.

The same circumstances which caused the seat of empire to be transferred to Baghdád brought about a corresponding change in the whole system of government. Whereas the Umayyads had been little more than heads of a turbulent Arabian aristocracy, their successors reverted to the old type of Oriental despotism with which the Persians had been familiar since the days of Darius and Xerxes. Surrounded by a strong bodyguard of troops from Khurásán, on whose devotion they could rely, the 'Abbásids ruled with absolute authority over the lives and properties of their subjects, even as the Sásánian monarchs had ruled before them. Persian fashions were imitated at the court, which was thronged with the Caliph's relatives and freedmen (not to mention his womenfolk), besides a vast array of uniformed and decorated officials. Chief amongst these latter stood two personages who figure prominently in the *Arabian Nights*—the Vizier and the Executioner. The office of Vizier is probably of Persian origin, although in Professor De Goeje's opinion the word itself is Arabic.[2] The first

Despotic character of 'Abbásid rule.

[1] G. Le Strange, *Baghdad under the Abbasid Caliphate*, p. 4 seq.

[2] Professor De Goeje has kindly given me the following references :—Ṭabarí, ii, 78, l. 10, where Ziyád is called the *Wazír* of Mu'áwiya; Ibn

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

who bore this title in 'Abbásid times was Abú Salama, the minister of Saffáḥ: he was called *Wazîru Âli Muḥammad^in*, 'the Vizier of Muḥammad's Family.' It was the duty of the Vizier to act as intermediary between the omnipotent sovereign and his people, to counsel him in affairs of State, and, above all, to keep His Majesty in good humour. He wielded enormous power, but was exposed to every sort of intrigue, and never knew when he might be interned in a dungeon or despatched in the twinkling of an eye by the grim functionary presiding over the *naṭ'*, or circular carpet of leather, which lay beside the throne and served as a scaffold.

The Vizier.

We can distinguish two periods in the history of the 'Abbásid House: one of brilliant prosperity inaugurated by Manṣúr and including the reigns of Mahdí, Hárún al-Rashíd, Ma'mún, Mu'taṣim, and Wáthiq—that is to say, nearly a hundred years in all (754–847 A.D.); the other, more than four times as long, commencing with Mutawakkil (847–861 A.D.)—a period of decline rapidly sinking, after a brief interval which gave promise of better things, into irremediable decay.[1]

Two periods of 'Abbásid history.

Sa'd, iii, 121, l. 6 (Abú Bakr the *Wazír* of the Prophet). The word occurs in Pre-islamic poetry (Ibn Qutayba, *K. al-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ará*, p. 414, l. 1). Professor De Goeje adds that the 'Abbásid Caliphs gave the name *Wazír* as title to the minister who was formerly called *Kátib* (Secretary). Thus it would seem that the Arabic *Wazír* (literally 'burden-bearer'), who was at first merely a 'helper' or 'henchman,' afterwards became the representative and successor of the *Dapír* (official scribe or secretary) of the Sásánian kings.

[1] This division is convenient, and may be justified on general grounds. In a strictly political sense, the period of decline begins thirty years earlier with the Caliphate of Ma'mún (813–833 A.D.). The historian Abu 'l-Maḥásin († 1469 A.D.) dates the decline of the Caliphate from the accession of Muktafí in 902 A.D. (*al-Nujúm al-Záhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. ii, p. 134).

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Cruel and treacherous, like most of his family, Abú Ja'far Manṣúr was perhaps the greatest ruler whom the 'Abbásids produced.[1] He had to fight hard for his throne. The 'Alids, who deemed themselves the true heirs of the Prophet in virtue of their descent from Fáṭima, rose in rebellion against the usurper, surprised him in an unguarded moment, and drove him to such straits that during seven weeks he never changed his dress except for public prayers. But once more the 'Alids proved incapable of grasping their opportunity. The leaders, Muḥammad and his brother Ibráhím, who was known as 'The Pure Soul' (*al-Nafs al-zakiyya*), fell on the battlefield. Under Mahdí and Hárún members of the House of 'Alí continued to 'come out,' but with no better success. In Eastern Persia, where strong national feelings interwove themselves with Pre-Muḥammadan religious ideas, those of Mazdak and Zoroaster in particular, the 'Abbásids encountered a formidable opposition which proclaimed its vigour and tenacity by the successive revolts of Sinbádh the Magian (755–756 A.D.), Ustádhsís (766–768), Muqanna', the 'Veiled Prophet of Khurásán' (780–786), and Bábak the Khurramite (816–838).[2]

Reign of Manṣúr (754–775 A.D.).

Outbreaks in Persia.

Manṣúr said to his son Mahdí, "O Abú 'Abdalláh, when you sit in company, always have divines to converse with you; for Muḥammad b. Shiháb al-Zuhrí said, 'The word *ḥadíth* (Apostolic Tradition) is masculine: only virile men love it, and only effeminate men dislike it'; and he spoke the truth."[3]

Manṣúr's advice to Mahdí.

On one occasion a poet came to Mahdí, who was then heir-apparent, at Rayy, and recited a panegyric in his honour.

[1] See Nöldeke's essay, *Caliph Manṣúr*, in his *Sketches from Eastern History*, trans. by J. S. Black, p. 107 sqq.

[2] Professor Browne has given an interesting account of these ultra-Shí'ite insurgents in his *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, ch. ix.

[3] Ṭabarí, iii, 404, l. 5 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The prince gave him 20,000 dirhems. Thereupon the postmaster of Rayy informed Manṣúr, who wrote to his son reproaching him for such extravagance. "What you should have done," he said, "was to let him wait a year at your door, and after that time bestow on him 4,000 dirhems." He then caused the poet to be arrested and brought into his presence. "You went to a heedless youth and cajoled him?" "Yes, God save the Commander of the Faithful, I went to a heedless, generous youth and cajoled him, and he suffered himself to be cajoled." "Recite your eulogy of him." The poet obeyed, not forgetting to conclude his verses with a compliment to Manṣúr. "Bravo!" cried the Caliph, "but they are not worth 20,000 dirhems. Where is the money?" On its being produced he made him a gift of 4,000 dirhems and confiscated the remainder."[1]

Manṣúr and the poet.

Notwithstanding irreconcilable parties—'Alids, Persian extremists, and (we may add) Khárijites—the policy of *rapprochement* was on the whole extraordinarily effective. In carrying it out the Caliphs received powerful assistance from a noble and ancient Persian family, the celebrated Barmakites or Barmecides. According to Mas'údí,[2] Barmak was originally a title borne by the High Priest (*sádin*) of the great Magian fire-temple at Balkh. Khálid, the son of one of these dignitaries—whence he and his descendants were called Barmakites (*Barámika*)—held the most important offices of state under Saffáḥ and Manṣúr. Yaḥyá, the son of Khálid, was entrusted with the education of Hárún al-Rashíd, and on the accession of the young prince he was appointed Grand Vizier. "My dear father!" said the Caliph, "it is through the blessings and the good fortune which attend you, and through your excellent management, that I am seated on the

The Barmecides.

Yaḥyá b. Khálid.

[1] Ṭabarí, iii, 406, l. 1 sqq.

[2] *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, p. 47 seq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

throne;[1] so I commit to you the direction of affairs." He then handed to him his signet-ring. Yaḥyá was distinguished (says the biographer) for wisdom, nobleness of mind, and elegance of language.[2] Although he took a truly Persian delight in philosophical discussion, for which purpose free-thinking scholars and eminent heretics used often to meet in his house, he was careful to observe the outward forms of piety. It may be said of the 'Abbásids generally that, whatever they might do or think in private, they wore the official badge of Islam ostentatiously on their sleeves. The following verses which Yaḥyá addressed to his son Faḍl are very characteristic :—[3]

> "Seek glory while 'tis day, no effort spare,
> And patiently the loved one's absence bear;
> But when the shades of night advancing slow
> O'er every vice a veil of darkness throw,
> Beguile the hours with all thy heart's delight:
> The day of prudent men begins at night.
> Many there be, esteemed of life austere,
> Who nightly enter on a strange career.
> Night o'er them keeps her sable curtain drawn,
> And merrily they pass from eve to dawn.
> Who but a fool his pleasures would expose
> To spying rivals and censorious foes?"

Fall of the Barmecides (803 A.D.).

For seventeen years Yaḥyá and his two sons, Faḍl and Ja'far, remained deep in Hárún's confidence and virtual rulers of the State until, from motives which have been variously explained, the Caliph resolved to rid himself of the whole family. The story is too well known to need repetition.[4] Ja'far alone was put to death: we may conclude, therefore, that he had specially

[1] When the Caliph Hádí wished to proclaim his son Ja'far heir-apparent instead of Hárún, Yaḥyá pointed out the danger of this course and dissuaded him (*al-Fakhrí*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 281).

[2] Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. iv, p. 105.

[3] Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. vi, p. 364.

[4] See, for example, *Haroun Alraschid*, by E. H. Palmer, in the New Plutarch Series, p. 81 sqq.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

excited the Caliph's anger; and those who ascribe the catastrophe to his romantic love-affair with Hárún's sister, 'Abbása, are probably in the right.[1] Hárún himself seems to have recognised, when it was too late, how much he owed to these great Persian barons whose tactful administration, unbounded generosity, and munificent patronage of literature have shed immortal lustre on his reign. Afterwards, if any persons spoke ill of the Barmecides in his presence, he would say (quoting the verse of Ḥuṭay'a) :—[2]

> "O slanderers, be your sire of sire bereft![3]
> Give o'er, or fill the gap which they have left."

Hárún's orthodoxy, his liberality, his victories over the Byzantine Emperor Nicephorus, and last but not least the literary brilliance of his reign have raised him in popular estimation far above all the other Caliphs: he is the Charlemagne of the East, while the entrancing pages of the *Thousand and One Nights* have made his name a household word in every country of Europe. Students of Moslem history will soon discover that "the good Haroun Alraschid" was in fact a perfidious and irascible tyrant, whose fitful amiability and real taste for music and letters hardly entitle him to be described either as a great monarch or a good man. We must grant, however, that he thoroughly understood the noble art of patronage. The poets Abú Nuwás, Abu 'l-'Atáhiya, Di'bil, Muslim b. Walíd, and 'Abbás b. Aḥnaf; the musician Ibráhím of Mosul and his son Isḥáq; the philologists Abú 'Ubayda, Aṣma'í, and Kisá'í; the preacher Ibnu 'l-Sammák; and the historian Wáqidí—these are but a few names in the galaxy of talent which he gathered around him at Baghdád.

Hárún al-Rashíd (786–809 A.D.).

[1] *Cf.* A. Müller, *Der Islam*, vol. i, p. 481 seq.
[2] Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. iv, p. 112.
[3] Literally, "No father to your father!" a common form of imprecation.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The fall of the Barmecides revived the spirit of racial antagonism which they had done their best to lay, and an open rupture was rendered inevitable by the short-sighted policy of Hárún with regard to the succession. He had two grown-up sons, Amín, by his wife and cousin Zubayda, and Ma'mún, whose mother was a Persian slave. It was arranged that the Caliphate should pass to Amín and after him to his brother, but that the Empire should be divided between them. Amín was to receive 'Iráq and Syria, Ma'mún the eastern provinces, where the people would gladly welcome a ruler of their own blood. The struggle for supremacy which began almost immediately on the death of Hárún was in the main one of Persians against Arabs, and by Ma'mún's triumph the Barmecides were amply avenged.

'Amín and Ma'mún (809–833 A.D.).

The new Caliph was anything but orthodox. He favoured the Shí'ite party to such an extent that he even nominated the 'Alid, 'Alí b. Músá b. Ja'far al-Riḍá, as heir-apparent—a step which alienated the members of his own family and led to his being temporarily deposed. He also adopted the opinions of the Mu'tazilite sect and established an Inquisition to enforce them. Hence the Sunnite historian, Abu 'l-Maḥásin, enumerates three principal heresies of which Ma'mún was guilty: (1) His wearing of the Green (*labsu 'l-Khuḍra*)[1] and courting the 'Alids and repulsing the 'Abbásids; (2) his affirming that the Koran was created (*al-qawl bi-Khalqi 'l-Qur'án*); and (3) his legalisation of the *mut'a*, a loose form of marriage prevailing amongst the Shí'ites.[2] We shall see in due course how keenly and with what fruitful results Ma'mún interested himself in literature and science. Nevertheless, it cannot escape our attention that in this splendid reign there appear ominous signs of political decay. In 822 A.D. Ṭáhir, one of Ma'mún's generals, who

Ma'mún's heresies.

[1] Green was the party colour of the 'Alids, black of the 'Abbásids.

[2] *Al-Nujúm al-Záhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. i, p. 631.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

had been appointed governor of Khurásán, omitted the customary mention of the Caliph's name from the Friday sermon (*khuṭba*), thus founding the Ṭahirid dynasty, which, though professing allegiance to the Caliphs, was practically independent. Ṭáhir was only the first of a long series of ambitious governors and bold adventurers who profited by the weakening authority of the Caliphs to carve out kingdoms for themselves. Moreover, the Moslems of 'Iráq had lost their old warlike spirit: they were fine scholars and merchants, but poor soldiers. So it came about that Ma'mún's successor, the Caliph Mu'taṣim (833–842 A.D.), took the fatal step of surrounding himself with a Prætorian Guard chiefly composed of Turkish recruits from Transoxania. At the same time he removed his court from Baghdád sixty miles further up the Tigris to Sámarrá, which suddenly grew into a superb city of palaces and barracks—an Oriental Versailles.[1] Here we may close our brief review of the first and flourishing period of the 'Abbásid Caliphate. During the next four centuries the Caliphs come and go faster than ever, but for the most part their authority is precarious, if not purely nominal. Meanwhile, in the provinces of the Empire petty dynasties arise, only to eke out an obscure and troubled existence, or powerful states are formed, which carry on the traditions of Muḥammadan culture, it may be through many generations, and in some measure restore the blessings of peace and settled government to an age surfeited with anarchy and bloodshed. Of these provincial empires we have now principally to speak, confining our view, for the most part, to the political outlines, and reserving the literary and religious aspects of the period for fuller consideration elsewhere.

Rise of independent dynasties.

Turkish mercenaries introduced.

Decline of the Caliphate.

[1] The court remained at Sámarrá for fifty-six years (836–892 A.D.). The official spelling of Sámarrá was *Surra-man-ra'á*, which may be freely rendered 'The Spectator's Joy.'

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

The reigns of Mutawakkil (847–861 A.D.) and his immediate successors exhibit all the well-known features of Prætorian rule. Enormous sums were lavished on the Turkish soldiery, who elected and deposed the Caliph just as they pleased, and enforced their insatiable demands by mutiny and assassination. For a short time (869–907 A.D.) matters improved under the able and energetic Muhtadí and the four Caliphs who followed him; but the Turks soon regained the upper hand. From this date every vestige of real power is centred in the Generalissimo (*Amíru 'l-Umará*) who stands at the head of the army, while the once omnipotent Caliph must needs be satisfied with the empty honour of having his name stamped on the coinage and celebrated in the public prayers. The terrorism of the Turkish bodyguard was broken by the Buwayhids, a Persian dynasty, who ruled in Baghdád from 945 to 1055 A.D. Then the Seljúq supremacy began with Ṭughril Beg's entry into the capital and lasted a full century until the death of Sanjar (1157 A.D.). The Mongols who captured Baghdád in 1258 A.D. brought the pitiable farce of the Caliphate to an end.

The Second 'Abbásid Period (847–1258 A.D.).

"The empire of the Caliphs at its widest," as Stanley Lane-Poole observes in his excellent account of the Muḥammadan dynasties, "extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán, a member of the suppressed Umayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in A.D. 755, and the 'Abbásid Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idrís, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Alí, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbásids and Umayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco. The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Qayrawán in A.D. 800."

Dynasties of the early 'Abbásid Age.

Amongst the innumerable kingdoms which supplanted the

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

decaying Caliphate only a few of the most important can be singled out for special notice on account of their literary or religious interest.[1] To begin with Persia: in 872 A.D. Khurásán, which was then held by the Ṭáhirids, fell into the hands of Ya'qúb b. Layth the Coppersmith (*al-Ṣaffár*), founder of the Ṣaffárids, who for thirty years stretched their sway over a great part of Persia, until they were dispossessed by the Sámánids. The latter dynasty had the seat of its power in Transoxania, but during the first half of the tenth century practically the whole of Persia submitted to the authority of Ismá'íl and his famous successors, Naṣr II and Núḥ I. Not only did these princes warmly encourage and foster the development, which had already begun, of a national literature in the Persian language—it is enough to recall here the names of Rúdagí, the blind minstrel and poet; Daqíqí, whose fragment of a Persian Epic was afterwards incorporated by Firdawsí in his *Sháhnáma;* and Bal'amí, the Vizier of Manṣúr I, who composed an abridgment of Ṭabarí's great history, which is one of the oldest prose works in Persian that have come down to us—but they extended the same favour to poets and men of learning who (though, for the most part, of Persian extraction) preferred to use the Arabic language. Thus the celebrated Rhazes (Abú Bakr al-Rází) dedicated to the Sámánid prince Abú Ṣáliḥ Manṣúr b. Isḥáq a treatise on medicine, which he entitled *al-Kitáb al-Manṣúrí* (the Book of Manṣúr) in honour of his patron. The great physician and philosopher, Abú 'Alí b. Síná (Avicenna) relates that, having been summoned to Bukhárá by King Núḥ, the second of that name (976–997 A.D.), be obtained permission to visit the

Dynasties of the Second Period.

The Sámánids (874–999 A.D.).

[1] My account of these dynasties is necessarily of the briefest and barest character. The reader will find copious details concerning most of them in Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia:* Ṣaffárids and Sámánids in vol. i, p. 346 sqq.; Fáṭimids in vol. i, pp. 391–400 and vol. ii, p. 196 sqq.; Ghaznevids in vol. ii, chap. ii; and Seljúqs, *ibid.*, chaps. iii to v.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

royal library. "I found there," he says, "many rooms filled with books which were arranged in cases row upon row. One room was allotted to works on Arabic philology and poetry; another to jurisprudence, and so forth, the books on each particular science having a room to themselves. I inspected the catalogue of ancient Greek authors and looked for the books which I required: I saw in this collection books of which few people have heard even the names, and which I myself have never seen either before or since." [1]

The Buwayhids (932–1055 A.D.).

The power of the Sámánids quickly reached its zenith, and about the middle of the tenth century they were confined to Khurásán and Transoxania, while in Western Persia their place was taken by the Buwayhids. Abú Shujá' Buwayh, a chieftain of Daylam, the mountainous province lying along the southern shores of the Caspian Sea, was one of those soldiers of fortune whom we meet with so frequently in the history of this period. His three sons, 'Alí, Aḥmad, and Ḥasan, embarked on the same adventurous career with such energy and success, that in the course of thirteen years they not only subdued the provinces of Fárs and Khúzistán, but in 945 A.D. entered Baghdád at the head of their Daylamite troops and assumed the supreme command, receiving from the Caliph Mustakfí the honorary titles of 'Imádu 'l-Dawla, Mu'izzu 'l-Dawla, and Ruknu 'l-Dawla. Among the princes of this House, who reigned over Persia and 'Iráq during the next hundred years, the most eminent was 'Aḍudu 'l-Dawla, of whom it is said by Ibn Khallikán that none of the Buwayhids, notwithstanding their great power and authority, possessed so extensive an empire and held sway over so many kings and kingdoms as he. The chief poets of the day, including Mutanabbí, visited his court at Shíráz and celebrated his praises in magnificent odes. He also built a great hospital in Baghdád, the Bímáristán al-'Aḍudí, which

[1] Ibn Abí Uṣaybi'a, *Ṭabaqátu 'l-Aṭibbá*, ed. by A. Müller, vol. ii, p. 4, l. 4 sqq. Avicenna was at this time scarcely eighteen years of age.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

was long famous as a school of medicine. The Viziers of the Buwayhid family contributed in a quite unusual degree to its literary renown. Ibnu 'l-'Amíd, the Vizier of Ruknu 'l-Dawla, surpassed in philology and epistolary composition all his contemporaries; hence he was called 'the second Jáḥiẓ,' and it was a common saying that "the art of letter-writing began with 'Abdu 'l-Ḥamíd and ended with Ibnu 'l-'Amíd."[1] His friend, the Ṣáḥib Ismá'íl b. 'Abbád, Vizier to Mu'ayyidu 'l-Dawla and Fakhru 'l-Dawla, was a distinguished savant, whose learning was only eclipsed by the liberality of his patronage. In the latter respect Sábúr b. Ardashír, the prime minister of Abú Naṣr Bahá'u 'l-Dawla, vied with the illustrious Ṣáḥib. He had so many encomiasts that Tha'álibí devotes to them a whole chapter of the *Yatíma*. The Academy which he founded at Baghdád, in the Karkh quarter, and generously endowed, was a favourite haunt of literary men, and its members seem to have enjoyed pretty much the same privileges as belong to the Fellows of an Oxford or Cambridge College.[2]

Like most of their countrymen, the Buwayhids were Shí'ites in religion. We read in the Annals of Abu 'l-Maḥásin under the year 341 A.H. = 952 A.D.:—

Zeal of the Buwayhids for Shí'ite principles.

"In this year the Vizier al-Muhallabí arrested some persons who held the doctrine of metempsychosis (*tanásukh*). Among them were a youth who declared that the spirit of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib had passed into his body, and a woman who claimed that the spirit of Fáṭima was dwelling in her; while another man pretended to be Gabriel. On being flogged, they excused themselves by alleging their relationship to the Family of the Prophet, whereupon Mu'izzu 'l-Dawla ordered them to be set free. This he did because of his attachment to

[1] 'Abdu 'l-Ḥamíd flourished in the latter days of the Umayyad dynasty. See Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 173; Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. vi, p. 81.

[2] See Professor Margoliouth's Introduction to the *Letters of Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arri*, p. xxiv.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®

Shí'ism. It is well known," says the author in conclusion, "that the Buwayhids were Shí'ites and Ráfidites." [1]

Three dynasties contemporary with the Buwayhids have still to be mentioned: the Ghaznevids in Afghanistan, the Hamdánids in Syria, and the Fátimids in Egypt. Sabuktagín, the founder of the first-named dynasty, was a Turkish slave. His son, Mahmúd, who succeeded to the throne of Ghazna in 998 A.D., made short work of the already tottering Sámánids, and then sweeping far and wide over Northern India, began a series of conquests which, before his death in 1030 A.D., reached from Lahore to Samarcand and Isfahán. Although the Persian and Transoxanian provinces of his huge empire were soon torn away by the Seljúqs, Mahmúd's invasion of India, which was undertaken with the object of winning that country for Islam, permanently established Muhammadan influence, at any rate in the Panjáb. As regards their religious views, the Turkish Ghaznevids stand in sharp contrast with the Persian houses of Sámán and Buwayh. It has been well said that the true genius of the Turks lies in action, not in speculation. When Islam came across their path, they saw that it was a simple and practical creed such as the soldier requires; so they accepted it without further parley. The Turks have always remained loyal to Islam, the Islam of Abú Bakr and 'Umar, which is a very different thing from the Islam of Shí'ite Persia. Mahmúd proved his orthodoxy by banishing the Mu'tazilites of Rayy and burning their books together with the philosophical and astronomical works that fell into his hands; but on the same occasion he carried off a hundred camel-loads of presumably harmless literature to his capital. That he had no deep enthusiasm for letters is shown, for

The Ghaznevids (976–1186 A.D.).

[1] Abu 'l-Mahásin, *al-Nujúm al-Záhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. ii, p. 333. The original Ráfidites were those schismatics who rejected (*rafada*) the Caliphs Abú Bakr and 'Umar, but the term is generally used as synonymous with Shí'ite.

Univ Calif - Digitized by Microsoft ®